



The 3 R's

(The only education you will ever need)

Peredur McCluskey

Love is; life without the 'if'

Content	
Re-awakening	3
Re-interpretation	81
Resurrection	126

Re-awakening

Mad Dog McCluskey stared at the reflection of the hobo that stood before him with a mixture of contempt and disgust; his sleep had finally come to an end. Surely this heap of rag and hair was not him? He studied it hard. It looked like him, well underneath all that dirt and scraps of cloth and that odour that exuded from him would certainly tally. What had happened to him? His self imposed exile and hermetic existence had certainly took their toll.

“What a state to let yourself get into,” a voice inside him said, “You should be ashamed of yourself; I've seen better dressed scare crows.”

“Don't start; I'm not in the mood for you today.”

“And that smell,” the voice went on unperturbed, “Water doesn't burn you know, you want to try it some day. I've heard it said that if you want to hide anything from you, you just have to put it underneath a bar of soap.”

“Funny, very funny,” but he knew that now it was time to make certain changes in his life. He thought back to how it all started. It seemed like an eternity ago as he stood and watched his mother's coffin being lowered into the grave. It completely turned his world upside down. He had taken to drink for solace though it did him no good. Outside influences saw to that. He got made redundant at work, evicted from the council house he lived in and drank more and heavier to try and drown his sorrows. He could not face life any more; it was too much of a struggle on top of the grief he was still carrying. He fell further and further into despair still clinging to the whiskey bottle and hoping things would pick up. It was around about then that the voice had started to make its presence felt, “Go to Alcoholics Anonymous,” he felt himself thinking for at the time it was pretty weak. He dismissed it out of hand as he was in denial and though the thought persisted it was in vain.

Then irony came into play, a couple of weeks after he refused to join the A.A. he had a breakdown. He just took off and left. He headed towards the nearest forest and turned his back on civilisation as he knew it. He took to staring into thin air for hour after hour and gently rocking himself backwards and forwards.

He never ate, his dreams were always tortured so he tried to keep himself awake for as long as possible for night time always brought out the fear in him.

Days passed and still he could not pull himself from the chains of madness that held his mind in bondage. He was lucky in one sense as it was summer and dry, the elements were in his favour. Having said that though the frame of mind he was in or probably out off that would not have occurred to him. He needed something; a straw to grasp, a ray of hope but nothing seemed in the pipeline. Lower and lower he got and his thoughts turned to that of taking his own life. He could see no other alternative, no way out; he just wanted to end it all. He had no thoughts of an afterlife as such in fact the state of mind that he was in meant that he had no thoughts at all other than to end it all.

“Don't be stupid,” a voice said inside him but this time he recognised that it was not him. The surprise of this discovery knocked his sense of reality for six and left him quiet for a while as he tried to rationalise what had actually happened to him.

“That's it,” he said when he finally spoke, “That just about sums it up. I've gone mad, I'm schizophrenic. I should have known,” and shaking his head sadly, “Now what's to become of me?”

“Anything you want but don't even think about taking your own life.”

“Why not,” Mad Dog said full of anger and self pity, “I mean what's the point of all this at the end of the day?”

“Believe me you think that things are going bad at the moment but if you take your own life that is nothing to what you'll have to go through.”

“What do you mean,” Mad Dog said with still a trace of anger, “And who are you anyway, what are you doing in my mind?”

“Oh your mind is it now; well that just shows how ignorant you are. There's more going on in your mind than just you, you arrogant bastard.”

“What,” Mad Dog said with more than just a hint of confusion, “What are you talking about?”

“Have you ever come across the expression to know thy Self does that mean anything to you at all?”

“Err, yes. It was Greek I think.”

“Well that's what I am, your True Self. So tell me Mad Dog McCluskey what are you doing in my mind?”

“What is this some sort of joke?”

“Now does it sound like I am laughing, especially when you are stupid enough to try and take our life away? Who the hell do you think you are?”

“What do you mean our? It's my life.”

“No it's not, it's our life you foolish mortal.”

“It's irrelevant whose life it is,” Mad Dog said not understanding “It's just a load of crap at the end of the day.”

“Arrr, aren't things going too well at the moment.”

“What do you care,” Mad Dog said as the gloom sank in even more, “Why are you bothering me anyway?”

“I don't and why am I bothering you, maybe it's you who is bothering me? Have you ever thought about that or are you that self centred that it never occurred to you.”

“What are you talking about? Make sense.”

“Nothing would make sense to you in the frame of mind you are in at this moment. Maybe I'll try a little later. There's an old semi-derelict caravan about half a mile to your left. It's going to rain soon so I would recommend that you take shelter.”

“Wait, how do you know this?” but the voice did not answer. He tried to call it back but he was wasting his time. After a few minutes he gave up and tried to rationalise what had just happened. Within half an hour he had persuaded himself that with all the stress he had been under he had just imagined it and by the time the deluge started he had almost forgotten about it.

He sought shelter under a large tree but the force of the rain quickly fought its way through the leaves and he found himself getting wet. He ran from tree to tree hoping for a dry spot but they were all affected in the same way. In the distance he saw what looked like a tin shed and ran quickly towards it though he was still soaked by the time he arrived. It was an old caravan and finding the door unlocked he looked in to make sure that nobody was already there.

Finding it empty he rushed in and quickly shut the door behind him. The caravan itself was surprisingly water tight so he sat down on the floor to regain his breath and have a look around. Most of the units had been ripped out and a mattress lay on the floor and took up about a third of the space. Tiredness drew him to it and he fell quickly to sleep.

Mad Dog found himself high up in a mountains face to face with an old man with a long white beard holding an old leather bound book. He opened it up and read, “Waiting for a thought to die is to understand its pain,” and shut the book. He looked straight into Mad Dogs eyes for a few moments before he said, “So Mad Dog McCluskey what's your pain?”

Mad Dog did not seem in control of himself as a voice took over and said, “Ours is not to reason why ours is just to do or die.”

“You need never die if you knew the reason why so tell me again Mad Dog, what's your pain?”

“That is the essence of my being,” the voice said, “Without the pain I am not.”

“You are your memory, you are eternal, a memory never dies. That is the essence of your being. You have experienced the pain that is enough. Understand my words and take strength from my being.”

“No,” the voice said, “You are the memory and I am the thought that has to die. While I have this pain I am eternal.”

“When a thought dies it becomes a memory only then it is eternal.”

“But I don't want to die.”

“Then that is your pain,” the old man said and opened the book once again.

“No, wait, I am not done yet.”

“What more can you say, I understand your pain so now you are no more.”

“But I am still here, I am not dead.”

“No,” the man said closing the book, “Tell me Mad Dog do you think that it is your fear of death that keeps you alive?”

“Am I not a thought, a projected image?”

“No, you are an evolving Soul, you are your understanding.”

“Then what is to become of me?”

“You have grown Mad Dog,” the man said with a smile, “You have the experience now you need the wisdom.”

“But how will I get this wisdom?”

“Listen to your understanding.”

“I thought I was my understanding.”

“Then listen to your Self.”

Mad Dog seemed to regain control then so he said, “Who are you?”

“I am your Spirit; I am here to guide you. As you have to grow in understanding I have to grow in wisdom.”

“So what was that voice then, was he my voice within?”

“Only in this reality in the realms of time he is you and you are the voice within.”

“Now that's confusing, how can that work?”

“It's not difficult; you are your level of consciousness. In dream-time you move down a level.”

“Right, well I think so anyway. So while I am awake I am that voice that took over?”

“Yes that's right, easy wasn't it? So tell me Mad Dog, what went wrong? However have you got to the stage of wanting to take your life away?”

“Things just seem too much for me, I don't see any alternative.”

“Time will heal that; it will help you to understand the pain.”

“I doubt that, I can't see anyway out.”

“At the moment no you're still growing though so those perceptions you have will evolve. You have to alter your state of mind that's all.”

“Easy said but how do I actually go about doing it?”

“Wisdom, that's where I come in. You have suffered a lot recently and been through hell.”

“Don't I know it?”

“Well now its time to learn why,” the man said and opened the book once more. He read aloud, “In the pursuit of infinite wisdom the only thing holding you back is your Self.” He shut the book again and said, “So what does that actually mean?”

“I don't know,” Mad Dog said shrugging his shoulders.

“Well you are the understanding so that is your job to find out.”

“Err, how? I wouldn't know where to start.”

“Well it might be a good idea to define the self first and then try and find out why it wants to hold you back.”

“Would that be your True Self?” Mad Dog said clutching at straws.

“No, it is you.”

“Me,” Mad Dog said in surprise, “Why would I want to do something like that?”

“Well you tell me for you are doing it.”

“I don't know,” Mad Dog said and thought awhile before he carried on “Wait a moment, You said at this moment I am my True Self and that thing that took over was my self.”

“Good, now we might start to get somewhere.”

“Fear of losing my life? Though I don't really see how that fits in.”

“Close, the first parts right you just need to finish it off.”

“I don't know err any chance of a clue?”

“Alright then I'll give you this one. When you are in the realms of time your Self is your Will, well your Physical Will that is for I am your Spiritual. As it grows it evolves, though it does not see it in this light. It thinks it will be taken over for it has been conditioned that way.”

“Conditioned, conditioned by what?”

“Well by the environment around it for one thing, ignorance of the divine.”

“Sorry, I don't understand.”

“Your Physical Will perceives your Spiritual Will as a separate identity when in fact it is only another aspect of your Self. You evolve towards it with infinite wisdom like a child evolves to be an adult.”

“Right, so why does it think that way?”

“Fear of the unknown, it expects the worse I guess.”

“But what has all this got to do with my suffering?”

“Evolution works on 2 levels, by understanding and experience you evolve towards your True Self on one level and your Spirit on the other.”

“I'm not sure about that, how would it actually work?”

“Think of your conscious level as a beam of light, the more it evolves the broader it gets, so as you grow your consciousness expands in both directions.”

“Right, but how does suffering actually effect this?”

“It purges you, cleanses your Soul.”

“Oh,” Mad Dog said and thought awhile before saying, “So is that why the monks used to flog themselves?”

“Well they thought so but it actually works with emotional pain not physical so they were a little out.”

“Oh, I can understand how losing my mother would work but what about the rest?”

“The rest?”

“You know, losing my job, being evicted from my house, how would that purge my Soul?”

“Well it would in the sense that it took away the cocoon that you had put around yourself but I'm afraid that those losses were more the actions of your free will.”

“Sorry?”

“Well take your job for a start; you don't turn up semi drunk and stinking of beer.”

“Oh, I didn't realise that I did.”

“Well you wouldn't the state of mind you were in; you were too wrapped up in your grief and alcohol.”

“Alright I can see your point, what about the house though?”

“If you had faced the problem you would have been able to come to terms with it but you were too wrapped up in your self pity to see that.”

“How?”

“Explained the situation that you were in, you probably would have got transferred to a flat but it would have been better than sleeping on a friend's floor.”

“Oh, so it was my fault then?”

“Well these things happen besides as I've said it did take away the cocoon that you had wrapped yourself in so in one sense it was a good thing.”

“So why is that then?”

“It makes you look beyond the reality of your surroundings, to see past the little picture. It does help to purge the Soul too but not on the same scale as the death of a loved one.”

“It does?”

“Oh yes it cuts a lot of ties away, house, job they both hold you on the web of life.”

“So it was a good thing then,” Mad Dog said unsure.

“Well at the moment it might not seem that way,” the man said with a laugh, “But with time you'll see the big picture. You have destroyed your ivory tower and now it's up to you to rebuild it.”

“Rebuild it, I wouldn't know how.”

“That's what I'm here for. You have your True Self to guide you as well so between us you'll come to no harm, well not real harm anyway.”

“Sorry, what do you mean by that?”

“Well you still have to purge yourself of your fear of death that is the first step.”

“How would I do that? The only way I could think off would be to actually die.”

“Then maybe we should have let you,” the man said with a laugh.

“Hold on a minute,” Mad Dog said upon realisation, “Surely I already have.”

“You have, how do you work that out?”

“Well I wanted to take my life so I must not fear death, stands to reason doesn't it.”

“Ah, in theory yes but let's be honest you were not rational when you made your decision so it doesn't count.”

“Ah, so it's my rational fear of death then.”

“Yes, tricky really you saw your mother's death and it brought up fears of your own mortality.”

“Well we all have to die.”

“Oh yes, but depending on your perceptions of death it enhances the fear of it.”

“Sorry, you'll have to elaborate on that.”

“Well if you perceive it as just a physical death you have less fear, is that any clearer?”

“Err no, not really.”

“Most people perceive it as a mental death too. They don't believe in an after life so to them when you die that's it.”

“I can see your point but how can anyone be actually sure until it happens?”

“I can, mind you it has already happened so that doesn't count.”

“What, do you mean to tell me that you are dead?”

“Well we say no longer in the physical it saves a lot of confusion.”

“Well that must be proof then. Surely that will take away my fear now?”

“Afraid not, though it might help, you will probably put this down to just a dream.”

“No, well I doubt it anyway.”

“You'll be different in the realms of time believe me. You'll need something a bit more tangible.”

“More tangible what like?”

“I'm afraid you'll have to wait and see but I will tell you one thing you'll have a lot of scary dreams.”

“In what sense?”

“Death and dying well that's enough for your first lesson when you wake up you might remember snippets of the dream but that will be all.”

Chapter 2

Mad Dog woke up to a bright new morning. He remembered that he had dreamt about a mountain but that was all. He felt strangely lifted though and this surprised him. He felt hungry too, very hungry. He had not eaten in days and now it was starting to show. He had a look around the caravan with the vague hope that there might be food there but he was soon disappointed. He found a knife and some matches but that was all the caravan would give up so he was more than just a little down hearted.

“There are some snares around the back,” a voice inside him said, “Why don't you check them out?”

“What, I thought that you were just my imagination.”

“Actually you are mine, created for my sins.”

“What?”

“Get yourself something to eat first. It might make a bit more sense with food inside you.”

Mad Dog went around the back and sure enough he found some snares. He checked them for signs of death and was disappointed until he came to the last one. He pulled out a large rabbit and went back to the caravan. As he studied it the voice said, “Well skin and gut it, its not going to do it itself.”

“But I don't know how.”

“What seriously, weren't you in the boy scouts?”

“Err no, it never appealed to me.”

“I see this is going to be quite a time then. However did you expect to live of the land?”

“Well I didn't.”

“What are you actually doing here then?”

“I don't know, I never really thought about it. I just wanted to get out that's all.”

“Running away from your problems without thinking of the consequences, how did you think you'd survive out here?”

“I never,” Mad Dog said sheepishly.

“Then it is lucky I am here. Do you know how to make a fire or do you intend to eat it raw?”

“Yes I know how to build a fire, I'm not stupid.”

“Well that's a matter of opinion but first I had better teach you how to skin and gut a rabbit.”

“Err alright,” Mad Dog said not knowing if he really had the stomach for it.

“Right, get the knife from the caravan and slit it at the front down the middle.”

Mad Dog did as he was told and then was told to take out all the insides being careful not to cut the intestines. After he did that he cut the head and paws of and pulled off the pelt.

“Good,” The voice said, “Now take it to the stream, wash it and on the way back pick up some wood for the fire.”

Mad Dog did as he was told and was soon sitting by the fire watching the rabbit cook.

“See it wasn't so bad,” the voice said.

“You said I was the Imagination, what did you mean?”

“I created you to help in my evolution and to cleanse me from my sins.”

“You'll have to explain that to me, it doesn't make sense.”

“Not to you, but you only see life as one lifetime, that leads to a very insular picture.”

“Well it is though isn't it? You live, you die, end of story.”

“If that's your perception then that's what will happen but it might be in your interests to try and look beyond.”

“Easily said but how do you actually look beyond death?”

“Now that's where your imagination comes to play, what do you imagine happens when you die?”

“You die, simple as that.”

“Tell me something; when you die do you think I do as well.”

“I don't know, I don't even know what you are for a start.”
 “I'm your True Self I thought I told you that yesterday.”
 “Well yes but what actually are you?”
 “I'm the evolution of your purpose, your divinity if you want to put it another way.”
 “What is that, some sort of riddle?”
 “The riddle of life maybe, what are you actually here for? Is it just to live and die? Surely there is more to life than that.”
 “Yes I suppose so, I mean when you put it like that I can see your point.”
 “Good, now we might be getting somewhere. Now what do you imagine that purpose is?”
 “To help your evolution and cleanse you from your sins.”
 “They're only effects; it's the cause you should be looking for.”
 “Sorry, I don't understand.”
 “You were actually put here to serve for by serving you evolve to God's purpose.”
 “What is that all? Surely there must be more to it than that.”
 “Oh yes a lot more but that in its essence is what you are here for, whether it is to serve your fellow Man or tend the Earth.”
 “That's the essence then, what about the rest?”
 “The effect, to love thy Self and know thy Self.”
 “Sorry, you'll have to explain that one to me.”
 “Purification of the Soul and expansion of the spiritual consciousness, it works on 2 levels, think of Cain and Seth.”
 “What?”
 “Will of God's blessed light and understanding through spiritual wisdom. Wisdom and understanding, does that mean anything to you?”
 “Err no.”
 “Then your progress is going to be very slow. Think of me as the understanding and you as the wisdom, two different aspects of your Self.”
 “What like the will and intuition?”
 “Yes that will do. Now your Will grows with knowledge and your understanding grows with experience. Does that make any sense to you?”
 “Yes I can sort of see that, well the Will side anyway.”
 “Well you are half way there so it looks like its just experience then.”
 “Right,” Mad Dog said and checked to see if the rabbit was cooked.
 “Another 5 minutes.”
 “How do you know all this anyway?” Mad Dog said remembering the caravan and the snares behind it.
 “Think of me as your sixth sense if it will make it any easier.”
 “How come I can hear you though, I've not turned schizophrenic have I?”
 “Well look on the bright side, you can use the term we when you are talking about yourself now.”
 “I have then. Is this from all the crap I've been through, has it driven me mad?”
 “You're only living up to your name besides how do you know everyone else is not mad and you are the sane one. You have to be pretty balanced to hear me.”
 “How do you work that one out?”
 “Well how many people can actually turn around and say they know their Self, think about it.”
 “True I suppose but how did this actually come about?”
 “All that pain you have been through has its upside.”
 “Well I don't know about that.”
 “You're still in pain that's why when its gone you'll truly understand.”

“I doubt it, I just see the pain I can't see the point.”

“Time will help and I will guide you through it if that's any consolation.”

“How?”

“Talk about your grief. Bring it to the surface and I will help you deal with it.”

“I don't know how. If I did I would have probably not hit the bottle so hard.”

“And added to your woes you see that's the trouble when you don't face your fears they tend to escalate.”

“My fears?”

“Your fear of dying.”

“This is not about my death it's about my mothers.”

“Cause and effect.”

“Sorry?” Mad Dog said as he checked the rabbit again.

“The death of your mother caused the grief but it left the effect of you questioning your own mortality.”

“No,” Mad Dog said taking the rabbit of the spit as it was ready, “I mean something like that I would know about.”

“It comes from your subconscious so you only actually see its effect.”

“I don't understand,” Mad Dog said and took a bite out of the rabbit, “Tastes good this, so what do you mean I only see the effect.”

“As I said yesterday there is more going on in your mind than just you.”

“Well there's you for a start, is it you that has the fear of death?”

“No, not me it's you but it's below your conscious level, you'll understand more as it comes to light.”

“I hope so; this is a bit beyond me. How are you going to do it?”

“Well first things first we'll have to deal with the other problems.”

“The other problems?”

“Yes, losing your job, losing your house. They've both took a chunk out of your self esteem.”

“Oh, yes I suppose they have.”

“Well these problems escalated from your fear of death. When you took solace in the drink you did not see the point of carrying on.”

“What? No it wasn't like that. I was made redundant for a start.”

“That's what they told you. They were going easy on you. I mean let's be honest they are hardly likely to turn around and say that it was because you were always drunk and smelling of beer.”

“Oh, I never realised.”

“It's not really a big problem. In the normal running of things it would never had happened. You weren't yourself at the time.”

“You know I did wonder about it. I mean I was the only one who was laid off but to tell you the truth I was more worried about my mother's death to be that bothered.”

“Well it's passed now anyway. It was only natural really when you think about it.”

“It was?”

“Yes, your sense of reality had taken a huge knock and it effected all your perceptions. You didn't see the point of going on.”

“Yes looking back there might be something in that. How would you explain the house though?”

“Similar really, you could have got a flat transfer if they would have known your problems.”

“But I decided to run away, about sums it up really.”

“Wouldn't really worry about it, with a mixture of grief and alcohol you were not yourself. Tell me though, how did you feel at the time?”

“I guess I thought that everything was against me and the world liked to kick a man when he's down.”

“Do you still feel that way?”

“Well I can understand about the job now. That was more to do with my actions, probably the house as well.”

“Good, it doesn't do to have paranoia.”

“True,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “Especially as I'm schizophrenic as well.”

“Well it's good to see that you still have some humour that will take you a long way. So tell me then, if you were still in that situation now would you have handled it any differently?”

“Yes, I think I would, I would not be on the bottle for a start.” With that something strange happened, it was like a weight was lifted from his shoulders. “What happened?”

“I'm just taking away some of those dark clouds, getting rid of some of the pain.”

“That was strange, weird, I can't explain it. It was just like err, relief.”

“Well we're making some progress then. Are you ready to go on?”

“My fear of death?”

“Well your mother's first; it should help to alleviate your own. You said that you see death as the end of the story as opposed to the turning of a page, do you still perceive that the same?”

“I'm not sure now, what with what just happened then I'm a bit confused.”

“You just got rid of a little of your negativity that's all.”

“But it goes against all my perceptions of reality. I've never come across anything like it before.”

“Well there are more things going on in your mind than you are aware of.”

“There is you for a start; I think this might be getting a little too much for me.”

“One step at a time then let's try and sort some of this confusion out.”

“I wouldn't even know where to start, self and True Self, wisdom and understanding, I mean where would you begin?”

“Well I've probably got a bit to answer for really I haven't been strictly honest with you.”

“You haven't, in what sense?”

“I am not your True Self I am your guide. Think of me as your guardian angel.”

“What,” Mad Dog said in surprise, “Some angel, you lied to me. Now that's hardly an angelic thing to do.”

“I can only reveal things as you are ready to hear them. The path that you are on is a very tricky one to follow.”

“So what other lies have you told me and how will I know when you are actually telling the truth?”

“They are not lies, well not as such. If I told you the whole truth before you were ready to understand it I would be wasting my time. Your understanding has to grow.”

“So what exactly is the truth then?”

“Well if you think you are ready. You are part of a triple aspect mind. You are your ego, your True Self's projected image on one level and your Spirit's on the other.”

“What?”

“I thought that you were ready for this. Now do you see why I have to let the information out a little at a time?”

“But what does it all mean?”

“Right, we'll take it one step at a time. Do you remember your dreams?”

“Sometimes.”

“Now when you dream it's not like you are awake is it?”

“Sorry?”

“You seem to just drift through it; you are not really in control of your actions. It's like you are in instinctive mode.”

“I suppose so, thinking about it yes.”

“Well that is your True Self. Now as you evolve the dreams get more lucid and you seem to have more control over your self. You can think, you can feel and sometimes you can even taste.”

“What, to what purpose?”

“Well it’s not to ever wake up again if that’s what you are thinking.”

“It sounds like it; I mean what else could it be? In the end you wouldn’t know your dreams from reality.”

“Interesting point I mean is this a dream we are in at the moment and is dream-time really reality?”

“I think you are enjoying this. You seem to revel in my confusion.”

“Well I’ve got to have my laugh, I mean after all you can’t get more fundamental than fun.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said moving it quickly along, “So why do you get more conscious in dreams then?”

“Good question and well put because that is what it’s all about, expansion of your consciousness. As you grow you evolve towards your True Self so you become more like it and more conscious of it, then you just merge.”

“Merge, you mean it takes you over?”

“No, think of it more like a child growing up.”

“Yes I can understand that and then your True Self’s imagination becomes its reality.”

“Very good, you surprise me.”

“Well I have my moments. I surprise myself sometimes. So how does the Spirit fit in then?”

“That’s another aspect of your self; some call it the Higher Self. You also evolve in that direction though this is on a different level of consciousness so you are not really aware of it.”

“Sounds interesting,” Mad Dog said with a hint of confusion.

“Well you did ask, now you called it will and intuition earlier, that’s not strictly true, it’s actually intellect and intuition. Your intellect is your Spirit, the will of God’s blessed light if you like. This evolves through the knowledge that you acquire as you go through life.”

“Right, so what am I then?”

“You are the understanding, understanding of spiritual wisdom. Well you will be when you’ve evolved.”

“And how do I actually do that?”

“By understanding, how else do you think that you would?”

“Well I don’t know, all this is new to me. First you tell me one thing and then something else.”

“And then maybe something else later, do you still believe in Santa Claus by the way?”

“Funny.”

“Well when you merge with your True Self you become your Spirit as well and then you become your purpose. Think of it as a child becoming a teenager becoming an adult.”

“I see what you mean about altering your perceptions; this will take some sinking in.”

“Well go for a walk then, you might even find something to eat on the way.”

“I’m not hungry,” Mad Dog said getting up

“You will be later, take that path to your right, “and Mad Dog obeyed.

Chapter 3

“One thing that puzzles me,” Mad Dog said as he made his way down the path.

“Just one, aren't you lucky.”

“You said cleanse me from my sins,” Mad Dog went on unperturbed, “What did you actually mean or did you just make that up?”

“Now Mad Dog would I lie to you,” he voice said in a mock tone of hurt.

“Well yes, you already have.”

“No I just massaged it a little that's all. The only thing I really misled you on was my role.”

“So I have to cleanse myself from my sins then, what sins did you have in mind?”

“Well there was stealing from the collection plate when you were an altar boy for a start. Doesn't go down well at all I can tell you.”

“Oh, I'm surprised you remember that it was a long time ago.”

“Oh we never forget.” the voice said in a tone of menace that unnerved Mad Dog more than slightly, “Don't you worry about that.”

“So what am I to do then?” Mad Dog said uneasily.

“Well like I said don't worry about it,” the voice said adopting a different tone.

“You had me going then, I had visions of fire and brimstone and eternal damnation.”

“We know the circumstances around it. We know basically you are a good man, we don't hold stuff like that against you.”

“Oh right, thanks, so what sort of sins are we talking about?”

“Really deadly ones, you'll be surprised.”

“Oh,” Mad Dog said not really knowing what else to say.

“Tell me Mad Dog, do you envy anyone?” the voice said much to Mad Dog's surprise as it was totally out the blue.

“Err no; well I don't think so any way.”

“Come now Mad Dog tell the truth. What about all those rich people with all their flash cars and big houses, are you seriously trying to tell me that you wouldn't want to be like them?”

“It's never really bothered me enough to think about it.”

“Yes I know, I was just winding you up, what about pride then?”

“Pride?”

“Well look at you, you're a big man, strong as an ox. You've got a good mind, isn't that something to be proud of?”

“I suppose so, never really thought about it.”

“Come now Mad Dog are you seriously trying to tell me that you've never looked around all those little fellahs and thought how good you were in comparison?”

“No, what's all this about?”

“The seven deadly sins, those are the sins you have to cleanse.”

“Oh, well I wouldn't say I was either proud or envious.”

“Well you might have dealt with them already so I wouldn't worry about it too much, what about sloth, are you lazy?”

“I shouldn't think so, sometimes maybe but not often.”

“Gluttonous, do you make a pig out of yourself? An over full plate, that sort of thing.”

“Not really, in fact I would say I hardly eat at all.”

“Avaricious, would you say that you were greedy?”

“Not really, mind you I guess I've never had the chance to be.”

“True, but if you did it would be different right?”

“No I don't think so mind you having said that you can't really be sure until the situation arises.”

“Well there is that though if it's any help I know that you wouldn't as I know what's in your heart.”

“You do, so why all the questions then?”
 “You’ve got to know it yourself. So that leaves just the 2 then, anger and lechery.”
 “Well I do seem to have a lot of anger in me and there might be a little lechery as well.”
 “Yes and very commendable of you to admit it.”
 “Well let's be honest you know what's in my heart so it's a bit of a waste of time lying.”
 “True, so tell me Mad Dog do you feel like trying to deal with your anger?”
 “Err yes, I suppose so.”
 “It could be painful I've got to warn you. It will mean digging up memories long suppressed.”
 “It's got to be done I suppose, I've got to get rid of it at the end of the day.”
 “Right, so tell me about the death of your mother, how did you feel?”
 “Devastated, one minute she was there and the next I'd never see her again, it's hard to really explain.”
 “Frustrating?”
 “I don't know about that, in what sense do you mean?”
 “Well its something well out of your control isn't it. You couldn't do a thing about it. Watching her die like that and feeling powerless to do anything.”
 “Well there was that as well. How did you know about that?”
 “I know what's in your heart. To get rid of this anger you are going to have to go really deep. So how did it feel knowing that she was not going to make it?”
 “I don't know,” Mad Dog said switching off, “I don't think I'm ready for this yet.”
 “It's your choice, but now you have started moving it, it might be a good idea to carry on.”
 Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “I suppose it just reinforced my helplessness, it made me angry. I just wanted to hit out and I didn't care who at or how many.”
 “You felt angry?”
 “Too right, could you blame me? Imagine watching your mother die and not being able to do a thing about it. It still hurts just thinking about it.”
 “Why does it hurt?”
 “Well all her life had been a struggle and even her death was. What sort of existence is that, no wonder I get angry. I don't envy anyone but why should there be such an imbalance?”
 “Is it the injustice of the situation that hurts the most? Is that what makes you the most angry?”
 “I don't know, it seems to come over on many levels. I guess at the end of the day it's the helplessness.”
 “There's more though isn't there Mad Dog bring it all to the surface and let it go.”
 “I don't know how, help me.”
 “That's what I'm here for, think it through Mad Dog, what makes you the most angry, why do you hurt?”
 “I don't want to die, there I've said it, are you happy now. Why should I have to die, it's not fair.”
 “That's it Mad Dog bring it out, let it all come. You don't need it inside you. Let it go.”
 “How,” Mad Dog said angrily, “I've still got to die at the end of the day. How can I let it go when it's all around me? What's the point of this anyway?”
 “Why are you afraid of dying? Tell me, talk to me Mad Dog. What is your fear?”
 “I don't want to die. Alright I know it's not much of a life but it's the only one I've got.”
 “You don't want to end up like your mother Mad Dog, is that what this is all about?”
 “No it's more than that, much more than that. I thought you understood.”
 “Well tell me, make me understand, why should you fear death, I want to know.”
 “Pain. Pain that's all it is pain, I've seen it myself why all the pain?”
 “Let it go, you don't need it any more. Let it go Mad Dog and then you'll be at peace.”
 “I'll be dead, that's the only time I will ever have peace.”

“Life’s more than just pain, you're more than that.”

“No, that's all I ever see pain.”

“That’s what you see that's not what you are. Why do you fear death Mad Dog, tell me.”

“Pain.”

“No,” The voice said interrupting him, “Why do you fear death Mad Dog, it's not the pain so what is it?”

“I don't know what happens afterwards I don't even know if there's an afterwards for a start.”

“Ah now we are getting somewhere, fear of the unknown. So what do you think happens when you die?”

“I don't know, I’ve just told you that.”

“Think about it, what do you believe will happen?”

“Pain.”

“Hell,” The voice said on recognition, “You think that you will end up in hell, is that it Mad Dog?” Mad Dog went quiet so the voice continued, “Guilt Mad Dog, is that what makes you angry?”

“Guilt,” Mad Dog said calming down slightly, “What do you mean guilt?”

“Conditioned reasoning, there is no hell; you have nothing to feel guilty about.”

“What, how can you be sure?”

“Seriously, are you asking me that?”

“Oh err right, is that it then?”

“Not yet, we're still breaking it up.”

“So how does it actually work then,” Mad Dog said wanting a rest from the pain so changing the subject.

“You may as well sit down for a while,” the voice said and Mad Dog did as he was bid. After he had settled the voice said, “This ones quite a major storm cloud so we have to first tackle it as a whole to loosen it. Then we take it apart a piece at a time to release it.”

“Really, so why can't we do it all in one go?”

“It might be a bit dangerous. I tell you it could be a right pressure cooker.”

“Oh,” Mad Dog said not liking the sound of that.”

“Don’t worry I'll guide you through so you don't come to any harm.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said still slightly unsure, “So why would guilt make me so angry?”

“Not as such, it's more to do with perceptions of God than anything else. If you believe in hell then your God must be one of anger, I mean let's be honest no God of love is ever going to shove his children in hell is he.”

“I don't suppose so but how would that make me angry?”

“Well it’s more to do with the God within, have you heard the expression we are all made in God's image.”

“Yes, we all look like him.”

“Well that's on one level. Try this for size then. Our Self is a reflection of what we perceive God to be. If you perceive him to be a God of anger then the God within would be the same. Can you come to terms with that do you think?”

“Yes, I can see it on another level if some one is funny with you, you usually return the favour.”

“That’s right yes.”

“And where does this guilt actually fit in, I can't really see how it equates?”

“That’s a man made disease from when he suppressed the God within and also God's purpose.”

“Sorry?”

“When Cain killed Abel, haven't you ever read Genesis?”

“Well not really and besides I'm sure that the bit I read was nothing like what you are talking about.”

“Oh it was, it was just that you didn't understand it that's all.”

“Right, well I guess you had better explain it to me then.”

“I'll give you a little of it and then we'll get on with the matter in hand.”

“Ah, getting rid of my anger.”

“That's right but first I had better explain a little more about guilt.”

“Sounds good to me.”

“So why should man create guilt, have you any thoughts on that score?”

“Not really, I don't suppose he did it intentionally.”

“Good, it was a reaction to an action and that action was?”

“Killing Abel,” and thought awhile before saying, “Going against his purpose?”

“Got it he went against what he was created for and so guilt was a downside of it all.”

“You said man created guilt, I thought it was God.”

“Well God didn't go against His own purpose so what makes you say that?”

“It said it in the Bible; well I'm sure it did.”

“The Mark of Cain you must mean, it was just a story. It has more to do with divine law than anything. What you sow so shall you reap on one level or every action creates a reaction take your pick.”

“Looks like its back to anger then, I'm not looking forward to this.”

“It's not so bad we've loosened it so now we take it apart. First things first why do you believe you will never see your mother again?”

“Well she's dead.”

“Only physically not mentally, don't you believe in an afterlife?”

“I must do, I believed in hell.”

“Well that's more from your subconscious really; clouded in darkness its perceptions are very hazy.”

“Hazy, so where does it get these perceptions from?”

“Well from you actually, you are the level of consciousness so you supply all the information.”

“I do, so what actually am I then?”

“I suppose you could say you were a hunter gatherer, you are here to hunt out your fears and gather the light blessed by God.”

“Sorry, light blessed by God?”

“Wisdom but this isn't getting you anywhere in your hunt for anger is it.”

“True, interesting nevertheless I suppose if I do believe that you do live on it would take a lot of my anger away.”

“Well that will be done with strengthening of faith so maybe we ought to leave that till later. Besides it won't get much of the cloud any way.”

“Injustice then, you know after you told me there was no hell I seemed to have calmed down a lot.”

“Well these were just excuses to put you off track. Oh they manifest in your level of consciousness as genuine fears but they are the effect not the cause.”

“Really, then you must have known this all along, why did you let me continue?”

“You had to find it out for yourself then you truly understand it. Can you see what I mean?”

“Yes I think, and this has got rid of my anger?”

“Not yet, only on the death side, anger is a very big subject it has more than just one cause.”

“I should have realised, it sounded a bit too easy.”

“Take heart you've cleared quite a lot of it up. We'll get some more out the way a bit later but first of all its time to sort you out with some food.”

“Well I'm not really that hungry to tell you the truth. I suppose with all that lack of eating my stomach has got used to it.”

“You don't fancy a nice bit of road kill then. There's a pheasant not far from here. Pick it up and have it tomorrow you don't want to let it get away.”

“Pheasant, I've never tried it before, it's not far did you say?”

“Just across the field,” and guided Mad Dog to it. He picked it up and carried it back to the caravan.

“Right back to anger then let's talk about your life being controlled does that make you angry?”

“I don't know, I wouldn't say that my life is controlled at all.”

“You wouldn't, your house is not your own, you work for some one else making them rich.”

“Well I don't actually live in a house now nor do I work so I thought they would be null points.”

“The resentment is still there it goes all the way back to your subconscious so think about it.” Mad Dog thought awhile before he said, “Well I guess I did resent it at the time but I don't think I do now.”

“It's still in your memory, talk about it, and tell me what you actually resented.”

“Well with the job I suppose it was the low wages and the boss used to rub your nose in it.”

“He did, in what way?”

“Big car, that sort of thing they say that he would gamble away a full year's wages at the horses sometimes. £10,000 in one day, can you imagine that?”

“So how did it feel all that sweat so some divvy can be the man at your expense?”

“Quite soul destroying really I mean the work was hard and the conditions bad, everything was bare minimum and they expected the maximum from you.”

“Yes I can imagine. What about the house, they took your home away what did you think about that?”

“Well it was my fault I suppose so I can't really be angry with them.”

“That's your rational side talking, what about your emotional side? How did you feel when that happened?”

“A little angry I guess though I was more concerned with my grief than anything else.”

“Yes but what a time to do it your mother had just died and they took away the last bit of security you had.”

“I didn't see it like that.”

“Deep down you did, you resented it Mad Dog. Go on admit it why should you lose your house especially at a time when you were going through hell as it was.”

“I didn't perceive it like that, I never really thought about it in that way.”

“You're in denial, don't bottle it up or it will fester.”

“I'm not, I'm sure I'm not.”

“You are going to have to go deeper, think it through, how did you feel?”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “They took away my sanctuary, cut off my roots, yes I guess I felt bitter.”

“Now we are getting somewhere, rest a while for this is quite a big one.”

Chapter 4

After a couple of minutes he was ready to start again so the voice said, “Right so work was Soul destroying and they took away your sanctuary, the place where you grew up with fond childhood memories. Tell me a little about your childhood.”

“It was the same as everyone else really. I was born, I went to school, and I grew up.”

“Were you happy with your lot; did you like it at school?”

“It was alright I suppose. I didn't really have a choice in the matter so it was a waste of time not liking it.”

“What about that control, your whole childhood was mapped out for you how did that feel?”

“I never thought about it.”

“Was that because it was beyond your control so you saw it as a waste of time?”

“I don't think so, well not consciously anyway.”

“Ah now we're talking. How do you imagine you felt about it unconsciously?”

“I don't know.”

“What about from your Spirit's point of view, how do you think that it felt? It was put here in the pursuit of infinite wisdom and all it got was low level knowledge.”

“Well I don't suppose it would be happy but how would that affect me?”

“It would reflect on you. Cluttering your mind with useless unimportant information and stunting its growth. Didn't you ever feel restless?”

“Well sometimes, but I don't think it was for that reason.”

“Don't fight it, let it out. You were wasting your time in a job you hated in a place that wasn't your own sapping a stunted Spirit even further, how did you feel?”

“I didn't see it like that.”

“Imagine it, led by morons who didn't have a clue and always with their own shallow agenda and self interests at heart, how did it feel?”

“Alright,” Mad Dog said angrily “I resented it, why not? I look back today and resent it but I didn't at the time.”

“Not consciously but deep down you were always aware of it. Tell me how you feel about it now.”

“I'm better than that, why should anyone want to suppress my Spirit. Who the hell do they think they are trying to play God with me, I'm better than that.”

“Go on Mad Dog, go deeper. Why should you be controlled? You are your own man, talk to me about it, and tell me how you feel.”

“I hated it. Led by morons who didn't have a clue? I was educated to work and nothing else. Just to fit into some niche that society had carved out for me. Where's the justice, where's the purpose to life.”

“Go on Mad Dog,” the voice said by way of encouragement, “You're nearly there now, what is your purpose in life?”

“I don't know. They never told me. They didn't think it was part of my education.”

“They didn't know themselves Mad Dog,” the voice said not wanting to let it go, “How could they, they were morons.”

“The blind leading the blind,” Mad Dog said angrily, “I didn't have a chance.”

“So what is your purpose Mad Dog,” The voice persisted, “What are you here for?”

“I don't know,” Mad Dog said loudly, “They never told me.”

“I did, what did I tell you?”

“To serve man and serve Nature.”

“How do you feel about that? Isn't that control on your life. A life of service, doesn't that make you a slave?”

“Yes, why should I serve man when all he sees it as a chance to rip me off. It's all one way nowadays; people see it as a weakness if you are like that. Everyone seems to be just after what they can get out of life forsaking all others.”

“What about you Mad Dog, are you like that? Do you see it as a weakness?”

“Yes, of course I do. Nowadays it doesn't pay to be honest; people see it as a weakness. I hate this world and all its injustice.”

“Now we are getting somewhere, righteous indignation from the Spirit.”

“What?” Mad Dog said confused.

“How do you feel now that you have let all that out of your system?”

“I'm still angry, could you blame me. It's still control at the end of the day no matter how you wrap it up. I thought that we were supposed to have free will.”

“Not when it's controlled by anger, it alters your perceptions and distorts your judgement. Not all people try and rip you off, that's only anger talking. You only see the worse of the situation.”

“What do you mean about righteous indignation?”

“You see the inequality in the world and it is only natural that you should feel indignation though it has a downside to it as you're only increasing the negativity. You don't need that sort of anger inside you. Do you feel any better?”

“Well a little I suppose. Is it done now?”

“Just clear up a few points and that should be it. Waiting for a thought to die is to understand its pain.”

“What?” Mad Dog said and had vague recollections of hearing it before.

“Anger is the thought, when you can understand it, it will go away.”

“Sorry?”

“You'll have to understand how the mind works first. When does a thought become a memory?”

“When you've finished with it I suppose,” Mad Dog said unsure.

“Sometimes but what about if it is an emotional thought? Sure it becomes a memory but it still holds onto the pain.”

“I don't understand that.”

“A normal memory you can put behind you but an emotional one especially a negative one will still come back to haunt you.”

“Yes, I suppose so.”

“So how do you take away your emotional perceptions from that thought?”

“By understanding its pain?” Mad Dog said unsure.

“That's right; with understanding it nulls the pain and becomes a normal memory.”

“Right, so how do I get this pain to null?”

“By becoming its understanding let's take school as an example, are you the same person as you were then?”

“Err. Yes.”

“You haven't evolved then? You haven't grown up mentally?”

“Well yes but I'm still the same person.”

“Only physically, you are a different person mentally. Can you accept that?”

“I suppose so.”

“You've grown up, your perceptions have altered. You are completely different. That child has died so why not let the pain die along with it. You don't need it anymore.”

“I suppose not, but how do I actually go about doing it?”

“Well you've made a start by recognising it now you have to understand it.”

“Yes, go on.”

“Are you happy in yourself?”

“That’s a strange question,” Mad Dog said not seeing the connection.

“I know you've been through a lot but now, at this moment in time, are you happy in yourself? Would you change yourself in anyway? I'm not talking about your circumstances; I'm talking about you as a person.”

“Yes, I am happy.”

“Good, that makes it a lot easier.”

“Does it?”

“Yes. You see all that you have been through is what goes to make you; you so if you had not been through all that you might have turned out different.”

“Yes I can see that but surely that only works with my childhood.”

“Well that's the greatest moulder but even losing your job and house adds to your experience of life. It all builds into your character. Experience is your understanding and with it you grow.”

“Yes I can see that and it does ease the pain a little.”

“Well that's a start but always remember to learn by your mistakes otherwise it is not experience and take heart from that.”

“You know you're right. I've never really looked at it from that way before.”

“Live and learn, that's what you are here for. Now let's move on to people ripping you off.”

“Well now I think of it some more you are right. Most people are pretty genuine I guess I just got unlucky.”

“Not really unlucky you had to go through it to build your character but if its any consolation it’s not about them at the end of the day it’s about you.”

“Sorry?”

“That’s what you were put here for self development, the same as they were.”

“Oh,” Mad Dog said and went into thought, “So that fellow I used to work for, he has to do it as well.”

“Yes,” The voice said and laughed, “Mind you the moron doesn't know that and from what you have just told me he's just adding to his woes.”

“He is?” Mad Dog said wanting some elaboration.

“Well look at it logically, heavy gambling and crap working conditions that makes him avaricious.”

“Yes I suppose so, I’ve never really thought about it in that way.”

“Another lesson in life, learn to look deeper. Now avarice usually comes from pride or envy so I'm willing to bet he's got them as well.”

“Oh pride definitely, he was a right arrogant sod. I'm not sure about envy though.”

“Two sides of the same coin. You think that you are better than someone stands to reason that you think some one is better than you. He can't see past his wealth, that's his gauge in life so he thinks that the more he has the better he'll be but there's always somebody richer than him.”

“Good point, I’m sure the circles he mixes in would be similar people, birds of a feather and all that.”

“There you go see I bet he likes the finer things in life and to excess.”

“Well he does carry quite a spare tyre and he's quite an idle bastard as well.”

“Carrying all that weight no doubt, now if you were a proud man you could turn around and say that you were more evolved than him and a lot closer to your true purpose in life. Not of course that I would expect you to say it.”

“No of course,” Mad Dog said with a wry smile, “But I tell you what, the comfort I get from that is amazing.”

“Good, so you would actually be quite foolish to get angry about it then.”

“Yes I see your point,” Mad Dog said sheepishly.

“Days gone by, don't worry about it and don't forget it. Keep conscious of it and take strength from it but don't get deluded.”

“Right.”

“Now the house, you could always look at it as a fresh start, a new beginning. You have no ties now and you could be who-ever or what-ever you want to be. Getting rid of the old to make way for the new.”

“I suppose so,” Mad Dog said though he was unsure.

“Turn your weaknesses into strengths; it's the only way to do it. Don't see it as death see it as re-birth. You had to break the chains of control to find yourself.”

“Yes, you're right,” Mad Dog said picking up a little; “I guess it was just my stupidity of letting it go that narks me.”

“You needed to get out, it was probably one of the best things you ever did. You don't think so at the present moment but believe me you will soon change your mind.”

“I'll have to take your word on that score. At the moment it doesn't feel that way.”

“Time will tell. You feel up to the big one then?”

“The big one?”

“Death, the final frontier.”

“I thought that had to be done with strengthening of faith. You said you would leave it to later.”

“Well its later now,” the voice said with a laugh, “Your subconscious fear of death can only really be pacified by an out of body experience when you are pure enough to merge.”

“Really, what from your solar plexus?”

“Yes that's right, how did you know that?”

“Well I'd been having strange dreams but I thought it was just the drink. That was one of them.”

“Oh well that's the sub conscious end sorted then.”

“Is it, how do you work that one out?”

“You left your body, doesn't that tell you anything.”

“What like?”

“Doesn't it prove that you and your body are separate? You left your body, if you were just your brain you would not have been able to do it. What does that tell you?”

“When your brain dies you live on,” Mad Dog said on recognition, “And I just thought it was the drink messing around with my reality.”

“Oh no it's more than that. Didn't you feel different the next day, sort of lifted?”

“Hung over, a blinding head ache.”

“Well you know now so let's try and take it forward into your conscious level.”

“How are you going to do that?”

“Right, well your sub conscious fear of death was sated as up till then it had seen it as the end. This works its way down your conscious levels so you see the death of a job as the end when you should actually be looking at it as the potential for a new beginning. Your house would fall into that category as well. Can you see the logic in that?”

“Yes, I think. So instead of looking at it as death I should be looking at it as rebirth.”

“Right, so how do you feel about the death of your mother now?”

“Well it still hurts though if I was to look at it logically I should be happy.”

“You still have an emotional chain on her. Until you cut it she's going nowhere.”

“What?” Mad Dog said in surprise.

“You are still holding onto her with your grief. Until you learn to let her go she can't move on.”

“What do you mean, what are you talking about?”

“Your pain still holds her, let her go.”

“How?”

“Why are you grieving her? You said yourself that she would move onto a better place so why are you holding her back.”

“I didn't know that I was, how can I let her go?”

“By recognising the grief for what it is, self pity for losing a loved one. You miss her, and why not she was your mother. Keep her in your heart and let her move on so you can.”

“I'm not ready for this, it's not time yet.”

“What do you mean its not time yet, how long do you intend to hold her for?”

“I don't mean it like that. I don't think that I am strong enough to deal with it yet.”

“I do, I know what's in your heart, and you are strong enough now. Get rid of the self pity, it's holding you both back. Feel happy that she's left this hell and take comfort from the fact she's moved to a better life.”

“No, why did she have to die like that. Where's the justice in that?”

“Don't talk about justice when you are holding her back. That's irrational, lose it.”

“She's my mother,” Mad Dog said angrily.

“Yes, so why are you hurting her?”

“I'm not,” Mad Dog said calming down, “I would never do that.”

“Well let her go. You'll always have her memories; just make sure they are fond ones.

Understand her pain Mad Dog and take comfort that's she's no longer in it. She hasn't died, she's just moved onto a higher plane that's all. She's a lot happier there believe me.”

“She is,” Mad Dog said quietly, “I guess you're right.”

“You know I'm right. How are you feeling now?”

“I don't know, sort of strange, a bit giddy.”

“That will pass. Are you hungry?”

“A little, mind you I don't fancy plucking that pheasant.”

“Just skin it; the feathers will come off as well.”

Mad Dog did as he was told and was soon sitting by the fire watching it cook. “You came along way today,” the voice said, “You made good progress.”

“I didn't realise that I was holding her back. I feel a little bit guilty.”

“You didn't know. You have nothing to feel guilty about. She'll always be there for you. You may even see her in your dreams from time to time just to let you know that she's still around.”

“What are dreams anyway, what are they for?”

“All sorts, they help to guide your path, they comfort you when you need it. Think of it as a channel to the divine. When you can understand them you are well on your way.”

“They come from the divine?”

“The Spirit, the Soul, depending on your dream. They are both there to help your development.”

“There's a lot of people that hold them in high regard I've noticed that.”

“And so they should. They transcend anything else as they are a guide to the true reality of the situation. One thing though, the dreams that you have are personal to you so it is in your interests to understand them.”

“I don't seem to remember them; they've been a bit hazy of late.”

“That's probably the alcohol, it dulls the senses. You should remember them a bit more clearly now.”

“Well I hope so. Mind you some of them used to be quite frightening so I'm not sure about that.”

“They were just testing your mettle; they shouldn't be too bad now. The ones with death were generally about the death of a negative aspect of your self so if anything you should look forward to them and use them as a gauge to your progress.”

“I’ll bare that in mind.”

“Anyway the bird is cooked now,” the voice said so Mad Dog took it of the spit and tasted it.

“Hey, it's not bad.”

“Thought you might like it just think of it as posh man's chicken.”

“Well I'm certainly living in style,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “I could get used to this.”

“Not too used to it you can't be a hermit all your life.”

“True, I’ll have to go back soon.”

“Well not just yet so enjoy it whilst you can.”

Mad Dog finished his meal and tiredness drove him to bed.

Chapter 5

Mad Dog found himself walking down a square corridor that had neither doors nor windows. He did not know what he was doing there but kept walking just the same. All of a sudden a man rushed passed him almost knocking him over and ran towards the end. As he got to the end Mad Dog noticed an opening to the right and a blinding light shining out. Although Mad Dog was still a fair distance away he had to half shield his eyes to look ahead. The man turned at the top and ran straight into the light.

Before he could regain his composure Mad Dog found himself back on the mountain side with the old man he had met the night before. "What was that?" he said in mild shock.

"Just Satan returning back to the light," the man said to add to his confusion.

"What?"

"You just got rid of your anger," the man said with a laugh, "It's gone back to be reformed in the light."

"Sorry?"

"Right, I see this is going to be a long night. Perceptions of God, what do you know about that?"

"Love and anger," Mad Dog said remembering his earlier conversation.

"Good, maybe this won't be so difficult then. Satan means understanding God's wisdom, God's light and was originally an angel of the divine until he fell from grace. You know that story?"

"Err, yes. Well I think so."

"Well Satan is actually anger, well more to the point righteous indignation, and has been worshipped as a God by people who were ignorant of the divine."

"Really, I didn't know that."

"No for you was one of them. He was put in place to keep you from your purpose in life and so you could evolve past him and recognise the true nature of God. Now that you have he has gone back to the light to be reformed and that leaves the pathway open to true enlightenment. Now do you understand what I mean when I say that in the pursuit of infinite wisdom the only thing stopping you is your Self?"

"Right, but why did you say it was fear of death the last time?"

"Well it is to some extent for anger has to die before love can live but usually we work on a ready to know basis. We only let you know what you are ready to hear."

"Oh I see. You mean like the voice being a guide instead of my True Self?"

"Well it only guides you until you are ready enough for your True Self to take over so that was true really."

"So Satan, what did you call him again?"

"Understanding God's wisdom, God's light but as we live in God's reflected light he has gone back and so is light of God's wisdom, God's understanding."

"Is that significant?"

"Yes, you are now God's understanding as opposed to God's light."

"Sorry?"

"Tricky isn't it," the man said with a laugh, "It's all to do with the God within. Now the first stage of your development you are understanding God's wisdom or your intuition and God's light, your will."

"Oh so it's in two parts, amazing."

"Stick around you'll be surprised. Now you have evolved past that stage you are ready to go to the next."

"The next stage?"

"Light of God's wisdom and God's understanding, spiritual will and spiritual understanding."

"Right, then what?"

“I won't tell you until you are ready to hear it. It does not do to take on too much in one go.”

“Fair enough so what's the next step then?”

“True enlightenment,” the man said and opening the book read “Through transformation through light you get the word blessed with understanding seeing light (the spirit of God's love blessed with God's purpose (God's spirit)). The will blessed with spirit seeing light (spiritual wisdom blessed with seeing the word blessed by God.) The spirit blessed with transformation transforming through work for God's purpose (God's understanding-understanding blessed with knowing the blessing of God) and through love the spiritual word knows God's wisdom is understanding.”

“What, what does all that mean?”

“One step at a time let's start with through transformation through light, what do you think that means?”

“Enlightenment?” Mad Dog said just guessing.

“Good, so what do you get from this enlightenment?”

“All that lot.”

“Four things so we'll take them one step at a time.”

“Sounds good to me.”

“The word blessed with understanding seeing light (The spirit of God's love blessed with God's purpose (God's spirit)), but what does that actually mean?”

“Well I was hoping that you would tell me as that would make it a lot easier.”

“Maybe but I'm afraid that it does not work like that. I've gave you the wisdom so now you must give me the understanding so you will grow. I am the light of God's wisdom and you are God's understanding if that's any help.”

“The word blessed with understanding seeing light; does that mean that you can understand the word of God when you are enlightened?”

“Well close enough. So how would that fit in with the spirit of God's love blessed with God's purpose, God's spirit.”

“Is that what light is, God's spirit. The spirit of God's love blessed with God's purpose?”

“Yes but you'll have to elaborate on it a little to get the true understanding.”

“I don't think that I can. Would there be any chance of a clue to get me started?”

“I suppose so. Maybe you do need a little bit more wisdom to help you with your understanding.”

“I think I need all the help I can get I'm quite new to this game.”

“I can tell. There are seven spirits that go to make God. They are the spirits of wisdom, understanding, knowing, discernment, purpose, love and life, any clearer?”

“Err, no,” Mad Dog said sheepishly.

“Think of me as the spirit of wisdom and you as the spirit of understanding,” the man said unperturbed, “You also have the spirit of life and that voice you hear is the spirit of knowing. The spirit of love is the Holy Spirit and the spirit of purpose is God. The spirit of discernment is also with you but that grows with the spirit of understanding.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said and felt more confident for some reason, “So that would make light the Holy Spirit with God's purpose.”

“Correct, so from this light the spirit of understanding grows which incidentally is your True Self, how does that sound?”

“Fair enough.”

“So you understand it then?”

“Well I didn't say that,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “What its saying is from enlightenment your Soul receives the Holy Spirit and knows God's purpose for it. This helps it grow in understanding for that is what it is in essence so it grows in strength.”

“Very good, yes you have summed it up very nicely, ready to move on to the next one then?”

“Yes alright.”

“The will blessed with spirit seeing light (spiritual wisdom blessed with seeing the word blessed by God), what does all that mean?”

“Your physical will evolves to your spiritual will; this is done by wisdom, the word blessed by God.”

“Not bad, so we've got both evolution of the Soul and evolution of the Spirit from the light. Want another?”

“Go on then, it's quite fun this.”

“The spirit blessed with transformation transforming through work to God's purpose (God's understanding- understanding blessed with knowing the blessing of God),” the man read out.

“I think I might have spoken a little too soon. Quite a mouthful that. Would the spirit be the spirit of understanding by any chance?”

“If it feels good go with it. What does it actually say, what is this transformation for a start?”

“Enlightenment?”

“It sounds more than that to me. Expand it and see where it goes.”

“It's talking about a blessing of some sort. Would that be God's blessing?”

“God's blessing?”

“When Jacob wrestled with an angel he received God's blessing.”

“Yes, but what actually is God's blessing, what does it mean?”

Mad Dog thought a while and said, “I don't know.”

“You don't know. What do you mean you don't know, you've already had it.”

“What,” Mad Dog said and remembered his out of body experience, “Is it purity?”

“Got it a pure self is a True Self so what is it saying then?”

“You are transformed to a life of God's service. Your understanding is now God's understanding because you know that you have his blessing.”

“Good, just one more then. Through love the spiritual word knows God's wisdom is understanding.”

“I'm not sure about that one, is it the spirit of knowing by any chance?”

“Go on,” The man said encouraging him.

“From the transformation through light the loving spiritual word knows God's wisdom is understanding, that doesn't sound right.”

“Good, very good in fact. So what should it actually say?”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “From the transformation through light the loving spiritual word knows God's wisdom through understanding.”

“Excellent, you are coming on very well.”

“What, do you mean to tell me that was a trick? Don't you think that this is hard enough already?”

“Now I didn't say it would be an easy road to travel. You also have to build up your spirit of discernment as well.”

“So there might be a few more hiccups along the way, something to look forward to.”

“That's the spirit,” the man said laughing.

“Funny.”

“Right, so putting them all together what have you got? You don't have to go through the second parts just the main ones.”

“Okay. So from the transformation through light your understanding grows, your physical will evolves, you receive God's blessing and the spirit of knowing.”

“Right, very good. So that's what you actually get from being enlightened. Do you want to go on?”

“What's next then?”

“Well the next step talks about the evolution of the Spirit on one level and the evolution of the Self on the other. There is quite a lot in it so we will have to take it in two stages. I'll do the first one and ask your guide to do the second.”

“Okay then lead the way.”

“The will (God's blessed light)- through light seeing spiritual will you get blessed knowing God's transformation from which you get a life of spiritual love blessing God through God's purpose from which you get life through spiritual wisdom (loving understanding of God through God's purpose) from which you get God's purpose (God's life through spiritual will).” Mad Dog was still quiet when he had finished so the man said, “Well any thoughts in that direction?”

“Confusing, is it talking about the mergence of your Physical and Spiritual Will?”

“Well yes but tell me how you arrived at that conclusion. Don't forget that it's the journey to the answer that matters as much as the answer itself.”

“Right, well the first bit is the Physical Will, the will of God's blessed light. Now this will of light sees the spiritual will and the blessed knowing of God's transformation would be the actual mergence of the two. From this mergence of the two you get the Holy Spirit and a life of service and from this God's life through your spiritual will.”

“Could you elaborate a little more? You've got the gist of it but I want to make sure.”

“Well it sounds a bit strange to me actually. What it seems to be saying is when your Physical Will and Spiritual Will merge you turn into God.”

“Now that would depend on what your perception of God would be and also of course what you meant by a mergence.”

“Well I had visions of an old man with a beard,” Mad Dog said without thinking.

“What, are you trying to be funny?”

“Oh no,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “I didn't mean you. I meant some old fellow sitting on a throne in Heaven dispensing justice.”

“How does that actually fit in with the seven spirits of God and where ever did you get that conception from in the first place, an old man indeed.”

“Well my upbringing I suppose though I don't really know how that would fit in with your seven spirits.”

“It wouldn't, it looks like it might be a good idea to try and re-evaluate God before we take this any further.”

“Sounds good to me, so what actually would you say God was?”

“Will seeing transformation. He's an enlightened Soul with a purpose to serve.”

“What, I don't understand. How can this be possible, who made all this?”

“The creative force, the spirit of love I'm afraid that you might have been misled if you thought of him like that. God is actually an evolved man. He's not there to be worshipped he's there to serve, that is the spirit of purpose.”

“So all them Sundays were just a waste.”

“Well look on the bright side,” the man said laughing, “Sitting on a hard wooden seat is good for your back and besides I hear you made quite a profit from it.”

“Oh,” Mad Dog said going sheepish, “You know about that.”

“Too right,” the man said his tone altering slightly, “Stealing money from all those starving people you should be ashamed of yourself.”

“Ah well,” Mad Dog said not really knowing what to say.

The man laughed and said, “Don't worry we know all about it. So anyway, back to God.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said glad to get off the subject, “So he's just an enlightened soul then.”

“Well I wouldn't say just believe me you could spend many life times trying to obtain your divinity. So next we move onto the mergence. It's not actually a mergence like your self and True Self. Your spirit leaves you and joins the Collective that some people call Heaven.”

“Oh right, I suppose that would make more sense. So the will changes to the understanding.”

“Yes that's right and then you go onto a life of service and grow in love and understanding. You ready for the next part of the passage or do we need to go over it again?”

“Might be a good idea for me to re-iterate it especially in the light of the new information you gave me.”

“Probably a good idea, looks like it's down to you then.”

“So from the mergence of Will and Spirit your Spirit is transformed to the Collective from where you get light that is the Holy Spirit and God's purpose. Now from this light you get wisdom and understanding of both God and God's purpose through a life of service to the divine.”

“You got it, ready for the next lot?”

“Go on then, I think I'm on a roll.”

“Why do people say that, I thought that things had to be going downhill for them to roll?”

“True, so what's next?”

“ God's purpose (God life through spiritual will) married to God transformed to God's spirit gives you (blessed by God) a self of God (God's purpose) and a blessed loving self of God (God's purpose). What does that actually tell you?”

“From a life of service to the divine and a transformation to God's spirit you get a blessed self with purpose and a blessed loving self with purpose.”

“And what's the difference between the two?”

“Would the first one be the Higher Self and the second the True Self?” Mad Dog said unsure.

“ Right,” the man said and carried on, “From God's purpose (God life through spiritual will) married to a mind blessed with God's purpose(God's purpose -God's spirit) you get a wisdom loving self of God (God's purpose) and a will of God's (blessed with light) which is akin to the light of God, God's life (God's spirit).”

“From a life of service to the divine and a mind blessed with the spirit of God's purpose you get a loving self of God blessed with wisdom through God's purpose and an enlightened will which is akin to God's light, and a life of God.”

“Well the next step would be to put them all together and see what they sound like.”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “From the mergence of Will and Spirit your Spirit is transformed to the Collective from where you get light that is the Holy Spirit and God's purpose. Now from this light you get the wisdom and understanding of both God and God's purpose through a life of service to the divine.

From a life of service to the divine married to the transformation of God's spirit you get a blessed self through purpose and a blessed loving self through purpose.

From a life of service to the divine and a mind blessed with the spirit of God's purpose you get a loving self of God blessed with wisdom through God's purpose and an enlightened will which is akin to God's light and a life of God.”

“Well it sounds good, do you understand it?”

“Yes it sounds pretty coherent, what do you think?”

“Sound good to me,” the man said and shut the book, “Mind you, you are the understanding.”

“Oh right, like that is it?”

“Afraid so, I'm only here to guide you but if it's any help you're doing alright.”

“Thanks, is there much more to do?”

“ Quite a bit yet,” the man said with a laugh, “ It's only early days but you will quickly get through it if that was anything to go by.”

“So no more then?”

“No you've got to let it sink in. Besides it's about time you woke up the day shift is ready to take over.”

With that Mad Dog woke up.

Chapter 6

Mad Dog woke up to a bright new morning and much to his surprise he remembered most of his dream. He stretched and left the caravan to feel the warmth of the Sun on his face.

"You're up bright and early," the voice said, "What happened?"

"I feel good, strange but good."

"You up to a bit more self development then?"

"Yes, why not, that fellow said you would guide me through the next stage of enlightenment."

"Oh you remembered your dream. Good it shows you are making a little progress."

"Yes, you could say he was most enlightening," and laughed out loud.

"Oh dear, I think I preferred it when you were suicidal, you were a lot better company."

"Well those days are well and truly over. Hopefully all that's behind me now."

"I hope so too. Now what's the first thing on the agenda for today?"

"Enlightenment?"

"Lechery," the voice said much to Mad Dog's dismay, "And then I thought that maybe we might try a crack at the meaning of life if you think that you are up to it."

"What about my enlightenment, I was so looking forward to it."

"Plenty of time yet, we've got to clean you up a bit first."

"What you mean like have a bath? There's only a stream and I don't really fancy that."

"I meant mentally, mind you looking at you a bath might not sound a bad idea."

"You mentioned lechery," Mad Dog said changing the subject quickly.

"Thought you might see it my way so lechery it is then."

"Is this going to be painful like the anger was?"

"No, it's quite an easy one to clear up really."

"Is it?"

"Yes because what you've actually got isn't lechery though you think that it is."

"It's not?"

"No, you're not really lustful as such. I mean let's be honest when you were in a stable relationship did you ever look at another woman?"

"No, I was always faithful."

"It's just a little loneliness that's all. When you are back on your feet again and in a stable relationship that will all go away and you'll be back to normal."

"I don't know about that to tell you the truth my confidence has took quite a pasting recently."

"Only natural, it will come back in time just be patient and wait and see."

"Are you sure, I was wondering if you could help me get it back."

"It will come back of its own accord. Now I know that I said that it comes from within but that's something you have to do for yourself."

"Oh, pity."

"You'll notice the difference soon. You're actually doing something about it already. All this self development will help so just be patient."

"Is that it then, is lechery done?"

"Yes it was just a bit of guilt so don't worry about it. So what's next then?"

"The meaning of life."

"Right, so what is it then?"

"I don't know, people have been looking for it for years."

"Purification of the Soul and expansion of the spiritual consciousness to achieve our purpose and be at one with the Universe our purpose being our divinity and the Universe being our balance."

"What, really?"

“Yes, so what does it actually mean?”

“Well purification of the Soul would be cleansing our sins and expansion of the spiritual consciousness would be growth through wisdom I suppose. To achieve our divinity I can understand though I'm not sure about the Universe.”

“That’s our balance. Have you never heard the saying that every man was a Universe?”

“I think so, so what exactly is this balance then?”

“It’s a balance mind, so why is this balance so important?”

“So we can be at one with the Universe,” Mad Dog said clutching at straws.

“Well you're close believe it or not. It's actually so you can be at one with your Self.”

“Would that be your Higher Self?”

“Yes, although by that time you would have been your True Self as you would have evolved.”

“Oh right, I get it, yes that makes sense. So that's the meaning of life then, not much when you think about it.”

“Well it’s gave quite a few people head aches over the years.”

“So let's get this right then. You are here to help me purify my Soul and the man in the dreams to expand my level of consciousness in the other direction.”

“Yes, but now you are purged I can help you expand your consciousness too.”

“That leads us back to enlightenment, well if you think I'm ready for some more.”

“Well you're keen I'll give you that. Mind you, you learn quicker when you are eager so it might be a good idea. So how far did you actually get?”

“Well he told me what you actually get from enlightenment and then moved on to talk about the evolution of the Will.”

“Not bad, one and a half days, you covered quite a lot of ground.”

“Oh no, that was only from last night.”

“Right,” the voice said not wanting to elaborate, “We’ll make a start then. From God's transformation (God's life) you get understanding (through spiritual wisdom), so through light seeing understanding you get a will of God blessed with light (God's light) which gives you a life of God, the spirit of God(God's purpose), God (God's purpose) and through God's purpose blessed with God's knowing (through transformation) from which through light seeing spiritual will you get life through spiritual wisdom (loving understanding)through God's purpose (God's spirit) which gives you God's purpose (God's life through spiritual will)from which light sees God's spirit giving you spiritual understanding through life, the spirit through God's life and (blessed by God)the spiritual word through spiritual wisdom. Any thoughts?”

“From God's transformation you get understanding, this is what your Self is, your understanding of life. Now from enlightenment you get a will of God which is basically a will of light. From this you get a selfless life in other words a life of God, the Holy Spirit or the spirit of God and God which is enlightenment through God's purpose or God's knowing which is done through the transformation of the Holy Spirit. Now this seeing your spiritual will gives it life through spiritual wisdom and serving God's purpose the mergence of which gives you spiritual understanding, a spiritual life and the spiritual word.”

“Good. Light sees God's spirit, what does that actually mean?”

“Well me I suppose, does it mean I actually see it?”

“Yes, usually after an out of body experience.”

“What does this err. spirit actually look like?”

“Ha, ha, ha.”

“What, what's so funny?”

“Well it beats the hell out of pink elephants. So what did you think it was then, the D.T's?”

“Well I didn't know. Let's be honest with all the crap I'd been going through you couldn't blame me for thinking I was losing it.”

“Right, so what did you actually see then? Mind you joking apart it must have been quite frightening for you what with everything going on.”

“You're telling me, it was strange. I thought I was going to die I can tell you.”

“I'll bet, it must have been quite a blip to your reality seeing it.”

“Well it wasn't just seeing it. It was what actually happened before that was the scariest.”

“Was it?”

“Yes, I actually thought I was going to die. In fact when I saw it, it came as quite a relief.”

“Really, so what happened?”

“I was in the house not long before I was due to be evicted and I must admit that I had had a few drinks and something really strange started to happen.”

“Yes, go on.”

“Well it's hard to explain really, it was like every thought that I had I had heard it before.”

“Sorry?”

“As I said it's hard to explain. It gave me the feeling that I had heard it before, maybe it was in a dream, that was the first thought I had. I seemed to be going around in circles, ever decreasing circles.”

“You'll have to explain that to me. What do you mean by ever decreasing circles?”

“Well it was my thought trains. I tried to think of something else but even that I had already thought of and all the thoughts seemed to lead on to one thing, my death.”

“That sounds frightening, what makes you think that you were going to die?”

“Well because I felt that I had heard it before it must have been a dream so I got this really uneasy feeling that I was in a dream and so I would wake up to a different reality.”

“I don't suppose it helped when I said that this might just be a dream then.” the voice said laughing.

“Well it brought back memories though as I said earlier I had got it sorted in my mind it was just the effects of the alcohol and all the crap I was going through.”

“So what actually happened then? Every thought you had you thought that you had heard it before and then you thought that you would wake up from a dream. How does death equate with that?”

“That would be my death. Well from being a dream I went on to think that I had been trapped by something.”

“Sorry, trapped by something?”

“Yes, something had trapped me so it could take over my mind. I thought I was going to lose my identity, it was steering me to my death.”

“And what do you think was trying to trap you?”

“My memory I know that might sound daft but at the time it didn't. I had thoughts that as I had done it before I was being controlled by something and that something, the memory was going to take full control of me.”

“Oh,” the voice said on recognition, “Do you know what that actually was?”

“Yes, frightening.”

“Yes, I'll bet. It was the shift in consciousness from thought to memory.”

“We've mentioned that but at the time I was in the dark; I thought it would just be my death.”

“So what happened then?”

“Well daft as it sounds I thought that if I was to write down I was alive when I woke up the next day I would be.”

“Sorry?”

“Oh that thought train had moved on a little by then. I had got to the stage that I thought I was going to be taken over and die when I slept.”

“Quite unnerving I'll bet.”

“At first I thought of never going to sleep again but I sensed if I wrote it down I would be alright. Now by this time you'll have to bare it in mind that I was frantic and enhanced by the fact that I could not find a pen and some paper and thought that if I forgot what I was supposed to be writing I would be doomed.”

“Sounds like you had an interesting night, so what happened then?”

“Well I eventually found them and wrote it down but then the goal posts moved.”

“Sorry?”

“I had to write down I am alive whilst I know I am alive so I ripped the first one and wrote that down. After that the posts moved again and it expanded once more. I was trapped because I knew I would never be able to remember it and write it all down. Beside if I did it would just get bigger.”

“What happened then?”

“Well something made me write give up so I wrote it down. I tried to rewrite the other one but I got give up again. This happened a few more times then the thought of death came back. If I said meet my Maker that would be the end of me. I was still trying to write the other thing down but by now the give up had changed to meet my Maker. It was around about then I gave up.”

“What, what happened?”

“I just sat back in the chair and looked at the chair opposite me because that was where I thought it would come from and said meet my Maker.”

“And what happened?”

“Nothing, absolutely nothing you would not believe the relief that came over me when that happened. It was a weight of my mind I can tell you.”

“I thought that you said you saw God's spirit, when was that?”

“Not long after, it was like a slab of mist descended at the time I did not know what it was.”

“And then?”

“A thought came into my mind that seemed to be echoed in the mist. It said you are your Maker.”

“That's amazing, so what do you actually think happened then?”

“I suppose it was the shift in consciousness that you mentioned.”

“Yes, but it was a little more than just that. You saw your Self.”

“Sorry, I don't understand.”

“Your True Self.”

“How can that be, I can't be in two places at one time, it defies logic.”

“You left your body in a dream and then saw it later in reality.”

“Of course, why didn't I think of that? You said it was usually not long after an out of body experience.”

“Yes, I have heard about it before but not actually seen it myself. So you past your judgement and thought it was the D.T's.”

“What, you mean that was some sort of judgement?”

“Yes, your Self was judged pure enough to merge and so the spirit of understanding became the spirit of wisdom and understanding (knowing).”

“Right, I think, so where did it actually go then?”

“Back to the collective though it hasn't left you as you are now the same.”

“And that would be why my thoughts were echoed in it I suppose.”

“That's right. So it looks like its back to light seeing God's spirit. So summing it up.”

“Basically understanding of self and work through God's purpose transforms your self to a deeper more spiritual understanding of life.”

“Very good, now let's see if we can round something up for later

Chapter 7

As Mad Dog walked deeper into the forest the voice said, "Well let's take a crack at your confidence then."

"I thought that that was something I had to find out for myself."

"Well hopefully I can try and guide you through."

"You can, how?"

"Well let's look at it logically. You are a big man, tall and well built and you have a good mind."

"Err. Yes."

"So why do you perceive yourself as a little man for let's be honest that's what it boils down to."

"You know I've never really thought about it in that way before. I don't know."

"Once you have found that out you will have confidence. So why do you think that is?"

"I suppose it's all the stuff going on, the house, the job, you know."

"But you've dealt with all that. Well you should have done by now."

"Yes you're right, no it can't be that. I understand all that now."

"No, this goes a lot deeper than that. Besides I'm willing to bet that you had low self esteem before all that happened."

"I suppose so. You mean I was only using that as an excuse."

"Well not in the sense that you mean. It probably manifested itself in your consciousness as that so you wouldn't be aware of it."

"Oh right. So what do you think it is then? I mean you're right I should be more confident."

"That's what we'll try and find out. So why should you Mad Dog McCluskey have low self esteem?"

"I wish I knew."

"There might be more than just one reason. This sort of thing is tricky to locate. It's going to take a lot of Soul searching but hopefully even if we find just one of them your confidence will rise a little."

"I hope so, so where do you want to begin?"

"Childhood I suppose what sort of child were you?"

"Just an ordinary kid really, I don't suppose I was different to the rest of them."

"So what stopped the child from growing up? I mean something must have."

"I've never thought about it like that before. So you think that maybe it was from my childhood then."

"I don't know, besides at the end of the day it's what you think that counts. Would you say that you were confident as a child?"

"Yes, well pretty confident anyway."

"Did you ever get bullied, did you have many fights?"

"I wouldn't say that I was bullied, well not constantly anyway as let's be honest its part of childhood to be picked on occasionally by the older kids, goes with the territory."

"True, what about fights?"

"Not that many, just a normal childhood's worth."

"Generally speaking did you win or lose?"

"About 50/50 I was nothing special."

"So it sounds like that's alright. Were you ever signalled out in front of the class by a Teacher for anything? Sometimes that can affect you subconsciously."

"It can, how?"

"You stand out in a crowd for a bad reason; it can have a bad effect psychologically on you."

Mad Dog went quiet so the voice said, "You were then. What was it for Mad Dog? Once it is out in the open you can deal with it."

“It wasn't a Teacher; it was something that happened in the play ground.”

“What was it, bring it out and let the light shine on it.”

“Well I don't know if it's that, it seems such a trivial thing now.”

“Yes, but the memory you have of it is still from a child's point of view so tell me what happened.”

“I was about 8 years old and at break time we sometimes played a game called British Bulldogs, I don't know if you actually know the game.”

“Yes, it's sort of like tick isn't it. You have to run from one end of the playground to the other. It starts with one person and when he catches some one the other person joins him until everyone is caught.”

“Yes, that's about right. Well anyway I remember one time it was my turn and I was standing there waiting. There was, I don't know, about 20 maybe even 30 kids in the line. Well my surname was called Kelly then as it was before my mother remarried and as I was waiting somebody shouted smelly Kelly is on and very soon they were all doing it. As I said it sounds trivial now.”

“What about at the time?”

“Upsetting I guess, I'm not sure, it seems a very long time ago now.”

“Think back. How upsetting, did you cry.”

“Err, I think so,” Mad Dog said sheepishly

“Now why did it hurt you so much, were you smelly?”

“No, alright my clothes might have been a bit worn but we weren't what you would call a rich family.”

“Ah, in the situation you were in that name would have hit you a lot harder. You know that may be one of the reasons you have low self esteem. You were signalled out and made to look like a tramp. There's a lot of shame in that especially if you perceived yourself subconsciously in that manner.”

“Yes, well it was a very long time ago,” Mad Dog said dismissively.

“Oh yes, but now that you have brought it out in the open it has lost its hold on you. Don't feel bad for as you said it was a long time ago but you have to understand the pain to loosen the hold it has on you.”

“Yes, I know what you mean. I guess I don't like talking about it that's all.”

“It's hard to bring back bad memories,” the voice said sympathetically, “But it's got to be done before you can deal with it. Incidentally, not being funny but did it have the reverse effect on you?”

“Sorry?”

“Well you don't seem too bothered about your appearance now I was wondering if this was a throw back from this.”

“I don't think so; I think that might be a throwback from something else.”

“You do what might that be?”

“I was about 12 maybe 13 at the time and as we came from a large family money was a bit of a problem. Well I had a cousin who was a bit older than me and sometimes we would have his clothes after he had out grown them.”

“Hand me downs, right.”

“Well this was the 70's so you can imagine the stupid fashions they used to wear. You know what I mean, bell bottomed trousers, platform shoes.”

“Yes I can imagine. So what did you actually end up with then, platform shoes?”

“No, well not that time. I had some fur lined blue suede like ankle boots.”

“Very fetching I'll bet,” the voice said with a laugh.

“Yes right, it was a nightmare I can tell you. It didn't help when my mother told me they were unisex either.”

“And you told the other kids by way of explanation I'll bet, not a good idea.”

“Ain't that the truth they ripped me apart, umm sexy, all that kind of thing.”

“So what happened then?”

“Well I could put up with that. No it wasn't that it was my mother.”

“Your mother?”

“Yes, she actually apologised to me for having to wear them and said as soon as things picked up I would get a new pair.”

“Right and how did that affect you?”

“It sort of put things into perspective it's hard to explain really but after that clothes didn't mean anything to me. Mind you, don't get me wrong they didn't mean much before.”

“Well why was that then?”

“Well like I said it's hard to explain. I mean what are clothes at the end of the day. Just things that you wear to keep you warm in winter or just cover your nakedness. Let's be honest what does it matter who made them or what they looked like. Now I went through a lot of crap because, I don't know, my shoes were the wrong colour. What sort of moron would make fun of that, it defies logic. My mother would have guessed that I must be going through it so she apologised. I thought to myself why is she apologising to me, to tell you the truth it was that out of character it left a deep impression on me.”

“Yes I think I see what you mean but why did you go to the other extreme, was that sort of a rebel act?”

“Oh no, I never dressed down or anything like that I just carried on the same. Alright I might look a bit threadbare now but that's more to do with where I'm living and what I've been through. That will change when circumstances pick up.”

“Oh, so do you feel different now that you've talked about it?”

“A little not much.”

“We'll come back to that later then.”

“Yes, we've got to get something to eat first, though looking around things are a bit thin on the ground.”

“Well if you don't find anything there are always those two rabbits.”

“What two rabbits?”

“The ones in the snares behind the caravan two days food there.”

“Well why didn't you tell me we needn't have wasted all this time and energy walking?”

“You need the exercise, it's good for you and besides it helps to ground you.”

“To ground me?”

“Yes, think about it. All those negative thoughts are the matter in your mind. Once you release them where do you think that they go?”

“I never thought about it before, I never realised.”

“Yes it's surprising, it works a lot better on grass as concrete seems to block the flow.”

“Really, mind you thinking about it I can see the logic in it.”

“So you want to head back then?”

“No I'll keep walking a bit more. So what's next on the agenda, are we digging up more memories?”

“No we'll give them time to disperse. Are you up to any more enlightenment?”

“Yes why not. We got to light seeing God's spirit and the benefits that it brings if I remember right.”

“That's right, and can you remember what those benefits actually are?”

“Spiritual understanding of life, the spirit through God's life and being blessed with God's spiritual word through spiritual wisdom.”

“Good we'll start with the last one first then. So what do you get from being blessed by God's spiritual word through spiritual wisdom?”

“Well you tell me,” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“You get your will seeing a life of knowing, does that mean anything to you?”

“Well the other fellow mentioned the spirit of knowing, I guess that must be you.”

“Right, you seem to know things yet you don't know why. You also get a life of God's will seeing yours and a life of God transformed by his blessing and blessed by God's love, God's light. You get a wisdom loving self, God's purpose, a life of spiritual understanding through the spiritual will and wisdom blessed with knowing God's understanding. So what does all that lot mean to you?”

“A life of God's will seeing yours does that mean that your will and God's are the same?”

“Yes, this is reinforced by the next one, a life of God transformed by his blessing. What about the next one then?”

“Blessed by God's love, God's light. Would that be blessed by the Holy Spirit?”

“Go on, how did you arrive at that?”

“Well the light is the Holy Spirit and the spirit of purpose so I presume that the Holy Spirit is God's love which is God's light as opposed to just light.”

“Fair enough, what next?”

“Wisdom loving self, God's purpose, a self of wisdom and understanding and the spirit of God's purpose. A life of spiritual understanding through the spiritual will that speaks for itself and wisdom blessed with knowing God's understanding would be the spirit of wisdom and understanding.”

“Right, so put them together and what do you come up with?”

“From being blessed by God's spiritual word through spiritual wisdom you get the spirit of knowing, your will and God's are the same through transformation, you get blessed by the Holy Spirit, you get a self of wisdom and understanding, a spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of God's purpose and a life of spiritual understanding through the spiritual will.”

“Excellent, we'll move onto the next one then. From the spirit of knowing you get God's spiritual understanding, his work and light from God's mind, you get a knowing of the spiritual word, God's spiritual will and you get wisdom seeing the self of God's knowing life, God's spirit. What do you make of that lot?”

“Right, from knowing you get understanding, understanding of God's spirit and work and the light from God's mind which I think would be wisdom.”

“You do, why's that?”

“Well it's the light of God's mind as opposed to God's light which is the Holy Spirit, divine knowledge.”

“Good, carry on.”

“A knowing of the spiritual word, God's spiritual will well the spiritual word would be God's spiritual will that sounds like wisdom again.”

“So what's the difference then?”

“Well one it divine knowledge, light whilst the other is knowledge of the divine.”

“Go on.”

“Well the spiritual word is God; in the beginning was the word so that makes it God's spiritual will.”

“Okay, wisdom seeing the will of God's knowing life, God's spirit.”

“That sounds tricky, would that mean you get wisdom from God's spirit?”

“Nearly there, which spirit?”

“The spirit through God's life, the living word.”

“So what have we got then?”

“From knowing you get understanding, understanding of God's spirit, understanding of God's work, divine knowledge and knowledge of the divine and wisdom from God's living spirit.”

“Right, you are getting through these really quickly, ready to go on.”

“Yes, what's next then?”

“Being blessed by the Holy Spirit so from being blessed by the Holy Spirit you get through God's purpose blessing spiritual understanding, God's spirit, the wisdom of God knowing spiritual understanding, (blessed spiritual understanding), work blesses wisdom, wisdom blesses life and a transformation on seeing the transformation of God's light blessing light. Quite a bit there, what do you make of it all?”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “From being blessed by the Holy Spirit you get through God's purpose, God's spirit of spiritual understanding and God's blessed spiritual understanding.”

“What's the difference,” the voice said interrupting him

“Well the first was understanding of divine knowledge and the second understanding of knowledge of the divine.”

“How did you arrive at that?”

“You mean I am right.”

“Now that would depend on your answer.”

“Well the second one is wisdom of God as opposed to God's wisdom in the first.”

“Fair enough, work blesses wisdom, wisdom blesses life, what's all that about?”

“That's a case of you have to give in order to receive, you have to do God's work to get God's wisdom. So your work of service blesses you with wisdom through the Holy Spirit.”

“Last one then.”

“And you get transformed by being blessed by the Holy Spirit.”

“Transformed, to what?”

“Enlightenment, your Will becomes God's.”

“So what have we got all together then?”

“From being blessed with God's word through spiritual wisdom you get the spirit of knowing, your will and God's are the same through transformation, you get blessed by the Holy Spirit, both a Self and Spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of God's purpose and a life of spiritual understanding through the spiritual will.

From the spirit of knowing you get understanding, understanding of God's spirit, understanding of God's work, divine knowledge and knowledge of the divine, and wisdom from God's living spirit.

From being blessed by the Holy Spirit you get through God's purpose, understanding of both divine knowledge and knowledge of the divine, your work of service is blessed through wisdom and your will is transformed to blessed light.”

“Very good, we may as well turn back now.”

“Yes, I'm getting a little hungry.”

“Well it must be getting on. It's surprising just how quickly time goes by when you are busy.”

“I know what you mean. I suppose I'll have to think about going home soon.”

“Well there's no hurry, you still have a long way to go yet.”

“Really, I thought we would soon be done.”

“Oh you are coming on well it's just that there's a very long way. It will soon pass though; out here away from all the stresses of life you'll soon make good progress.”

“True I suppose, no real worries holding me back.”

“That's right; you can settle back and think of the real important things in life.”

“It does seem to cloud your mind, life I mean.”

“It's full of petty little nuisances that keep your mind away from your real purpose in life, to evolve.”

“I do feel a lot better I just needed a little time to sort myself out and get my head together.”

“Well you've got that now, don't forget some wood for the fire, we're nearly home.”

Chapter 8

On arriving back Mad Dog checked the snares and sure enough there were two rabbits in them. He took them both out and brought them back to the caravan where he skinned and gutted one of them. He made the fire and as he sat to watch the rabbit cook the voice said, "So are you up to any more confidence building?"

"Err, alright I suppose."

"You don't have to if you don't want to; after all you are in control."

"Oh it's not that, I don't see how it works that's all."

"Sorry?"

"Well with the anger it was taking something away wasn't it and I can see the logic in that. This is different though, I don't really see how it can give me something."

"Oh no, only you can give yourself confidence all I can really do it take away the barriers that stop you from doing that."

"Oh."

"Yes, I can hopefully take away your self doubt but you are the one that gives yourself confidence."

"So I won't actually feel more confident with each barrier that you lift."

"No, you'll feel a little lighter mentally. Life and experience gives you confidence."

"Oh that's different alright then do the business."

"Right," the voice said recapping, "Childhood you were singled out and made to feel humiliated believe it or not that actually did you a favour, well that and your mother apologising."

"It did, in what way?"

"Envy, subconsciously though so you would not really recognise it as such."

"No, I don't envy anyone."

"Not now, I had better explain it though so you'll know what I mean."

"Yes, that might be a good idea."

"Well you looked around you and saw the better off children and as a child it hurt you."

"No not at all."

"Come now Mad Dog, let's be honest it wasn't clothes it was sweets wasn't it. You never had any and they did."

"How did you know, it feels stupid talking about it now."

"Oh now but as a child it was different. Tell me something, you know that we know about stealing money from the collection plate, did it never occur to you that we know why you did it."

"Guess I should have known really, thinking about it you must have done."

"Right, well the envy you had was not just sweets was it."

"No, Christmas presents, birthday presents, that sort of thing."

"There was one Christmas in particular wasn't there."

"Alright, it had been a particular bad year and we could only have one present for Christmas."

"That's right and you chose a book didn't you It was called the Living Book of Knowledge if I remember right."

"Something like that."

"So what happened?"

"Well I think it was the first day back at school and we could all bring our toys in and all I had was the book."

"Yes, it must have been pretty Soul destroying to watch them all playing and enjoying themselves definitely a breeding ground for envy."

"Well I don't know about that, I know that I felt left out though."

“If it’s any consolation you passed the test.”

“What, what test?”

“You chose knowledge over toys; you were pretty evolved even then.”

“Yes but what test?”

“The tests of life, at certain moments of your life you have tests. Decisions that you make that shape the course of your life. If you had not have picked that book we would not be having this conversation now.”

“So it was a test and I passed, what about afterwards though.”

“Afterwards?”

“Yes, having to sit and watch them playing with their toys.”

“Well let’s be honest Mad Dog it wasn’t as bad as all that, didn’t one of the other lads let you play with some of his for a bit.”

“Oh yes, I remember now.”

“See it doesn’t do to dwell in the negative and forget the positive and besides watching them play was good for your character you know.”

“My mother used to say something similar; it’s the struggles of life that builds character.”

“Well she spoke a lot of sense, so anyway back to envy. Now when your mother apologised she actually did more than get rid of your self consciousness about the clothes that you wore. She got rid of your envy right down the line. You did not know this at the time though as you thought it was just you growing up. You didn’t bother about toys or sweets at all.”

“Oh yes I can see that now.”

“Now let’s go back to the playground, believe it or not that was just a test as well.”

“What? You’ve got a cruel syllabus.”

“It had to be I’m afraid otherwise you would not have got as far as you have.”

“So what was the point then? What possible reason could you have for humiliating me in that way?”

“Well I could say that heartache is good for the Soul and you had to go through every sort of pain to get understanding and that would be perfectly true but it was more than that. That humiliation is a taste of what you have to come.”

“What, what are you trying to say?”

“As a spiritualist in a semi atheist society it goes with the territory. You see most people are like you were, they perceive God as an old man with a beard if they believe in him at all. They haven’t got a clue and the old beliefs they have in God are falling down with the advent of new information. Nowadays it’s actually considered stupid to believe in God.”

“Yes I can see that but what has that actually got to do with me?”

“Well what is God?”

“An enlightened Soul with a purpose to serve.”

“And what will your purpose be after you are enlightened?”

“Sod that, I don’t want to be a Teacher.”

“That is your purpose, you can’t go against it.”

“But a Teacher, come on be honest do I really look like one of them?”

“You haven’t really got a choice in the matter. Besides you won’t be a Teacher in the normal sense, you’ll be a spiritual Teacher.”

“A priest, that’s even worse and beside how can I wear a dog collar when I’ve had mine felt so often.”

“You’ll come around don’t worry. I’ll be there to guide you and make sure that you don’t go astray.”

“Anyway I don’t think that I’ve got the confidence to teach so that’s knocked that on the head.”

“Well if you think it through you’ll find out that you have.”

“Oh yes, and how do you work that one out?”

“I know what's in your heart you've got a lot of character. Besides you are judging yourself while you are in this state of mind, by the time you are enlightened you'll be in another.”

“Well if you say so, so what about my confidence then?”

“All the barriers are down and you understand why you have been through the pain so all it has to do now is grow.”

“Easier said than done, how am I going to do that?”

“Enlightenment but first eat your rabbit.”

Mad Dog took the rabbit off the fire and ate it, after he had finished the voice said, “Right, so where were we?”

“The spirit through God's life,” Mad Dog said though he was not as keen as he was before.

“So from the spirit through God's life you get a will of loving spiritual understanding, a life blessed with the mind knowing God's blessed life, the spiritual word of loving wisdom and a will of God, light of God and God's light, any thoughts on that?”

“ Well it's basically saying from the spirit through God's life you get a shift in consciousness to a will of understanding, your life is blessed with a mind of God which is the spiritual word of loving wisdom and a will of God, you also get divine knowledge and knowledge of the divine.”

“Good. From a will of loving understanding you get an understanding of self, a spirit of God's loving blessed purpose, God's spirit, understanding of God's self and wisdom of God's spirit, knowing of God, God's life and God's spirit. What about that?”

“From a will of understanding you get to understand your self, you get the spirit of God's loving blessed purpose, you get the understanding of God's self and the wisdom of God's spirit which would be the spirits of wisdom and understanding, and you get to know God, his life and his spirit.”

“ Right, or to put it another way from a will of understanding you get the spirits of wisdom, understanding, knowing, purpose, life, love and discernment.”

“What, that's all seven, that would make you a God.”

“Oh and an understanding of self.”

“Really, but haven't I got a will of understanding?”

“Yes, when you past your first judgement, now isn't that a boost to your confidence?”

“Well yes, I suppose it is really. What do you mean by first judgement though?”

“I'm afraid you'll have to wait and see with that one. You've still got a long way to go yet. The God within has to grow. Don't worry though as blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first Resurrection on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ and shall reign with him a thousand years.”

“I had better get on with it then I guess, if it means that I will grow.”

“I thought you'd see it like that and besides if you hadn't noticed it seems to be getting easier.”

“It just seems to repeat itself.”

“It's expanding that's all. Right from knowing of God, God's life and God's spirit you get spiritual understanding of self, you get transformed to the transformation of God's light. From a will of loving spiritual understanding you also get understanding of God's self, wisdom and spiritual will, God's spirit of light blesses a life of knowing seeing this transformation, what do you make of that lot?”

“ From the spirit of knowing you get spiritual understanding of self, that sounds to me like know thyself and the transformation to the transformation of God's light would that mean the transformation of the Spiritual Will from the Physical?”

“Good, carry on.”

“Well the next part is saying from the spirit of understanding you get the understanding of God's self, wisdom and spiritual will which is God's spirit. I presume that would be the spirit of wisdom and maybe the spirit of purpose as it is God's self.”

“Very good, last one then, light blesses a life of knowing.”

“Your will becomes the spirit of knowing.”

“And putting them together?”

“From the spirit of knowing you get to know thy Self and your Will transforms to Spiritual. From the spirit of understanding you get to understand the spirit of wisdom and to understand the spirit of purpose and your will becomes a will of knowing.”

“Ready for some more then?”

“Sure.”

“ From a life blessed with the mind of God, God's purpose and loving transformation blesses life, God's light and God's life blesses life, God's spiritual purpose and God's self blesses life, the light of God's spiritual word of wisdom and loving spirit blesses life, the word of God's spiritual wisdom and knowing through loving understanding blesses life, the will of God understanding God's purpose through loving spirit blesses life out of which the spiritual word blessed with purpose and blessed understanding of wisdom blesses life and the will of God's spiritual word of wisdom seeing knowing blesses life.”

“Now that's a lot of blessing I don't think I would even know where to begin.”

“Well usually I find at the beginning is as good a place as any,” the voice said with a laugh.

“Yes right,” Mad Dog said and thought awhile, “Right, from the mind blessed with God you get his seven spirits.”

“ Yes, alright in a nutshell but it might be a good idea to elaborate on them a little as it will help your growth by letting a little more light in.”

“Well God's purpose and loving transformation is the actual transformation that occurs.”

“Go on.”

“Well your mind is transformed to one of love to work God's purpose as opposed to just light.”

“Good, so what's next?”

“God's light and God's life is the spirit of life. God's spiritual purpose and God's self is the spirit of purpose. The light of God's spiritual word of wisdom and loving spirit is the spirit of love, the word of God's spiritual wisdom and knowing would be the spirit of knowing, the will of God understanding God's purpose and loving spirit would be the spirit of discernment, the spiritual word blessed with purpose and blessed understanding of wisdom would be the spirit of understanding and the will of God's spiritual word of wisdom seeing knowing would be the spirit of wisdom.”

“Excellent, you're coming on very well.”

“Well it's good to have so much information I guess I'm lucky. So where did it actually come from?”

“Well Genesis actually.”

“I've read that, I don't remember coming across anything like that.”

“You've probably been over it many times and never seen it before it's easily done.”

“Now I think I would remember all that lot. I mean there's been quite a chink so far and you said there was a lot more to come.”

“The transformation through light is Eden, light seeing God's spirit is Noah, spiritual understanding through life is Shem and spirit of God's life is Ham.”

“What, how did you get that?”

“Well the letters mean words. N stands for light O stands for sees, A stands for God and H stands for spirit.”

“I never knew that, amazing and it all comes through the names.”

“Surprising what you find when you look deeper into things. Incidentally when I mentioned the first Resurrection and the second death you did not seem too bothered, why was that?”

“Well let's look at it logically, to lose your fear of death you have to die.”

“So when did you actually work that out then? You seem to be moving on quicker than I thought.”

“I reasoned that the only time you would meet your Maker was when you were dead.”

“Go on.”

“Oh it's only recently come to me, thinking back though it should have been obvious. I am writing I am alive one moment and give up the next that only says one thing.”

“Go on.”

“I was fighting for my life. I mean my old self not me now. Well I lost so I had to die.”

“Good, well thought out. So now you must have lost your fear of death then.”

“I did then I suppose, well subconsciously it just took a long time to work its way through. If you think of the will of God's blessed light as thought and understanding through spiritual wisdom as memory I became a memory.”

“You evolved. You seem to be growing in understanding very quickly. Do you think you can manage some more?”

“Sure, mind you, you'll have to be quick as its getting on and the night shift will be taking over soon.”

“There's only a little left of Ham's family to do and I'll leave Shem to the next shift.”

“Before you start, how does it actually work?”

“Well Eden was day one, the genealogy of Cain and Seth was day two. The genealogy of Japheth, Ham and Shem was day three. Shem was repeated in day four but this time up to Abram. Day five was the genealogy of Nahor to Rebekah and the sons of Abraham and Keturah and day six was the generations of Ishmael and the sons and grandsons of Jacob.”

“Oh I get it on the first day God said let there be light and that was Eden. Second day splitting the waters Cain and Seth and so on.”

“It's quite a book when you look into it, it works on many levels.”

“Yes I can see that, you have to take your hat off to who ever wrote it.”

“I know what you are saying, mind you its getting on now, shall we crack on?”

“Lead the way.”

“From a will of God, light of God and God's light, you understand the blessed transformation seeing light, and get the spirit through spiritual wisdom. Speaks for itself really.”

“Err thanks, “Mad Dog said not really knowing what else to say.

“So how confident are you now?”

“I feel better, mind you there's still a long way to go.”

“Yes so imagine what it's going to be like by day six.”

“Will I be finished then?”

“We'll see, you want to get to sleep now. You don't want to keep that old man waiting he can be a bit of a grouch sometimes.”

“I'll bet,” Mad Dog said and made his way to the mattress. No sooner had his head hit the pillow then he was asleep.

Chapter 9

Mad Dog found himself in a strange situation. He was confronted by a large man and knew he had to fight him. He did not know why he just knew that he did. The fight had been arranged for later on a patch of ground not far from them. He was not scared; in fact he was eager to get started and tried to attack the man at every available moment. The man moved on and Mad Dog went another direction to meet him. He got to the place of the fight and saw a river to the left of him that seemed to run into a house. There were two men by the house and one of them opened the door and a dog ran out. Mad Dog looked into the open doorway and saw the man lying there dead.

The scene changed and Mad Dog found himself back on the mountain face to face with the man holding the book." What was that all about?" Mad Dog said in confusion.

"Lechery, you thought you had to fight it but it was taken care of for you."

"It was?"

"Yes by the dog, the God within as we live in God's reflected light."

"Oh so I see, a dog is symbolic of God then."

"Yes, now if you can understand your dreams you are well on your way."

"Right I'll bear that in mind, so what's on the agenda for tonight?"

"Prayer, tell me Mad Dog do you ever pray?"

"Well no, well not really."

"What," The man said angrily, "Get down on your knees and beg forgiveness you Heathen before your Soul is cast into eternal damnation to a life of torment, torture, fire and brimstone."

"What," Mad Dog said jumping out his skin.

"Or alternatively," the man said changing his character, "Think of it as helping your growth and keeping you from getting self deluded."

"Well how would prayer do that? I thought that it was for getting things like a new car and that."

"No, though it can help you in spiritual guidance, I wouldn't try for material things besides that's not the type of prayer that I have in mind."

"So what are you talking about?"

"Well it's more of a mantra really. Do you know what a mantra is?"

"Yes I think so it's more of an Eastern thing isn't it, every day in every way I get better day by day, that sort of thing."

"And what does it actually do then?"

"It's supposed to improve you. It hammers home a message to your subconscious."

"Yes that's right it lets a little light into the darkness below your level of consciousness."

"Right, I think, so what sort of mantra did you have in mind?"

"I surrender my will to the greater will, the will of the divine, I will to will thy will. Say that seven times every morning and night and don't worry you won't have to get on your knees to do it."

"So what does it actually do then? Does it help?"

"Oh yes, it accelerates your spiritual growth and keeps your feet firmly on the ground."

"Right, I'll remember it then."

"It also might be a good idea to say at night protect me father as I sleep and give me faith and strength to keep for with your love the war is won and we can truly be as one at night. In the morning say protect me father as I wake and guide me through each step I take for with your love the war is won and we can truly be as one."

"That's quite a lot to remember, and will it help me keep myself from being deluded?"

"Yes."

“What actually is the God within anyway I know it’s been mentioned before but I don't understand it.”

“Abel, God's self through God's purpose.”

“But he was killed by Cain.”

“Symbolic, suppressed would be a better word for it. Now when you have a will of understanding the will of knowledge goes up to the collective leaving a space for God.”

“The spirit of purpose, yes I can understand that and it fits in.”

“Well speaking of enlightenment, how far did you get?”

“Got up to Shem.”

“Not bad, are you ready for some more then?”

“Yes, why not.”

“ From spiritual understanding through life you get through God's purpose God's life, God's spiritual understanding (loving knowing)and through God knowing the spiritual word God's insight (God's transformation), God's purpose (loving transformation)and God knows God's life.

From God knowing God's life you get a loving mind, the spirit of love (God’s purpose), a will through spiritual wisdom (through knowing) and a life of God's spiritual understanding. From God knowing the spiritual word (God's insight), you get understanding God, (God’s purpose) God's spirit from which through self (through knowing) you get the word (through God's purpose and will) and (blessed seeing work) the wisdom of God's light.

From the wisdom of God's light you get God's (God's purpose)life seeing transformation (God's transformation), spiritual understanding through God's purpose (through the spiritual word), the spirit of God's mind(God knowing life of God's love through spiritual wisdom)and blessed through knowing God's spirit the spirit of God transforms(seeing knowing)to God's life, you get a loving mind of God (God's purpose)and transformation blesses work of God's purpose(God's spirit)seeing self of God (God's purpose), God's self blesses a life of God through God's purpose, you get spiritual understanding through self of God and seeing the spiritual word(blessed with knowing)the spirit of God's love blesses God's purpose (God's spirit)and finally a blessed seeing of self (God's self).”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “ From a deeper understanding of life you get God's life through a life of service, you understand God and through knowing the spiritual word you get God's insight and God's purpose and basically know God's life.

From knowing God's life you get a loving mind, the Holy Spirit, a will of light and a life of God's understanding.

From God's insight through understanding God you get the spirit of wisdom which through knowing gives you the word and wisdom of God's light through service.

From the wisdom of God's light you are transformed to God's life, you get a deeper understanding through the spiritual word and a life of service, you get loving spiritual wisdom which transforms your essence (as opposed to God's life of service), you get a loving mind through God's purpose transforming your self to a life of God, you get spiritual understanding and seeing the spiritual word God's love blesses God's purpose and you see your self as blessed.”

“Good, very good in fact. So to sum it up.”

“Basically you get a deeper understanding of life which gives you insight into both God and God's purpose which gives you a life of God (essence) and God's purpose (service).”

“Good, you should get through the rest pretty quickly as you seem to be grasping it well. Next we move to day 4 which is a repeat of Shem but this time with ages to separate the passages.

From spiritual understanding through life God knows God's insight(God's transformation) from which you understand God, God's purpose (God's spirit)from which you get a self

through knowing from which you get the word through God's purpose and will which gives you love through knowing which gives you an understanding(through knowing)loving will from which the light of God's spirit sees knowing and you get wisdom through knowing God's spirit from which God's self knows God's life, the light of God's spirit sees knowing and the spirit of God knows God's light from which God's purpose sees wisdom.”

“From spiritual understanding you get God's insight from which you understand God and God's purpose from which you get a self through knowing which gives you the word which gives you love through knowing it from which you get understanding and know the light of God's spirit from this you get God's life and God's purpose sees God's will (wisdom).”

“Only a small passage that, so summing it up.”

“Through understanding God and God's purpose you get a self of knowing, a life of God and God's purpose merges with God's will.”

“Well you're tearing through them, so have you learned your purpose yet?”

“Yes,” Mad Dog said downhearted, “I'm to be a Teacher.”

“What's wrong with that?”

“I can't really see myself as one; I don't think I'll be cut out for it.”

“Just do what I do. Alright it can be quite boring at times, what were you before?”

“Well a joiner at first but I've done all sorts since.”

“Doesn't that tell you anything?”

“Err. What like?”

“Restless, you did not find a job that you were happy with.”

“Well most of the jobs I didn't leave by choice, I was either sacked or laid off.”

“So why did you leave the trade?”

“I left it in the eighties when it seemed to be just one long recession. Strange that, it was the only job I ever walked out of.”

“And what don't you like about being a Teacher; on the whole it's a good profession.”

“Maybe you're right. I'm just going on the ones we used to have at school and the ones I've met since leaving school.”

“You won't be that sort of Teacher, that's the modern sense of the word. You'll be more like the Teachers of old; yes I've had some fond memories believe it or not.”

“Yes but you said that it was boring at times.”

“So is life. No generally speaking it was pretty good on the whole.”

“You said the Teachers of old, what's the difference?”

“You're dispensing wisdom not knowledge. You get a very good sense of well being from doing God's service I can tell you.”

“Oh of course, and it will help me grow just as much.”

“Yes, don't forget that the spirit returns what you give a hundred fold.”

“I never really thought about it that way maybe you're right I'll give it a go. To tell you the truth it can't be as bad as some of the other jobs I've had.”

“That's the spirit.”

“Yes, the spirit of purpose.”

“It's good to have direction in life it gives you a sense of direction and a boost for your confidence.”

“Well we'll see, after all I might not like it. I wouldn't know how to go about it for a start.”

“Do what I did; put it all down in a book.”

“In a book, will it help?”

“Yes, think about it. What you'll be teaching won't be found in any book.”

“True, I never really thought it through. So I'm going to have to be a writer first.”

“Well it's the only way. Just in case you forget everything for you never know what time can do.”

“Yes, especially with my memory.”

“Actually it will improve immensely doing this but it's nice to have it for reference.”

“Did you write that book?”

“Yes,” the man said and showed it him, “What do you think of it?”

“Very nice, it must have taken you a long time. Calligraphic isn't it?”

“That's right, made to last a lifetime. You know it's very therapeutic just to sit and read it sometimes.”

“I'll bet, you must be very proud of it. It was quite an achievement.”

“Well pleased. I'll tell you what I'll help you to write yours if you like.”

“Would you that would be great err. how would you actually do it though?”

“Sorry?”

“Well I only ever see you in dreams so there's a good chance that I would forget a lot of what you tell me by the time I've woke up.”

“Oh don't worry about that I'll just channel it down to you.”

“You can do that.”

“Yes, you won't even know that it's happening.”

“Alright then, that sounds like a good idea.”

“Right then, I'll let you know when I'm ready to start.”

“What in my dreams?”

“Well I could do but what usually happens is you'll get a desire to start.”

“Well I'll look forwards to that then. So what else will I need to be a Teacher?”

“Well you'll need a lot of patience. That's probably the most important thing.”

“Ah.”

“Are you not a patient man then? That can be quite a drawback. Maybe that's something the day shift will have to look at. Takes some getting I can tell you. Anyway that's it for now.”

and with that Mad Dog woke up.

Chapter 10

As soon as Mad Dog woke up he said his prayers and went out to check the snares and find out they were empty. “Now why are you looking for more food when you have some already,” the voice said much to his surprise.

“Well there's always tomorrow, you never know what it will bring.”

“You'll not hunger you need not worry. We'll make sure of that.”

“Oh right, I didn't realise.”

“So how did you get on last night? What sort of progress did you make?”

“Got to the end of day 4 and he gave me some mantras to say.”

“Good, that will help your development no end, anything else?”

“He told me to ask you how to get patience, is that the next stage?”

“We'll give it a go later, just be patient and we'll get around to it.”

“So what's first on the agenda?”

“We'll go for a walk and see what life has to offer us.”

“Sure, any particular direction?”

“Straight ahead so how are you feeling about your purpose in life?”

“Teaching, well I'll give it a try.”

“Good, so that's another spirit you've achieved. How many is that now?”

“Wisdom and understanding, life, knowing and purpose. That's five; I'm not sure about love or discernment though.”

“Well love you'll start feeling soon, the mantras will help you with that.”

“Really, so what will happen?”

“You'll feel a strange sensation in your head. Like a buzzing but not if you know what I mean.”

“Err. no.”

“When you get it you'll know. It's one of those things that has to be experienced.”

“Right, will it be painful?”

“No,” the voice said with a laugh.

“So that leaves discernment, how do I get that?”

“Well through life and cross referencing.”

“Right, so what's next then?”

“A battle of wills between you and what the Native Americans call your shadow. It will try and push you out of your shell but if you are strong enough you'll make it.”

“Thanks that sounds like something to look forward to.”

“Oh don't worry you'll get through.”

“So what actually is it?”

“A negative will, just hit it and it will explode.”

“And when will this happen?”

“Probably tonight with the progress you are making.”

“Maybe I should slow down a little then. I don't suppose it does to get through it too rapidly.”

“You can go through it what ever pace you like but I wouldn't get too worried as we're here to help you.”

“I'll leave it in your hands then. So this thing, the negative will you called it, what exactly is it?”

“Some might call it the shadow self, positive and negative; you can't have one without the other.”

“Does this happen in reality?”

“Its first attempt, you probably have already met him though as you have got past that stage.”

“Err yes I think I remember it but at the time I didn't know what it was.”

“D.T’s again,” the voice said with a laugh. “So what actually happened then, what did you see, a pink elephant?”

“Funny. No I didn’t actually see him I sensed his presence.”

“Really, so what happened?”

“I was sitting on a chair at home feeling depressed. I hadn’t been drinking that night which was unusual when something strange happened. I felt like, I don’t know what you would call it a heavy kind of air drift in from my left. It seemed to settle around the chair opposite and we were sort of having a conversation. We weren’t actually speaking as such it was more on a telepathic level. I noticed it was getting stronger and I fully expected it to materialise in front of me.”

“It was sapping your will through fear, trying to feed of you.”

“Oh is that what it was. Well I felt some danger as it was playing mind games but something inside me said.”

“I mean it’s not like you are here to do me any harm now is it,” the voice said interrupting him.

“Yes that’s right and then the whole thing retreated back to where it had come from. So that was you then.”

“You didn’t think that we would let you come to harm did you?”

“So what happens next then?”

“Well you defeated it first time so now you have to kill it.”

“Kill it; I’m not sure about that.”

“You’d better be otherwise it will kill you.”

“What seriously?”

“Yes but don’t worry you will kill it because you will find the strength. I’m just telling you that you had better be in the right frame of mind for it will have no qualms about killing you.”

“Oh, and this will happen like the last time except it will materialise?”

“No it will happen in the spiritual realms. It’s like a mid way point between sleep and consciousness.”

“Sorry, how do you mean?”

“You’ll be semi-conscious. The caravan will be just the same but you won’t be conscious. I’m afraid you’ll have to wait and see because it’s difficult to explain.”

“So I bet I’ll have a job getting to sleep tonight as I will be expecting it.”

“It might not be tonight. It will try and pick you at your weakest.”

“I thought you said it would be.”

“I said probably. Oh there is a good chance that it will be because of the progress you made but it’s not a hundred per cent so don’t get disappointed.”

“Relieved would be more the word I’d use. I’m not sure about disappointed.”

“Well you have to go through it to evolve but take heart you’ll pass.”

“Yes right, so what’s next on the agenda?”

“Humility, have you any views on the subject?”

“Not really no I’ve never gave it much thought.”

“No man shall be greater lest he be humbler. Does that equate in your logic?”

“That sounds like an enigmatic contradiction I always thought that greatness went with pride.”

“Well we do live in a strange world. So why do you think it better to be humble?”

“I don’t know. As I said I’ve never thought along those lines at all.”

“Well think about it. Get it clear in your head.”

“Is it something to do with the ego?”

“Yes, elaborate a little though as you want to get the full understanding.”

“The more proud you are the bigger the ego you have.”

“True and why is that a disadvantage in the evolution of the Soul?”
 “Because the Soul is put here to try and purge itself of the ego.”
 “Correct, well done that's why they say blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the Earth. Now onto the next point, what exactly would you say that humility was?”
 “Not being big headed?”
 “Well that's one definition I suppose but I think you had better take it a little deeper than that. What actually is it in essence?”
 “I don't know.”
 “Well I'll give you the first one. What about this for a definition? The ability to put other before your self.”
 “Yes, that sounds about right. I can understand that it makes sense.”
 “Oh it does, so go on then.”
 “Go on?”
 “What does it actually mean? You said that you understood it.”
 “Well it sort of explains itself I don't understand what you are trying to get at.”
 “I'll explain it then you'll know where I'm coming from. Think of the self as ego and the whole thing as the spirit of purpose so the greater the spirit the less the ego must be to accommodate it.”
 “I would never have thought of putting that together and blessed are the meek that was the Sermon of the Mount wasn't it?”
 “I just used it as an illustration.”
 “Oh, so was there anything in the Sermon of the Mount?”
 “Well yes, do you want that first then?”
 “Yes sure.”
 “Right then blessed are the poor in spirit for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. What does that mean?”
 “Oh, I thought you were going to explain it to me.”
 “I know but I'm actually only here to guide you. You have to work it out yourself.”
 “Ah. It's not actually saying people who are poor spirited is it?”
 “So what do you think it is saying?”
 “It's more to do with the rich man and eye of the needle thing.”
 “Go on.”
 “It's actually saying that the poor are spiritually blessed.”
 “Good, not hard was it. Blessed are they that mourn for they shall be comforted?”
 “Now I'm not really sure about that one. Is it to do with grief and understanding?”
 “In what sense?”
 “Through your grief you find comfort in understanding,” Mad Dog said taking a wild guess.
 “Think of the Holy Spirit as the comforter. Now I don't know if that's any help.”
 “Not really,” Mad Dog said and thought awhile, “Love through purging the Soul?”
 “That will do. Basically it's saying that through your grief you purge your Soul and so the spirit of love can come in and help its growth. Blessed are those that hunger and thirst after righteousness for they shall be filled?”
 “Hunger and thirst, would that be wisdom and understanding?”
 “You'll have to expand on that but if it's any help you are on the right track.”
 “Well righteousness could be thought of as godliness and to achieve it you have to get it by wisdom and understanding.”
 “Well it's more to do with divine knowledge and knowledge of the divine. Divine knowledge is the meat of God and knowledge of the divine the water of God's life.”
 “Oh right, well I was not far off really.”
 “No, not bad at all so onto the next one blessed are the merciful for they shall obtain mercy?”

“Well that sounds to me like you have to give in order to receive.”

“Excellent, now do you want to put a bit of meat on it?”

“To show mercy is forgiveness and so instead of adding to your negativity you are actually taking it away.”

“Right, blessed are the pure in heart for they shall see God's spirit?”

“That's me then though I seem to have got it through the wrong sort of spirit.”

“Blessed are the peacemakers for they shall be called the children of God?”

“That sounds a tricky one, is it something to do with negativity?”

“In what sense? Expand it a little so that I can see from where you are coming.”

“You said that we are all God's children but some people perceive him in a negative light.”

“You sound close, carry on.”

“Well they see him as a God of anger as opposed to a God of love which is peace. Although they are still God's children they will never grow up to attain their divinity.”

“Good, so the peacemakers can whilst the war mongers can't. Blessed are those which are persecuted for righteous sake for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.”

“Is this to do with martyrdom by any chance?”

“Go on.”

“Well they say that if you die for God you go straight to heaven. Is that true by the way?”

“Oh yes although make sure you die for the right God though as otherwise you would be just wasting your life. Last one then, blessed are you when men shall revile you and persecute you and shall say all manner of evil against you for my sake. Rejoice and be exceedingly glad for great is your reward in heaven?”

“I'm not sure. This isn't actually talking about dying for a cause is it?”

“No, it's more slander and that sort of thing.”

“So how would that actually work then?”

“Well you tell me.”

“No, I was talking to myself.”

“And what did he say?”

“Funny,” and thought some more, “I can't see it, any chance of a clue?”

“Well you'll soon find out literally if that's any help.”

“Character building, it strengthens your mind.”

“There is that, but there is also the case that we look after our own.”

“You do, in what way?”

“Spiritual Laws, what you sow so shall you reap, what goes around comes around. That's for the perpetrators but it helps you too when it comes to balancing the books.”

“Sorry?”

“Judgement, when you have to weigh up the good against the bad it does go in your favour.”

“Well I never knew that.”

“Do you think that that's enough walking for the day?”

“Yes, besides I'm getting a little hungry now.”

“Oh there's another pheasant in the thicket to your right it might be a good idea to pick it up.”

“Sure, well that's tomorrow sorted.”

“Have it for tea and the rabbit for dinner. I've got something special for tomorrow.”

“You have what?”

“Wait and see it's a surprise but I'll tell you one thing you'll like it.”

“Right, let's head for home then.”

“We'll carry on with the virtues when we get back but have the rabbit first.”

“No more Genesis then?”

“No, give it time to sink in. Don't forget to pick up more wood as you're getting a little short of it.”

Chapter 11

As they watched the rabbit cook the voice said, "So the three stages of development, the first you are the Will, the second the understanding and the third the purpose."

"Oh right, sort of Cain to Seth to Abel."

"Good, the first stage is the shift in consciousness the second to get rid of your shadow self and then I'll tell you the third."

"Okay, I think I understand."

"It will get a lot clearer the further you get into it. I don't really want to clutter your mind with information that's not really relevant at this particular moment."

"Right, so it looks like the virtues then."

"We'll leave that till after you have eaten. I thought that we might take a look at luck, well bad luck to be precise."

"Well I've had my share of it recently what with one thing and another."

"And that's the actual point we are talking about, perceptions of bad luck as opposed to actual bad luck."

"Sorry, is there a difference?"

"Yes but first you will have to define bad luck as I need to know what your perceptions actually are."

"Well its things going wrong as opposed to things going right."

"Now if you looked at it at that level you might end up thinking that you were cursed."

"Sorry, how do you mean?"

"Well take you as an example, your mother died, you lost your job and then you lost your home."

"Yes but a lot of that was to do with my actions."

"You know that now but at the time you didn't. Deep down you thought you were cursed."

"You'll have to explain that to me."

"If a lot of bad things happen in a short space of time your state of mind gets very pessimistic and so that's all you see because that's all you expect to see. If anything good happens it won't really register because you will have a mind that will only see the bad."

"Yes I can see that so what would you actually call luck then?"

"Fortune by chance as opposed to just fortune."

"So fortune without influence you mean."

"That's right if you can keep that in mind you'll cope a lot better in the trials of life. Let me give you an example, other people's action. Now if a man went berserk in the town centre with a gun and shot a dozen people of which you happened to be one you could turn around and say that you were unlucky to be there at the time."

"Well I guess you would be."

"No, you were unfortunate but not unlucky. I know it's an extreme case but it works its way down."

"It's still bad luck though at the end of the day because it didn't come from your own actions."

"Well I suppose you could turn around and say that it was by chance you were in the wrong place at the wrong time but you are missing the point. It's all to do with the state of mind you are in. The first state says good things or bad things; the second state says good things or bad things that occur without the influence of your actions and the third actions of you or others."

"Oh, and I'm stuck on the second."

"Yes, so we'll try and move you up a level then."

"How?"

"You fall down a man hole. You could perceive it as bad luck or you could put it down to misfortune due to someone else's incompetence, what's the difference?"

“I don't know.”

“One's emotional and the others rational, can you see what I'm talking about?”

“Well not really.”

“Emotional brings pain. Why were you stupid not to look where you were going? Why did you fall down it instead of someone else, that sort of thing?”

“Go on.”

“Well that sticks in your mind. The other one you could put behind you and who knows get compensation for your injury.”

“I think I see what you are getting at.”

“Well you are not hurt and you go home to find that the electricians have wired up your house wrong, worse luck? It would be if you were in the wrong state of mind. Later on somebody betrays your trust, I don't know leaves town owing you a lot of money, more bad luck?”

“Well it sounds it by the amount of times it happens.”

“If you look at the first two as acts of other people's incompetence and the third as other people's greed it will take a lot of the pain away. You won't get paranoid.”

“I can see what you are saying but how do I actually get into that state of mind?”

“By looking deeper into the cause instead of the effect take each case individually and find out why the action actually happened. If it was a reaction to you or others actions then it can not be called luck.”

“And will this null the pain?”

“Well it will ease it. You'll have a lot less chance of thinking that you were cursed from the subconscious point of view. You might still feel sorry for yourself that it happened to you but you will be able to deal with it a lot better.”

“Right, I can see the logic in what you say, especially when I compare it with losing my job.”

“Good, anyway your dinner is ready.”

After Mad Dog had finished the voice said, “Good we'll start on the spirits of God again.”

“Sure, which one do you want to do first?”

“Well I'll leave that to you. Take your pick, self reliance, self confidence faith, charity, fortitude and patience.”

“Self reliance then.”

“Relying on your self now which spirit do you think that would be?”

“I suppose that it would be the spirit of knowing.”

“Good, so how would you actually define it then? By that I mean the way I did with humility.”

“Sorry but I forgot what you actually said.”

“The ability to put others before your self, with that in mind how would you equate self reliance?”

“The ability to rely on your self?”

“Good and how does that fit in with the spirit of knowing?”

“Well you are the spirit of knowing but you said you were a guide so I'm not really sure.”

“I also said I was here to your True Self took over.”

“You did, I thought it was the other fellow.”

“When we think as one then we are one. I am him and he is me can you understand that?”

“Not really.”

“Our essence is the same, why do you think that I said we?”

“It did make me wonder, I thought you were going Royal on me.”

“Well I suppose it is the right of the divine but I'm actually talking about a Collective Conscious for that is what the divine is.”

“Oh,”

“It will get clearer as time goes on but a pure Self in essence is divine so when you are fully cleansed you have the knowledge of the Collective Conscious behind you. That is why you just seem to know.”

“Yes I think I understand that. So you and the other fellow are different and yet you are the same. That will take some doing to fully get my head around.”

“In time and as you expand your consciousness more it will come to light. In a nutshell it is saying that with your Self in the Collective Conscious you know as you have a thing called the wisdom of the ages.”

“Right, so what actually is that?”

“Enlightenment, true understanding of the scriptures it is what we are giving you now.”

“Oh, Genesis you mean.”

“Yes for a start, and then who knows.”

“Well what else is there?”

“A strengthening of faith but I'll get to that later.”

“Right, so when you have the spirit of knowing you can rely on your Self because it has the backing of the collective conscious.”

“Not strictly true I said you have the knowledge of the Collective Conscious behind you.”

“What's the difference?”

“It doesn't have the Collective backing it; it actually is the Collective Conscious. A minor point you might think but it's not when you look deeper.”

“It's not?”

“One says that you are backed by the divine and the other says that you are divine. We are actually talking about a re awakening of Self.”

“We are?”

“Yes, a re awakening of the sleeping conscious, sleeping beauty if you like. It can only be awakened by the spirit of love, the Holy Spirit.”

“So what's the sleeping conscious then?”

“Abel. Now the story said that Cain killed Abel but if you look deeper you read that Abel had received God's blessing.”

“Err so.”

“He was immortal; he had been blessed by God.”

“Well I have as well. Are you trying to tell me that I am?”

“I've been trying to tell you since I first met you but it did not mean anything until now as you have only just evolved to understand it. Your old self died and you became a memory and a memory never dies.”

“So I will never die then?”

“Mentally no you could get killed but your essence will live on and join the Collective Conscious. You would go to Heaven if you like.”

“Oh, so I'm not indestructible then.”

“No but take some consolation from the fact you will never grow old. Now if you would have died before you met God and you were just your ego your Soul would have to come back under a different form and your ego being just you would have died. Do you understand what I mean?”

“Yes, I think so. That was why I wouldn't remember my Soul's last life as it wouldn't have been me.”

“Good, so as your sleeping conscious grows you evolve and soon you become one, then you are truly divine.”

“Right and I do this through knowledge of the divine?”

“One level but without service to the divine, spiritual purpose it will not work. Abel means God's self through God's purpose. They have to grow together or they won't grow at all.”

“And Seth becomes Abel; yes I see why you are so adamant about God's purpose for me.”
 “It's in your interests for without purpose you are nothing. So what should you have said?”
 “When you have the spirit of knowing you can rely on your Self because it is divine.”
 “Very good, so which one do you want to do next?”
 “Self confidence I suppose.”
 “And what spirit do you think that is?”
 “The spirit of life maybe because that is where you get your confidence from?”
 “Well you are right but you'll have to go a lot deeper to get the full understanding. First of all define it for me.”
 “The ability to believe in your self.”
 “Good, now how do you get from that to the spirit of life?”
 “With great difficulty” and laughed before saying “Is this something to do with time?”
 “You are on the right track so see if you can expand it.”
 “You need time to grow in confidence. Time to evolve I suppose.”
 “True, but what has that got to do with the spirit of life?”
 “I'm not really sure well unless time is life.”
 “Got it, you see sometimes when you clutch at straws you get one.”
 “Yes but I don't know what it means.”
 “Well when I'm talking about the spirit of life I'm actually talking about a spiritual life and that gives you confidence in your Self by not just believing in your Self but actually knowing your Self. Now normally life is time as you can only live in the realms of time, do you see what I mean?”
 “Err no, well not really.”
 “Spiritual life is light so when you are enlightened your life becomes light.”
 “Sorry?”
 “When you died you became a memory, what is a memory?”
 “What you know I suppose.”
 “Right, a pool of knowledge, your Soul now a memory never dies because the knowledge lives on. Life is actually the time that you need to gather this knowledge as opposed to the knowledge itself. Can you see the difference?”
 “No.”
 “Right,” the voice said trying another track, “Until you are enlightened you are your ego, the imagination of your Soul if you like. You are not a memory you are a thought, the hunter gatherer part of the mind. Your life revolves around time in much the same way as a bee revolves around a flower, when you die the spiritual knowledge lives on whilst the other knowledge, your Physical Self goes back to ground.”
 “What like remember man that you are dust kind of thing?”
 “Yes that sort of thing but we're getting a little off track. Life is time and spiritual life is light. When your Soul is pure it is love in its essence, the light of Self and you along with it so you don't need time any longer.”
 “Hang on a minute; you are talking about life as time and not life as an essence.”
 “Err yes, what did you think I was talking about?”
 “My essence.”
 “Well up until recently you were not your essence you were your ego. It's all to do with light and darkness. Light is eternal and darkness is time, the matter in your mind if you like or negative emotions if you don't...”
 “So let me get this right, what you are saying is whilst you live in darkness you live in time.”
 “ Yes, and as you know time is a cycle, birth, growth, death and rebirth so while you live in the realms of time that is your life.”
 “Oh, I thought you were actually talking about physical time.”

“Sorry?”

“You know, time like the clock.”

“What, that doesn't exist, well only in the eyes of man. No the time I am talking about is the cycle of life. While you are on it you are time.”

“So what about days, months and years then?”

“Man made again.”

“So while you are the cycle of life you are time and when you leave it you are light. You know I think I can actually understand that.”

“Good, I think we were just at cross purpose for a while. So do you want to do one more before tea?”

“Is that the time,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “It seems to have gone very quickly. Alright then faith next isn't it?”

“Right, so what is faith?”

“The ability to believe without proof?”

“Good, you even defined it. So how do you actually get this ability?”

“I don't know, I suppose you could call it an inner knowing.”

“Yes but how do you actually get this knowing, what spirit would that be?”

“The spirit of understanding I suppose. You would get it through your experience.”

“That's right. Now there are actually two types of faith, blind faith and rational faith. Blind faith is faith in the person that told you the knowledge and rational faith is faith in the understanding you have of the knowledge. Can you see the difference?”

“Yes.”

“Well blind faith stops your growth as you'll never evolve so it's not really a concept that you should follow. It was actually put in to keep people in their place, well perceived place anyway but that is neither here nor there. Rational faith is the concept you want to follow as with it you grow in understanding.”

“Yes I can see that. So you are saying learn to understand the Bible instead of letting others tell you what they perceive it to mean.”

“Yes you are half way there. To actually get the full strength of faith you are going to have to cross reference it with other works of scripture and also the Mythologies.”

“Oh, is that why I won't be finished when Genesis is done.”

“You can stop when ever you like but in the interests of your evolution it would be a good idea to carry on as it will help to build up your discernment as well.”

“Well I'm in no hurry and as you said it's in my interests so if it has to be.”

“Good, I'm glad you see it in that light. Besides I think you'll enjoy it.”

“Well you're my guide so you know what's in my heart and what's best for me.”

“Time you got that pheasant cooking then. Don't forget you are eating for two now,” and laughed.

Chapter 12

As they sat and watched the meat cook the voice said, "Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven."

"What?"

"It's from the Sermon of the Mount."

"Oh, so I had better be careful what I teach then."

"Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid. Neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel but on a candlestick and it giveth light unto all that are in the house. Let you light so shine before men, that they may see your good works and glorify your father which is in heaven."

"What is this, some sort of joke?"

"It's from the Sermon on the Mount."

"Well I sort of thought it might be. What I mean is why are you telling me this?"

"Teaching your purpose in life so why teaching then?"

"Well you told me to."

"So it was hardly a vocation. No what I actually mean is why teaching as opposed to charity work, a life of service in the underprivileged areas."

"Actually that doesn't sound too bad I could see myself doing that sort of work. I don't know then I would have thought that that would have been more useful."

"I hear you intend to write a book to help aid you to teach."

"That's right, how did you...oh I forgot."

"And would that book be for publication?"

"Well it was really for my benefit, to help me in case I forgot anything."

"So not then."

"I never really thought it that far. Well if it was good enough I suppose but I only really intended to write it as a set of notes so I will have to change that idea."

"And what are you going to do with the proceeds?"

"I guess I'm supposed to say give it to charity."

"Lay not up for yourself treasures upon the Earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt and where the thieves break through and steal. But lay up for yourself treasures in heaven where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt and where thieves do not break through and steal. For where your treasure is there will your heart be also."

"The Sermon on the Mount again?"

"Afraid so, tell me something Mad Dog, don't you just hate preachers. For I say unto you that except your righteousness shall exceed the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees ye shall in no case enter the Kingdom of Heaven."

"What are you getting at?"

"Teach don't preach, that's the difference between righteousness and self righteousness. I'm just giving you some tips so people won't think you are pompous so why teaching as opposed to anything else? In the beginning was the word but the word has to spread. Now the proceeds that you get from the book will compensate though you won't be just a Teacher as your life will be of service to your fellow man in day to day living."

"How will that address the real problem though, the world is such an unfair place."

"Judge not lest ye be judged for with what judgement ye judge ye shall be judged and with what measure ye mete it shall be measure to you again."

"More preaching?"

"Well you started getting self righteous so I thought I would just follow suit. You are not here to change the world you are only here to change your world."

“Right, I’ll bare that in mind so no more preaching then.”

“Well I will be quoting from the Bible again but as a Teacher and to show you what type of Teacher you will become.”

“Oh right.”

“As a matter of interest what do you actually perceive the role of a Teacher to be?”

“Well I thought it was sitting in front of a class with a blackboard behind me but I've been told it won't be like that.”

“Well you will be doing that to some extent but you won't be stuck in one place all the time.”

“Oh so I get to travel then.”

“I thought you might like that. I knew you were nomadic by nature. Now basically you are just there to teach so don't put any moral interpretations on the word because that will come from your emotional side. People are big enough and ugly enough now to know the difference between right and wrong and anyway they have their own guides for that job.”

“So I'm just there for the message then. Yes I understand, I've been thinking a little about this book.”

“Yes?”

“Well it's true that you can only see God by his work isn't it.”

“Yes?”

“So couldn't I just publish it and leave it at that.”

“What publish and be damned sort of thing,” the voice said with a laugh, “What do you think?”

“I guess not.”

“Well let's be honest the book will be formulated for you all you have to do is write it down. Anyway you'll soon get restless and bored without purpose in life. You've come too far now so normal life will seem mundane by comparison.”

“I suppose so, what else do I need to know?”

“Don’t waste your time on people who are not interested. It just means that they are not ready for it yet. Always be humble, remember that the master is not above the disciple nor the servant below his lord.”

“Right, so humility at all times and no moral guidance and don't just publish and be damned.”

“He that does not take up his cross is not worthy of me. Anyway you'll know what to do when the time is right.”

“Well yes, I’m still learning at the moment so it will be different when I'm finished.”

“You never stop learning but you'll have a good grounding before you go back. Anyway the meat's cooked.”

Mad Dog ate his meal and when he had finished said, “Right, so what's next?”

“Spirits of God, so what about charity?”

“Well it's got to be the spirit of love for that's what charity comes from.”

“Alright so define charity then.”

“Err the ability to give alms?”

“No you'll have to take it deeper as charity isn't just about giving money.”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “The ability to give your self.”

“Good, now how does that equate with the spirit of love?”

“You’ve got to love in order to be charitable?”

“No, think of the divine laws.”

“The divine laws, I don't know them.”

“Oh, I had better get them out the way before you can continue then.”

“Sounds like a good idea.”

“Well there are six in all, and everyone, no matter who they are, are subject to them.”

“Even the divine?”

“Especially the divine the first one is the Law of Consequences what it is saying is that the actions of one lifetime affect the next lifetime. This one won't affect you as you have evolved although if you do have a serious breach it might. The Law of Justice is next. It's a bit like Karma in one lifetime. What you sow so shall you reap, that was why I said judge not lest ye be judged.”

“Right, I've heard that one before.”

“It's well known. Then comes the Law of Humility, if you take more than you need some one will have to go without. As you might have noticed they are all about balance. Then comes the Law of Equality, we are all equal in the eyes of the Lord.”

“Shouldn't that be all created equal, that's how I heard it anyway?”

“No because if we were just created equal that could be interpreted that your evolution makes you better in the eyes of the Lord.”

“Does it, how does that tally?”

“Well it's all to do with perceptions. Saying that we were created equal could lead some people who had their own interests at heart to say it was only at the time of our conception that we were equal. Leading on from that would be a sort of survival of the fittest logic and inequality.”

“Yes I can see that. People seem to think that if they are cleverer they are better.”

“So the next one is the one that actually concerns charity it's the Law of Love and it says that you have to give in order to receive. What you give is returned a hundred fold though not in the material sense. Finally the Law of Self Regulation, that says that Nature finds its own balance, basically it covers all of the others.”

“Right, so by giving I receive the spirit of love.”

“In a nutshell yes, this is the most important thing in your development though so always bare it in mind. When Paul said all this is nothing without charity he was not wrong.”

“Okay, is that it on charity?”

“Yes, except to say that it is better to give than to receive so what next then?”

“Fortitude, though I don't quite see what that spirit would be.”

“Well there is only two left so take your pick.”

“It's either wisdom or discernment though I'm none the wiser.”

“Define fortitude then maybe that will give you some idea.”

“Its endurance isn't it or courage in adversity.”

“Yes, that's right but define it in the way I showed you.”

“The ability to endure?”

“Not quite, take it deeper it will help.”

“The ability to take strength from your self?”

“Yes. Oh by the way when you said that faith was the ability to believe without proof it's actually the ability to believe in your self. The same as self confidence but I left it at that as it had been used before so the ability to take strength from your self. What would be the self that you took strength from?”

“The spirit of wisdom?”

“Good and how would it work?”

“Well the strength from your wisdom would give you the endurance. You would be able to tolerate adversity better because your mind would be stronger.”

“There is that aspect but it goes deeper. Let's take courage in adversity first. You'll know that any problem you face is only minor for you have the big picture of life and so what seemed like the end of the world to some would seem pretty mundane to you. Endurance too, from the strength of this knowledge you will be able to cope with anything that is thrown at you.”

“Yes I can see that so that just leaves us with the last one.”

“Patience Mad Dog I haven't finished yet.”

“Oh sorry, I didn't realise.”
 “Just a joke, where's your humour nowadays?”
 “You were going to show me how to get it.”
 “What humour,” the voice said pleading ignorance.
 “No patience.”
 “I know, I know. So tell me then, why do you think that you haven't got it?”
 “Well I haven't. I fret a lot about things; I always think the worse if something's late. I'm just impatient.”
 “Well it sounds to me like you are judging yourself with how you used to be.”
 “I'm still the same.”
 “What makes you think that? You've moved on a long way and pretty quickly how do you know that it hasn't already fallen along the way side?”
 “Has it?”
 “You tell me. You're getting close enough to truly know what's in your heart now.”
 “I'm not sure.”
 “Right, now first thing this morning you asked me how to get it.”
 “Err yes.”
 “And I said that I would tell you later. Well now is later.”
 “Right, so?”
 “So you've already got it.”
 “Sorry?”
 “Well if you were impatient you would have asked me again wouldn't you as it would still be in your mind.”
 “Err yes, you're right.”
 “So what is patience then?”
 “Well I don't really know how to define it but I do understand your logic.”
 “Well it's the ability to put something to the back of your mind until it's time. Of course that's not the definition that I expect you to give me. That's just a loose one to start the topic off.”
 “Fair enough and you get this ability through the spirit of discernment. How would that actually equate?”
 “You tell me but first you had better define what it actually is.”
 “I suppose that is being able to distinguish things, sort the wheat from the chaff.”
 “Yes that's about it, knowledge of good and evil on one level and the ability to read between the lines on another. So what part of the brain would it come from?”
 “Err.”
 “Rational or emotional?”
 “Well rational I think.”
 “Good and what part of the brain would impatience come from?”
 “Emotional?”
 “That's right. In fact if you notice all the spirits are rational and all the deadly sins come from the emotions.”
 “Yes, though I don't see the connection.”
 “The emotions come from the imagination as do the virtues. As your consciousness expands into light it uncovers the negative emotions and replaces them with virtues. Charity replaces avarice, humility replaces pride and envy, gluttony and lechery, fortitude replaces sloth and patience replaces anger.”
 “So when Satan got reformed I found my patience.”
 “That's right; well another side to this expansion is an increase in the power of discernment. You change from being an emotional animal to a rational one. Your instinct to follow

disappears and you find out things for yourself. To put it another way you grow up and learn to stand on your own two feet, mentally you can work things out for yourself.”

“Right, I can see that and this strength of mind enables you to control your emotions or actually defeat them?”

“No replace them. You can not kill them as such they get reformed in the light. When you kill them in dreams it is only symbolic.”

“But what about that thing that's coming tonight, you said I had to kill it.”

“Yes but that's not an emotion.”

“What’s the difference?”

“When you are in this reality you need them. That thing you'll kill is a negative will. Now your Will has left you it is Spiritual but the Physical Will is still around.”

“I thought that it died.”

“Only in the realms of time in the lower spiritual realms it still lives.”

“Oh right so it's coming to try and regain its place I suppose.”

“You could say that so anyway patience. How does discernment give you the ability to put things to the back of your mind until its time?”

“By making you rational enough to distinguish that impatience is just an emotion and when you realise this it loses its effect.”

“Good, waiting for a thought to die is to understand its pain. Right so what is patience then?”

“The ability to control thy self.”

“Got it, did you notice that we did not include temperance by the way?”

“Yes I was wondering about that.”

“We put it under humility because of the divine law.”

“If you take more than you need someone has to go without. Now I can see that working with gluttony but I'm not really sure how that would fit in with lechery.”

“Faithfulness, you should only really have one partner for that's all you need.”

“Oh yes, I can see it at a push.”

“Well isn't humility loyalty to your Self for by putting others before you, you are true to your Self.”

“I'm not sure about that. Could you elaborate?”

“That’s my line,” the voice said with a laugh, “You’re true to your purpose in life and that is to serve. Now you can't serve two masters and although Jesus was actually talking about avarice it works on an emotional level as well.”

“Right, I can see that.”

“Besides isn't it better to be known as faithful and true. Well that's it for the seven spirits and it's getting on a bit now.”

“Yes soon be time to sleep,” Mad Dog said, his fear resurfacing slightly.

“Yes and then you'll be back on Genesis day 5.”

“There’s supposed to be quite a lot in that,” Mad Dog said surprised how his fear had disappeared.

“Not as much as day 6 but you'll find it pretty easy as it is just an expansion. You have already done the ground work for it.”

“So how does it actually work then?”

“Think of it more as adding meat to the bone, growing if you like.”

“Like adding substance to the form yes I can see that, growing with every day.”

“Creation of self, anyway it's about time you hit the sack. We'll carry on in the morning.”

Mad Dog went inside and lay on the mattress. He started to say the mantras and as he did something strange happened. It was like a buzzing in his head and it unnerved him more than a little at first. After a while though he felt quite comforted by it and seemed to take a certain amount of strength from it. It lasted for about a minute and then he fell to sleep.

Chapter 13

Mad Dog found himself in the twi-light zone, the stage of consciousness between reality perceived and reality imagined. He felt a weight on him and it was trying to push him down. He tried to move his hands but could not lift them. He was trapped and seemed to be being forced down. His whole essence dropped slightly and he tried harder to free himself from his demise. Finally he managed to free his arms and he struck out and the weight just seemed to disperse into nothingness.

No sooner had this happened then he found himself back on the mountain face to face with the old man and his book. "Right onto Genesis, I hear you had a day off by the way."

"Is that it, was that my negative will?"

"Yes, was being the operative word."

"So what's next then?"

"Genesis day five."

"No I mean in the development. What have I got to expect next?"

"The day shift will tell you. It's not my place. So anyway we've got quite a lot of ground to cover now that you have come of holiday."

"Some holiday it's been non stop. We did all seven spirits of God but I guess you know that."

"Yes I have my contacts. So anyway Genesis, are you ready to continue?"

"Well I'm still a bit shocked, it was quite a blip to my reality."

"We'll leave it a while then and let you regain your composure. You want to be in a balanced mind anyway as you need to keep your wits about you."

"Thanks, hopefully it won't take too long. Where was I anyway?"

"Well day five but I thought you wanted to leave it for a while."

"No, I mean back then. I was in the caravan so I must have been awake but I wasn't."

"Oh, you were in the lower spiritual realms, the transformation from physical to spiritual. I suppose you could call it semi conscious."

"You know I must have been in that state before but I can't remember when."

"When you left your body perhaps?"

"Yes that's right, I remember it now."

"So what actually happened then?"

"You mean you don't know. I thought you knew everything."

"Oh thanks. No I'm afraid not as it happened before our mergence."

"You're just saying that."

"Yes alright, your powers of discernment are getting a lot stronger. Tell me about it anyway as it is all part of your re awakening."

"Well it was strange. I was in the house and to all intents and purpose was awake. I went to the toilet to take a leak and this big man came in while I was doing it. He asked to use the shower, I said alright and then it happened. I felt my body drop slightly from the Solar Plexus and lift. The next thing I remember I was on the ceiling getting thinner and thinner."

"Was it frightening?"

"Pretty. Well I read somewhere about astral travelling so it came into my mind that I would go and pay a visit to my ex girlfriend and then I awoke."

"Right. The shower was symbolic of cleansing and the man your True Self."

"So cleansed meant it was pure, yes I can see that."

"Now why did you have to tell me about it?"

"You told me to."

"No," the man said with a laugh, "You had to bring it out into the light to examine it."

"Of course, I should have remembered that from the other fellow."

"Right, so have you regained your composure?"

"Yes, I'm raring to go now."

“ From the light of God's spirit seeing knowing and a life blessed with God's purpose through God's spirit you get a spiritual loving mind, a self loving mind, work and life of love through God's purpose from which God know God's life, you get a spiritual will and understanding through spiritual transformation, God's mind sees the word (blessed with God's purpose)transformed to God's spiritual understanding, blessed with blessed transformation to God's purpose (God's spiritual word)and a self through spiritual wisdom(love through God's purpose)from which you get knowing and self through work of God's spirit.

From the light of God's spirit seeing knowing and knowing through loving life of God's spirit you get wisdom through self of God's spirit, will of God's spirit (God's life), God's spiritual understanding and a life of God, God's spiritual will and God's spirit..”

“ Now the light of God's spirit is the will (God blessed with light, the ain in Cain)and seeing knowing means that it has evolved into a will of knowing which married to a life of spiritual purpose gives you a spiritual mind and a loving self through which by serving God's purpose you know God's life. Your will and understanding evolve through spiritual transformation through service and the word to God's spiritual word and your self becomes in essence loving spiritual wisdom.

From the light of God's spirit and the Holy Spirit your Self is fed with spiritual wisdom, you become God's will and understanding and live a life of God through spiritual understanding.”

“Good, very good in fact would you like to sum it up?”

“From a will of light and a life of spiritual purpose you evolve to God's spiritual word and your Self in essence is loving spiritual wisdom. From a will of light and the Holy Spirit you become God's will and understanding and live a life of God.”

“Very good you're getting through it very quickly. How do you feel any different?”

“Well I do feel a little strange. I don't know how to explain it really.”

“Stronger perhaps?”

“Not really, sort of lighter I suppose. It's quite a strange feeling.”

“Well you are being filled with light. I'm only stopping awhile to let it sink in. Don't worry we'll soon be back on track.”

“Sure, it seems to be going quickly doesn't it?”

“That's my boy.”

“Are you my father?”

“What made you ask that?”

“It was something the guide said.”

“He wants to be careful,” the man said with a laugh, “I could have him up for slander.”

“No he didn't say that you were. There was something I read in the Bible that made me wonder.”

“What was that then?”

“It was something from the Sermon on the Mount. Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works and glorify your father which is in heaven.”

“Oh yes, I remember that. I am your father.”

“And you look like that?”

“Well I did at one time, in my last lifetime.”

“Oh, so what do you actually look like now?”

“Light, if you saw me in my purest the intensity would burn you up.”

“I'd better not then. So you must live in heaven, what's it like?”

“Well it's as much as it says it is really.”

“What do you mean clouds and angels playing harps?”

“No,” the man said with a laugh, “It means spirit through God's love and light. I couldn't really explain it better than that. I think the nearest thing you have to it is plasma.”

“Plasma, do you mean like the Sun?”

“That’s right it's always sunny in heaven, all that light you know.”

“What about hell then?”

“Not in the sense that you probably mean, I'm guessing fire and brimstone.”

“Well the guide did put me right about that. So what actually is it then?”

“Take off the last I and you get spirit without God's purpose. This tends to give you a lot of guilt as you drift directionless through life getting your self in trouble.”

“So I was in hell and didn't know it.”

“You might not as an ego but your True Self would have. Anyway I wouldn't concern yourself about it as you are now part of the spirit through God's love and light. We'll talk a little about guilt and I'll see if I can relieve you of it.”

“Sure, I do seem to suffer a lot from it for some reason.”

“Think of it as gravitational pull. It's there to try and stop your Spirit from rising on one level but it also makes you think of the gravest consequences from your actions.”

“Right, so how do I actually get rid of it?”

“Guilt’s a very strange thing; it never seems to want to go away. I mean let's take you as an example.”

“Me?”

“Yes, you left your body and your Soul and Spirit merged, what does that tell you?”

“Err go on.”

“That your Soul was pure. Now in Genesis when that happened there was a flood.”

“That’s right, followed by the rainbow.”

“Well the flood was symbolic of cleansing of the Soul but not only that it was a washing away of the sins. Now tell me then with all your sins being washed away and your conscious changed to one that is unlikely to sin why ever should you feel guilty. You should be balanced now, like the rainbow that followed the flood.”

“The funny thing is I know. When I found out what I had been through I reasoned that I must be pure yet still I feel guilty.”

“It’s well engrained in your psyche. Let me give you an example. Not long after your mother died your television licence ran out and you never renewed it.”

“Yes, I remember.”

“Do you remember that every time an advert came out about television license evasion you nearly always looked out the window?”

“Yes but that was more from being caught, I wouldn't call it guilt.”

“That was an effect of guilt, the fear of getting caught. You see it pulls you to think the worse in any given situation. Now I'm willing to wager that if you were stranded on a desert island with just a portable T.V. and it came on you would still look behind you just in case.”

“Really.”

“Well that might be a bit extreme but there still is a good chance.”

“You know I probably would. I mean no matter what time it came on I was still a little wary.”

“Yes guilt is a very strange concept, it's very well engrained and it will take some shifting.”

“And do you think you can, that would be amazing.”

“I could relieve you of some of it but that's more in the realms of the day shift.”

“Oh.”

“Let’s look at acts that cause you to feel guilty even though they happened before your cleansing. The memories seem to hold you yet when you think about it they shouldn't.”

“Why’s that then. I mean why do they hold me as I already know that they shouldn't?”

“I mean look at it logically, emotions aside by the very fact that you got to that stage you should have nothing to feel guilty about.”

“Well true. I've never really thought about it that way.”

“Your best bet would be to hammer it out with the day shift though because it comes from the Self and not the Spirit.”

“True. Mind you, you have given me something to think about so I appreciate that.”

“Well let it sink in a bit so by tomorrow you'll have a clearer perspective. So it looks like the day shift is going to be busy.”

“What with guilt and explaining the next stage he's got plenty to go at.”

“So are you ready for some more?”

“Sure.”

“From God's self knowing God's spirit (God's life) and work through wisdom (love knowing God's spirit) you get a mind blessed with life knowing God's light (blessed seeing work), spiritual understanding of God's light, life through transformation to God's light, life blessed with transformation (blessed by God's light), blessed with spiritual understanding self of God's work and loving spiritual understanding (God's spirit).

From (blessed seeing work)spiritual understanding of God's light you get spiritual understanding through self of God and transformed through the transformation of God's light which gives you God's understanding(spiritual understanding), loving knowing blesses life, God's purpose through loving wisdom (spiritual understanding)blesses life and God's purpose through loving life (life blesses life)

From life blessed with transformation you get through the spiritual word, God's spirit and the spiritual word through knowing, the spirit of God's light sees spiritual will, God's self blessed with transformation to God's spirit and through God's purpose the transformation of God to God's spirit.”

“So from God's self knowing God's life and work(service) through loving wisdom you get a mind blessed with God's light and spiritual understanding of God's light, the transformation of light being the mind's life administered by the Holy Spirit. Now the Holy Spirit transforms the self through God's light and gives you God's understanding, God's purpose and God's spiritual wisdom.

From being blessed by this transformation through the spiritual word you get God's spirit seeing spiritual will and the self transforms to God's spirit and through God's purpose God's will transforms to God's spirit.”

“Good, just sum it up and that's day five finished.”

“ From a spiritual life you get a self of light and spiritual understanding fed by the Holy Spirit which is the mind's life and transformation(both Self and Will to spirit.)”

“Excellent, so we'll talk a little bit more about teaching then. So what have you been told so far?”

“Be humble and not to preach.”

“Good, now don't get down hearted if the word is not accepted it just means that who ever heard it was not quite ready for it at that particular time.”

“Oh yes, I didn't mention it as I thought it not important.”

“Well it's very important so always keep it in your conscious.”

“Is it, why is that then?”

“Well believe it or not it gets pretty frustrating as if it falls on deaf ears you feel that you are not doing your job properly on one level.”

“I can see that but I don't think it would bother me that much.”

“It's more of a subconscious thing; you see your purpose comes from within. Its love and you know what they say about spurned love.”

“I see what you mean. You said one level?”

“Well all this knowledge you have acquired and the experiences you have been through have knocked your sense of reality out of the window, it's drove you mad.”

“I don't know about that, mind you it will go with my nickname I suppose,” and laughed.

“A life of God's transformation you are now living in a spiritual reality. Your experiences are well above most peoples' imagination so if you tried to explain them they would probably just laugh and think you insane. Pedants as well. They'll turn around and say you said this today yet you said something else yesterday, that sort of thing.”

“And I'll probably say something different tomorrow for things are revealed only when you are ready to understand them.”

“Good I can see that you will go a long way. So can you see what I mean about patience?”

“Yes I also understand that God can not really be quantified as he has to be experienced.”

“Excellent, so at the end of the day if people reject you that's their problem. Now don't get me wrong it is better if they came straight away but this is about you and not them.”

“Now that sounds selfish, how does that fit in with the word of God?”

“They've rejected you with their own free will so that means they are not ready. Plenty of people will hear the word and accept it and from that acceptance the seed will be planted and will grow as well as you through doing it.”

“I suppose you are right I'm a Teacher not a preacher.”

“Good, levels of understanding next then. If you tell people depending on their level of understanding they will interpret the word in different ways.”

“Sorry?”

“Well take you as an example as you grew in understanding the things that you thought meant something actually meant something else. Take God as an example an old man in heaven or will seeing transformation in the spirit through love and light.”

“Of course yes.”

“Right so when you talk to people they will get a different interpretation depending on their level of consciousness.”

“That's tricky with a large class; I mean they will all be on different levels I suppose.”

“Yes but don't worry as you have the ability to speak in tongues.”

“What?”

“You'll be speaking on many levels. It will all mean something to them and they will learn and grow accordingly.”

“Fair enough, anything else I need to know?”

“Well with this job you'll learn more by actually doing it as experience is the best Teacher but if you keep what I've told you in mind you should not go too far of track.”

“I'll bare that in mind.”

“So finally for tonight the meaning of life.”

“I thought I did that with the day shift.”

“Time is to us as reason needs to be, it's the condensed version, any thoughts on that?”

“Well time is life the day shift said, well the evolution of life and the reason we are here I suppose is to be of service to activate the spirit of purpose.”

“Yes and what is the spirit of purpose?”

“God?”

“So reason needs to be now, why should reason need to be?”

“God's needs to exist?”

“Good, the spirit of purpose can not exist if it has no purpose to live, does that make sense?”

“Sort of, so without service God can not exist?”

“Yes, but I'm talking about the God within. The divine lives but that is outside the realms of time so you can only see it by its work or in dreams. So put it together.”

“Evolution is to us because the spirit of purpose can not live without having a purpose. Yes I can see it. Evolution would be the purification of the Soul and expansion of the spiritual consciousness and the reason to achieve our divinity and be at one with the Universe.”

“Good we'll carry on at day six tomorrow,” and with that Mad Dog woke up.

Chapter 14

Mad Dog woke up to a bright new morning and said his prayers, he walked out into the warm day and felt strangely elated. "Well you made it then," the voice said by way of greeting, "Or then again you might be your shadow."

"Funny, no it's definitely me."

"So what happened?"

"It was strange, it was just like a mist but it was solid enough to push me."

"Did it make much of a mess?"

"I don't know. I didn't think that it could as it was only a mist."

"Well take a look at your shirt that will tell you if it did."

Mad Dog looked down and saw something resembling soot all down his front, "Yes it made a mess."

"Well wash it in the stream it will soon dry out in this heat."

Mad Dog took off his shirt and went to the stream, as he washed the shirt he said, "It was a close shave I can tell you, I couldn't move my arms at first."

"I bet you must have been frightened."

"I never really thought about it to tell you the truth. It happened so quickly." He hung the shirt over the branch of a tree and the voice said, "Well on to the next stage I suppose, your negative imagination."

"And that will be similar?"

"No that will happen in this reality."

"Oh so it will seem more real to me then and I have to kill it?"

"Afraid so but don't worry as it won't be trying to kill you."

"Okay then, so what will actually happen, how will it work?"

"You have to go very deep to get it but before I go on have you ever heard the expression shaking inside?"

"Yes, isn't that to do with when you are angry though? I thought that I had already got rid of it."

"Well the point I'm trying to make is that you have an inner negative self. Now the first thing that you have to do is recognise that you have it."

"Right and how do I actually go about doing that?"

"By recognising it for what it is, it is your inner fear. You can sometimes feel it when you are in a situation where you might come to harm. If it is strong it might take over if it is not you can control it."

"How could I control it?"

"Sometimes if you stamp your foot you can or when you are stronger recognise it for what it is and it loses its control over you. Tell it to behave."

"Honest, and that works?"

"Oh yes. Now by the time that you recognise it as a separate identity you can actually feel it as such because it shakes."

"And how do I actually get rid of it then. I can't fight it as it is inside me."

"You can but you have to do it with knowledge."

"Sorry?"

"You could just be lying there contemplating things. Usually higher truths but it could be exploring the Self call it Soul searching if you like. You hit a certain bit of information and it unlocks it."

"Well that sounds easy enough," Mad Dog said with a sigh of relief, "I won't come to much harm doing that."

"Not strictly true you could be in a hell of a lot of danger."

“How I mean let's be honest I will only be mulling over things. What possible harm could I come to doing that?”

“Mind traps. Certain information can trigger certain reactions, you should think of it as going through a mine field.”

“What reactions?”

“Pretty much like what you had before but this time it will just pull you down into your subconscious and you will not come back.”

“Oh, so where would I actually go to?”

“Ground but I wouldn't really worry about it.”

“What, that sounds like it would be well worth worrying about.”

“The Spirit will pull you back before you come into any real harm but I will tell you one thing it is pretty terrifying when you are going through it.”

“So what about if you told me what the information was I could speed it up then?”

“I would like to but I am afraid that I can't.”

“Oh right, something I have to work out for myself I guess.”

“Well there is that but the other reason is that I don't know myself.”

“But you are the spirit of knowing. You have the Collective Conscious behind you surely one of them would know. I mean they would have all gone through it themselves wouldn't they.”

“Oh yes but believe me when you do manage to uncover it the shock to your system will wipe out all trace of the thought train.”

“Okay, besides I won't come to any real harm at the end of the day.”

“That's right; it's all in the mind.”

“So what's on the agenda for today then? You said you had something lined up for me.”

“That will be later. First things first though any little matters that you want to clear up from last night. Any problems want sorting?”

“Well now you come to mention it the man said to ask you about getting rid of my guilt.”

“Now that's a subject in itself. So what have you to feel guilty about? What about depriving all those starving people of food by taking the money of the offertory plate?”

“Strange that as I don't really feel so bad about that now for some reason.”

“You have been absolved from your sins that's probably why.”

“I don't think that it is. When you mentioned it the other day I still felt guilty and that was after the merge.”

“No I didn't mean it in that sense. When I told you we knew about it and we knew the reason behind it and you could forget about it that did it.”

“Did it? Well how does that work then?”

“Well I am a messenger of the divine so by telling you that you think that you have it on good authority so you can put it all behind you.”

“Yes, now you mention that I can remember back when I was a child feeling a lot better after having my confession heard.”

“Well you would perceive the priest in the same way. Did you mention the collection money by the way?”

“I didn't really want to bother him unduly,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “You know what with one thing or another he must have been a very busy man.”

“It's a shame that. You know they do say that confession is good for the Soul and it's very true. You would have found that by telling him you got it off your chest and would have felt a lot better for doing it.”

“Well I couldn't really bring myself to tell him. He might have recognised me.”

“There is that I suppose,” the voice said with a laugh, “So anyway telling someone that you perceive to be in authority is a good way to relieve you of it.”

“I can see that but what I mean is getting rid of it all together.”

“ Oh you want to be a psychopath,” the voice said with a laugh, “ I would have said that was the only way to get rid of your guilt completely would be not doing anything at all but then you would probably feel guilty about being lazy.”

“So there's not much chance then?”

“Well there is but I'll tell you about it later. First things first we'll go for a walk and see what's in store for you today.”

“Sound which way?”

“Go by the Oak Tree and see where we end up.”

“Fair enough,” Mad Dog said and headed in that direction.

“I suppose we had better talk about the nature of sin. So tell me Mad Dog you've been a bit of a lad at times so you should know. What is a sin?”

“Oh thanks,” Mad Dog said and thought awhile, “I suppose you could say it was a transgression of either divine or moral law.”

“Now there talks a man with experience,” the voice said with a laugh, “Putting it that way it sounds like a very clear cut kind of thing doesn't it?”

“Yes I suppose so. I mean let's be honest at the end of the day we all know the difference between right and wrong.”

“Yes a very good point. So what makes somebody want to go out and actually sin?”

“Well many reasons, greed, envy, desperation sometimes. It would depend on the situation I suppose.”

“True, let's look at desperation then. Is it wrong to steal when you are starving?”

“Well that would depend on the circumstances as well.”

“Yes, very true. So tell me then in its essence what is actually stealing?”

“Taking something that does not belong to you.”

“Good, now if you were hungry as I said earlier and found a dead pheasant would that be stealing?”

“Well I suppose so. They do say that the pheasant belongs to the land it was found on.”

“But what do you think in your head. Do you think that you stole it?”

“Well not in my head no but if you want to take it from a legal point of view I stole it.”

“Not just a legal point but also from a moral point. This land belongs to someone and so it was theirs. In fact I would have said if you had done it 600 years ago you could have been hung for poaching.”

“Are you trying to make me feel guilty? You told me where to get it from; you even told me how to prepare it.”

“Got it, you heard it from someone in authority. Well I'm from the highest authority and I say that if you steal out of desperation it is not a sin. You know that the real sin is that you should have been put in that situation in the first place.”

“I can see that but I could turn around and say that two wrongs don't make a right.”

“Actually in some cases they do.”

“What?”

“Haven't you heard the saying what you sow so shall you reap. If you sow discord you'll reap the same. Don't get me wrong Mad Dog I'm not advocating you to sin what I'm telling you that from the point of view of the divine a lot of what you thought a sin was not.”

“Well I can see that with the pheasant and rabbits and maybe apples on trees but how far do you actually take it. What about mugging or burglary?”

“ Now that's going from one extreme to another,” the voice said with a laugh, “Common sense tells you that actions that cause distress to others, that's the sin in the eyes of the divine. By helping others you help your self but by hurting others you hurt your self.”

“So you are not advocating whole scale anarchy then,” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“No, I'm just pointing out that all is not black and white taking that out of the equation you would say that man sins out of divine ignorance through an emotional will. What does that mean to you?”

“Well I suppose an emotional will would be greed or another of the deadly sins.”

“Good they are the cause as opposed to the effect, now what about divine ignorance?”

“Ignorance of the divine, they don't know that it is a sin?”

“Now everyone knows the difference between right and wrong so it goes a little deeper than that.”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “The emotions blind them to the fact?”

“Right, now in what way do they do that?”

Mad Dog thought some more and said, “By de-humanising them?”

“Got it, we are all God's children and are all equal in his eyes. Now deep down we all know that yet we try to cover up the fact, the Chain of Being for example.”

“I've heard of that though I don't know what it is.”

“It says that life is on levels, ordained from on high.”

“Really, well maybe they were ignorant of the divine if they thought that. Besides they can't be that clued up if they thought heaven was what I thought.”

“That's pride at work, over rationalise the message and you end up miles of course.”

“Now how does sinning fit in with this new concept of heaven and hell then? I mean let's be honest if there was no hell where do all the major players go?”

“They just die and the Soul has to pick up the pieces and the next ego has to atone.”

“Oh right, well I think so anyway and hell would be the guilt that they get as well.”

“Yes, though that will be in the same lifetime as the transgression.”

“I'm still a little confused. So where does the actual guilt come from?”

“Think about it logically what actually is hell?”

“Well the night shift said it was the spirit without purpose so I would have to say the same.”

“Right, now I know you haven't got this far but in Genesis the first man was Israel.”

“Sorry, I thought it was Adam.”

“No that means God's transformation (God's life).”

“Oh.”

“Now what does that actually mean?”

“Err; God's transformation is his life?”

“Go on,” The voice said waiting for expansion.

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “Reason needs to be. He comes to live through this transformation?”

“Got it, now if you read the preliminary to it, the six days of creation man does not actually appear to the sixth day. Well the sixth day has Jacob in which means blessed with God's will seeing self. What do you think that means?”

“Blessed with knowing your purpose in life?”

“Very good, now if you didn't notice man does not appear straight away but later in day six. He actually comes into being when Jacob changes his name to Israel.”

“Right.”

“Well Israel means blessed understanding knowing, God through God's purpose. Is that any help to you?”

“Well not really.”

“And I thought you were the blessed understanding.”

“Hang on a minute I think I get it now. Knowing God would be the spirit in the collective wouldn't it.”

“That's right and God's purpose, well if you haven't got it; it is the spirit without purpose.”

“And that's where the guilt comes from, the God within.”

“No, the negative God within.”

“Is that the negative imagination, when I defeat it does the guilt go?”

“No the negative imagination is the negative understanding.”

“Well how do I get rid of the negative God within?”

“It’s not actually a being like the other two as your purpose grows with the Holy Spirit it diminishes along with the guilt.”

“Yes, I can see the logic in that.”

“So your guilt will go of its own accord. As your purpose grows you'll have less to feel guilt about. Tell me Mad Dog in Genesis why did Cain get the guilt?”

“For going against God's purpose, he killed Abel.”

“So by resurrecting Abel he has nothing to feel guilty about has he.”

“Yes true. I've never thought about it in that light before.”

“Well I'm afraid you still have more re awakening to do. So anyway back to sin.”

“Oh, I thought we had finished.”

“Not much to go now. You wanted to know how it fits in with heaven and hell well we are here to achieve our divinity and to do that we have to purify ourselves on one level.”

“Right.”

“Well with each and every cause sin removed you lose the potential to sin as it is no longer in your nature.”

“Yes I can see that when you put it that way.”

“I’m talking about real sin now not like taking the pheasant but sins that hurt other people because that is the worst sin of all.”

“Got it,” Mad Dog said and looking in front of him, “There’s an old brick shed up ahead. That's a strange place to see it.”

“Well take a walk over and see what it has in store.”

Mad Dog headed over to it.

Chapter 15

Mad Dog entered into the brick shed and had a look around him. He saw nothing of any interest at first so he said, "It's just an old brick shed shall we move on?"

"This is your next home, what's the matter don't you like it?"

"I'm to move here now? Why is that? The caravan will do me until I'm ready to go back."

"Maybe but the owners coming back the day after tomorrow you'll have to move out before then."

"You mean that some one lives in a place like that?"

"Why not, another person who turned his back on the world didn't you realise by the snares and mattress?"

"And this is the surprise is it?"

"No I was just showing you your next home if you want to carry on with your learning."

"Sorry?"

"Well you'll be finished Genesis by tomorrow night. Now you can stop at that or carry on to the next stage."

"So what's actually involved in the next stage? I thought I said I would leave it in your hands anyway."

"Well to your second point I have to ask you again as you are nearly finished. You have the choice to take this as far as you want to go but you have to be fully committed to carry on so think it through."

"Well what about the first point then if I knew what was involved it would help me with my decision."

"It's a strengthening of faith. Cross reference with the other Mythologies to help build up your powers of discernment and enhance your understanding."

"Well sure then. If it needs to be done then I'll do it. I don't really see what all the fuss is about it's just doing what I'm doing already isn't it?"

"Well it is and it isn't. The first stage, the one that you are on now is the re awakening. Now this on its own will probably be enough to carry you through the job you are going to do."

"And the second?"

"That's the re interpretation, as I said it will strengthen your faith but it does have a down side."

"Yes."

"Well if you think this makes a bit of a mockery out of the reality you thought you knew just wait and see what the next one has to offer."

"Something to look forward to I guess. So what's this surprise then?"

"I'm taking you down the village for a meal; see how you get on back in semi reality."

"I've got no money so how do you actually intend to pay for it?"

"Ask and you shall receive. Oh and by the way when we are out it might not be a good idea to talk to me as people might think you have a slate loose."

"Alright, you'll still be with though won't you?"

"Yes, all you have to do is think though I thought we would go to Sheltam as it seems a nice place."

"That's miles away that's a lot of walking we are talking about."

"I know but you do need the exercise and beside you don't really want to bump into anyone you know just yet do you."

"I suppose not, well it looks like I'm walking then."

As they walked the voice said, "So are you starting to like to be a Teacher any more?"

"Yes I've got to admit it's really starting to appeal to me now. I could actually see myself as one."

"Good, that's the spirit. You're growing all the time. Soon you won't need me any more."

“What, do you mean that you are to leave me?”

“Not in the sense that you mean. I'll still be around it's just that I will be your voice. I'll blend in as you evolve.”

“Oh right, I thought that you were going to go away.”

“No I'll never do that. I've always been with you it's just that you were not really conscious of me before. Who was the one that told you to go to Alcoholics Anonymous?”

“That was you; I thought it was just one of my thoughts.”

“It was but so am I. Right back to teaching then I suppose.”

“Okay so what's next?”

“You can't get more fundamental than fun. Lighten up Mad Dog and inject a sense of humour into your lessons. People learn quicker if they are happy to be there. Never take yourself too seriously but relax and enjoy yourself because then you'll enjoy the job that you are doing.”

“True I have been a bit serious of late.”

“Well I'm glad you said of late because that has got to die. Right onto the next point give each to his needs according to his means.”

“What?”

“Recognise the individualism of the class. Some learn quicker than others and can take more on whilst others need to take things slower. Now never make judgement on people because of their ability because by the time they have finished they will all be equal. When you look at the class see them as they will be and not how they are and instil all I tell you into them so they too might spread the word.”

“Right, so I'm actually teaching potential Teachers then.”

“Yes so if you aren't thorough a little information will be lost and the same thing could happen with your pupils. Having said that the book that you write will be thorough just be careful that you don't put your emotional conceptions onto the word and you will be alright.”

“Fair enough, I think we covered that earlier.”

“True but I am emphasising it because of the serious nature of it.”

“Right, I'll bare that in mind.”

“So basically have fun and be thorough and you will enjoy life and prosper in the spiritual sense.”

“Sounds good to me so is that it for teaching then?”

“For the time being let your Spirit take it in so it might grow and we'll come back to it later.”

“Fair enough, so what's next on the agenda then?”

“Charity I thought we might dwell on that to pass the time for a while.”

“Sure.”

“You seemed a little unsure about teaching at the start if I remember right. You thought that you would be better off in some sort of service to community kind of role.”

“Yes but you explained that to me.”

“Well it's time to expand on the explanation so you may truly understand.”

“Okay.”

“Now what you are actually dealing with it a shift in consciousness and from that shift you get self reliance amongst other things. Is that about right?”

“Yes, I suppose so.”

“Now in a way you say that it is like giving a starving man a book. Would that be correct in your mind?”

“Well now you've mentioned it yes. I can see the benefits from all this teaching but let's be honest it has no real benefit to a starving man having said that the money from the sale of the book goes a long way to appease my conscience.”

“Good, I'm glad you can see the big picture. You are not just giving the man the book you are giving him the proceeds as well. Well that's one level cleared up. I'll take it a little deeper and see if we can appease your conscience some more.”

“Right, it does still stick in the back of my throat a bit.”

“When you know the real big picture you will change your mind. Now the shift in consciousness brings self reliance as we have mentioned earlier but these things take time to work their way down so the effect won't be immediate.”

“Yes I can see that.”

“There will still be a lot of suffering around that can not be helped as the world is that far out of balance at present. With that in mind we've put in a little stipulation.”

“You have, what's that?”

“Sort of a maximum wage, bare in mind that what the Spirit gives it can also take away and this will happen if you break the Law of Humility.”

“What, if you take more than you need someone has to go without.”

“Very true, break the Law and you break your side of the bargain.”

“But how do you quantify what you need. Some people will turn around and say that they need more than others.”

“Then they are deluding themselves and more than likely they will never evolve anyway. Now some people might evolve and with the strength of mind they get from it and the new opportunities that arise because of it get waylaid and deluded. Think of the seed in the parable of the sower, the one that grew and withered for that is a good example.”

“I'll bare that in mind so what's this maximum wage then?”

“I'll leave that to individual discretion but it will probably be like normal living to you so I wouldn't concern yourself, just remember never get need and desire mixed up and you should be alright. Now should you earn more than your needs I would suggest give the rest to charity to activate the Law of Love.”

“Well I can live with that I feel a lot better now.”

“You can't take the world on your shoulders you can only do your bit like everyone else. It will still take time to evolve but it will be a concrete base that you are working from so it should be eternal like the life it brings. So that's charity sorted what do you want to eat then?”

“I don't know. I don't even know how you are going to pay for it and I don't like washing up if that's your plan.”

“No,” the voice said with a laugh, “You should be able to run quick enough. They say the White Swan does a good steak and chips and if you are lucky you might get a pint as well. Mind you I don't expect you to go back to your old way of life.”

“Well steak and chips sound good but until I know how you are paying for it first I'm not going near the place.”

“That £10 by your foot should cover it.”

Mad Dog looked down and sure enough there was a £10. He picked it up and put it in his pocket, “You never stop surprising me,” he said after he had put it away.

“Well charity begins at home. We'll soon be there, are you hungry?”

“Yes, very.”

“Amazing what a good walk does for your appetite,” the voice said as they entered the village. Mad Dog went into the pub and checking the prices found that he had enough for a pint of lager.

“Could I have a pint of lager please,” he said to the middles aged barmaid after she had come over to serve him, “And something to eat.”

“I'll be over to take your order in a moment,” she said as she poured the drink, “The kitchen's not long opened so it won't be for ten minutes or so.”

“Sure, no hurry,” and went back and took a seat.

“Nice here,” the voice said after he had sat down.
 “Yes not bad.” Mad Dog said aloud
 “Now you don't want people thinking you are mad.”
 “Sorry, I forgot.”
 “All those days in the wilderness, you'll soon get used to just thinking it.”
 After five minutes the woman came over with the menu, “So what will it be sir?”
 “Steak please.”
 “How would you like it?”
 “Rare.”
 “One bloody steak,” she said writing it down.
 “I dare you to ask for some f##### chips,” the voice said with a laugh.
 “Behave,” Mad Dog said aloud.
 “Excuse me,” the woman said looking at him in a strange manner.
 “Oh nothing, I was talking to myself.”
 “And what would you like with your steak sir,” the woman said, her tone altering slightly
 “Chips please.”
 “Chicken,” the voice said.
 “No steak,” Mad Dog thought.
 The woman took his order and went off to the kitchen. After she left the voice said, “See what I mean about talking aloud.”
 “Yes.”
 “There you go again. You'll have to get used to just thinking instead of speaking.”
 “Fair enough,” Mad Dog thought. The woman returned not long after and gave him his meal.
 Mad Dog paid her and took it outside to get some Sun.
 “See don't I look after you. Pheasant, steak and chips, you live like a king.”
 “True, I don't seem to want for anything.”
 “Well heaven helps them that help their self. Fortitude next then.”
 “But it's my dinner time,” Mad Dog thought as an elderly couple had come out and he did not want them to think he was mad as well.
 “Just joking we've already covered that. In fact all the virtue side is done now.”
 “Good, is there much more to do on the Self side of things?”
 “Not really, we've covered a lot of ground and very quickly. You can take it easy for a while. Save your strength for what you've got to do tonight.”
 “Sounds good to me.”
 “Oh yes you'll have a lot to think about.”
 “Well it's got to be done, and then onto the reinterpretation side of things.”
 “Yes you'll like that, “and on seeing Mad Dog had finished his meal, “So are we ready for off then?”
 “Well I suppose so. I was going to let the food sink in first.”
 “I don't mean go back yet. Have a look around the village and think of it as a day out.”
 “Sure,” Mad Dog said getting up, “That sounds like a good idea to me, where do you want to go first?”
 “Take a look around the church I find them very peaceful places.”
 Mad Dog took a walk around the church and they spent the rest of the day looking around the village. It was quite a quaint place with a few thatched cottages and a monument in the village square. Time marched on though and the voice said, “We had better be getting back before night fall as you will have a job finding the caravan.”
 “Fair enough, so I won't be sleeping in the shed tonight?”
 “No so enjoy it while you can.”

As they walked back through the forest the voice said, "If it's any help I think that the thought chain ran along the lines of Egyptian Mythology."

"Sorry?"

"To unlock your negative imagination, that's the consensus of opinion anyway."

"Well that's me out then as I don't know the first thing about it."

"You'll be guided. It will be in your sub conscious anyway, the underworld as they used to call it."

"Right, so how does that actually fit in with the Egyptians?"

"Certain passwords open up different parts of the subconscious. If you know the pass words you will be guided through. That's symbolic of the knowledge being the key."

"Okay I'll try and bare that in mind though as I said I don't know anything about it."

"You'll soon learn," the voice said with a laugh, "Don't worry about it and you'll be alright."

"Thanks."

They walked some more and just as it was turning dusk arrived back at the caravan.

"Do you want to check the post and see if you have any letters," the voice said.

"Sorry?"

"Check the snares and see if you'll be eating tomorrow," the voice said with a laugh.

"Oh," Mad Dog said and checking the snares found two rabbits.

"Well the food side is sorted for tomorrow that's one less problem. Good luck and I'll see you in the morning."

Mad Dog went inside and said his prayers. He could not sleep at first as his mind was restless. It seemed to travel all over the place uncovering thoughts he did not know he had. Then all of a sudden it just happened. It was like he had a body inside him the shape of his and it shook slightly which made him stop thinking and then it disappeared. The shock to his system was quite frightening to say the least as he thought he was going to be next. After a few moments he regained his composure though it was quite a while before he managed to drop off.

Chapter 16

Mad Dog found himself back on the mountains with the man and his book. "That was strange," He said, "Quite frightening as well."

"I'll bet. There are definitely more things going on in your mind than you are aware of."

"Yes you're telling me. Is there anything else like that likely to occur?"

"I'll afraid it's a case of wait and see but don't worry we'll guide you through it."

"Well that's a weight of my mind. It's getting that I don't know what to expect next."

"Well we'll try and enlighten you," the man said and opened the book. "So from being blessed with spiritual understanding (life of God through God's purpose) you get through self of God (blessed seeing spiritual wisdom), work through transformation to God's knowing (God's transformation-self through), through God's purpose life blesses self understanding God's life (life blessed with spiritual understanding), life of God transformed to loving life of God's spirit (life of God's understanding), understanding God spirit of God transforms to God's knowing, wisdom through life of God (blessed through wisdom, loving knowing), light of God's spiritual word blesses spiritual understanding and works through transformation through life of God's spirit."

"So from spiritual understanding of spiritual wisdom you get light for your Self, you understand God and are transformed to God's knowing through serving God's purpose and this is your self's life."

"Very good, excellent in fact it sums itself up really. Let it sink in for a while though. So I hear you had a meal today."

"Yes, we went down to one of the local villages and had a look around the place."

"It's nice to get out and about. You've been like a hermit of late."

"True. Mind you I need time alone to get through all this I suppose."

"Well it does have its advantages but I guess it's a case of take a touch but not too much as it becomes a thing."

Mad Dog laughed and said, "I know what you mean but I'm getting through this quickly though so I can't complain."

"Well this transformation can be a little dangerous if you take it too quickly you know."

"Sorry?"

"Yes it has to be done at a certain pace as the evolution has to work quite slowly."

"You mean this is the actual transformation I thought that it was done by service."

"Well not all of it. Haven't you noticed that your understanding is growing fairly rapidly?"

"Yes, but I was expecting something err I don't know a little more physical."

"No it's a mental one. The mergence has already happened we're just expanding it so it can grow."

"Oh I never realised so what would happen if we went too quickly then?"

"Pain, bad head aches, that sort of thing. It can be dangerous if you try and cram it all in one go. Anyway how's your spirit of purpose by the way?"

"Well the idea of being a Teacher is starting to appeal to me a bit more. I'll have to develop my sense of humour a bit more by the sound of it though."

"You used to have a good sense of humour. You took a lot of knocks recently so that would sap it quite a lot."

"Don't I know it," Mad Dog said with a laugh.

"It will come back in time so I wouldn't worry about it. So are you ready for some more?"

"Sure I don't suppose there's much more to do."

"Should be done by tomorrow if the day shift hasn't much on."

"Well he said we'd about covered most of the topics."

"For that level when you go to the next stage there probably are a few more things to get through."

“So in theory I could probably be starting the reinterpretation tomorrow night.”

“Maybe,” the man said with a laugh, “You’ll be going from your 'O' level to your 'A' level.”

“Well I’m covering it pretty well so I’m not complaining.”

“Good, you should find it pretty easy as your understanding has increased. It’s more for your spirit of discernment.”

“Alright I could definitely do with some of that. I’m a bit naïve at times.”

“You’ve just got a good heart that’s all. So anyway from being blessed by God’s will (seeing self) and God’s purpose through God’s spirit you get knowing through loving self through light, understanding blesses life through seeing light, God’s purpose through love (blessed), blessed with loving transformation to God’s spirit, blessed with understanding (understanding God’s spiritual will) God’s knowing, a mind and self of love (God’s purpose’s loving light) and transformation blessed with light of God’s spirit.

From being blessed by God’s will and a self blessed with God’s spiritual purpose (God’s spirit) you get transformed to God’s light and the light of God’s spiritual word, you also get the wisdom of God (God’s purpose) blessed.

From being blessed by God’s will and a mind blessed with God’s purpose (the word of God’s spirit) you get a will of God transformed and God’s spiritual understanding through knowing.

From being blessed by God’s will and knowing God’s spiritual will through God’s purpose you get blessed seeing understanding through the spiritual word and a self through light (blessed by God’s life blessing light).”

“Through being blessed by God’s will and spiritual purpose you get a self of knowing, you understand life and are transformed to a mind and self of love. Through being blessed by God’s will and a Self blessed with the Holy Spirit you are transformed to God’s light.

Through being blessed by God’s will and a mind of God’s purpose you get a will of God and blessed with God’s spiritual understanding. From being blessed by God’s will and knowing God’s spiritual will through serving God’s purpose you are blessed with understanding through the spiritual word and have a self of light.”

“You did very well so it’s just Jacob’s grandchildren and that will be it for Genesis. That will be the day shift though as it’s time to wake up.”

Mad Dog woke up. He said his prayers and took a walk outside

“Right,” The voice said, “How did you get on last night then, did you remember the thought chain?”

“No, you were right it was quite a shock to the system. In fact I thought I was going to be next.”

“Frightening eh,” the voice said with a laugh, “Never mind it’s all done and dusted now.”

“True.”

“And Genesis, how did you get on with that?”

“As far as Jacob’s grandchildren so if you have nothing else on the agenda for today we might even get it finished.”

“Well there are a couple of things but they should not take too long, maybe then.”

“Oh sound. What’s the first thing then? More self development?”

“No reality, what do you know about it?”

“Well you said that this was just a dream so I’m not sure.”

“Yes true,” the voice said before laughing and saying, “Mind you, you have woken up now so it’s a dream no longer. So what is it then animal, vegetable or mineral?”

“It’s what you see, what you touch I suppose, all this around us.”

“No definition then?”

“I wouldn’t really know how to equate it it’s just what’s around me.”

“What about this then a state of mind built on imagination.”

“Yes if you say so I can go for that.”

“Right, so what does it actually mean then now that you have gone for it?”

“Well a state of mind would be perceptions of reality as opposed to reality true and the other part built on imagination would reinforce the first.”

“That’s one level but there are one or two to go. For instance a state of mind would be as you said and built on imagination by the fact everything had to be imagined before you could create it.”

“Sorry, in what sense?”

“Well take the television it had to be imagined before it was invented didn't it?”

“Yes true, somebody had to come up with the idea I suppose. What about things that aren't man made though. Natural things like, I don't know trees.”

“They had to be imagined first then? I mean they didn't just appear now did they?”

“Well they evolved didn't they?”

“The idea still had to be in place. It had to be imagined first.”

“Well I suppose so. So what imagined it then?”

“The Creative Force, the spirit of love, this is its imagination.”

“Oh so you could actually say that this is a dream then.”

“Yes, now on another level a state of mind would be the level of understanding and built on imagination in that sense would be the recreation by the Holy Spirit.”

“Yes I can see that, you grow in understanding through it.”

“Right so there's reality in a nutshell. Just fate but before we go onto that it might be a good idea to collect some wood for the next fellow and cook yourself one of the rabbits. I would leave him one as well so he's got something to eat. It will make for a bit of a thank you.”

Mad Dog collected some wood and left a pile by the caravan. He made himself another fire and as the rabbit was cooking the voice said, “So fate well the first part we are concerned with is actions that come about through transgressions of Spiritual Laws.”

“Sort of what you sow so shall you reap.”

“Well that's on one level. Another would be the actions of one lifetime going through to the next.”

“What like what goes around comes around kind of thing.”

“Yes so that's one aspect of fate then. Now another would be situations put up so you might grow.”

“Sort of like the tests I had to go through.”

“Yes that's right. Now to understand fate is to understand the work of God. You will see His work everywhere if you look deeper into things.”

“What about the actions of man's free will then how does that equate?”

“God can not interfere with man's free will. Take your Christmas present as an example. You had the choice and picked the book, it was in your hands.”

“And what about if I hadn't?”

“We wouldn't be having this conversation now.”

“And what about plane crashes and things like that, are they tests?”

“No, they are usually the actions of man's free will.”

“What, do you mean pilot error?”

“Could be or bad design, lack of servicing, antiquated stock, putting profit before lives.”

“Oh, yes I suppose if you look deeper into those situations something like that crops up.”

“That’s about it for fate really. Lead a good life and understand the big picture and fate generally work for you. Things that seem bad at the time generally when you look back and see that they were part of the big plan lose their effect on you.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said and on seeing that the rabbit had cooked ate it. After he had finished the voice said, “So are you ready for the last of Genesis. It's quite a long passage but with your understanding most of it should be self explanatory.”

“Sure.”

“ From knowing through loving self (through light) you get the spirit of God's light seeing spiritual will, the spiritual word of God (God's purpose)blessed with light, the spirit through mind of knowing(seeing light)and a will of God knowing life is blessed.

From understanding blessing life through seeing light you get blessed by God's life of love through God's purpose, blessed with God's life blessing light(seeing the spirit of God's transformation), blessed with God's spiritual will(blessing life) the mind sees spirit of God's knowing and spiritual understanding of God's love(God's purpose).

From God's purpose through love blessed you get a will through knowing (spiritual understanding seeing light), work sees the spirit of God's spiritual wisdom and a life through knowing (God's knowing blessed).

From being blessed with loving transformation you get through knowing seeing light, God's light, spiritual understanding through God's purpose (God's spirit), the spiritual word of God's knowing through mind (from which you get the spirit and mind of knowing seeing light and the spirit of God's life (God's loving purpose))and a mind of God knowing God's spirit.

From blessed understanding you get wisdom seeing God's purpose, God's spiritual word of love, loving God's spirit blessed seeing self and spiritual understanding blesses life (knowing seeing light)

From a mind and self of love you get understanding and knowing through transformation and through God's purpose seeing light blessed with spirit of God's purpose and through God's purpose.

From a will of God transformed you get a mind blessed with the spiritual word(blessed seeing light), the spirit of God's will(will blessed), spiritual understanding of love(light blessed)and through the mind self sees light through knowing blessed with God's knowing(seeing transformation blessed)and God's knowing through God's purpose blessed.

From God's spiritual understanding through knowing you get blessed with blessed life (light of God's spirit), blessed with spiritual understanding (love of God's spirit), blessed with understanding (love blessed), a self through knowing (blessed by God's spirit) (from which you get a spirit and self through knowing and a life of God's (God's purpose) spiritual will blessed through God's purpose) and understanding through knowing God's spirit.

From a self through light blessing God's light you get a self through God's purpose (God's spirit), a self through spiritual will and knowing God's spiritual understanding (self through God's purpose) will through knowing God, light of God, life of God, God's light (through spirit blessed with knowing seeing spiritual understanding), the living loving word (the word blessed with light), the spiritual loving word (the word blessed with life) and God's knowing transformation.

From the transformation of God's light you get spiritual love (spiritual understanding blesses life).

From the light of God's spiritual word you get blessed with God's spiritual mind and through God's purpose a will of love(light blessed), blessed through mind(through knowing)and spiritual understanding blesses God's purpose(God's purpose through life)”

“From knowing, God's light sees spiritual will through the spiritual word and you get a will of God and know that life is blessed. From understanding and serving God's purpose you get a life of love, the spirit of knowing and the Holy Spirit. From God's purpose and spiritual understanding you get a will of knowing through the spirit of God's spiritual wisdom. From being blessed by the Holy Spirit you get the spirits of knowing, life and understanding and a mind of God. From blessed understanding your self gets God's spirit of love and you get spiritual understanding. From a will of God your mind is blessed by the spiritual word and you understand love in the spiritual sense for you become God's spiritual will. From God's

spiritual understanding you get a spirit and self through knowing and a life of God's spiritual will. From a self of light you are blessed with God's purpose, spiritual will and understanding and the transformation of the loving word. From the transformation of light you get spiritual love and from God's spiritual word you get a spiritual mind through God's purpose and a will of love and understanding."

"Very good, so we are about finished here. Leave the knife and the rest of the matches and we'll get off. There's a little surprise in the new place just waiting for you."

"Really," Mad Dog said getting up, "So what is it then?"

"Now patience look at it logically it would not be a surprise if I told you."

"True," Mad Dog said walking briskly, "So what is it, more money?"

"You're wasting your time, wait and see."

"You haven't found me a stray woman have you?"

"Behave; you want to get out a little bit more you're turning into a right saddo."

"Just asking."

"You'll find out when we get there and not before so don't waste your breath."

"You're enjoying this aren't you?"

"Just think of it as a little reward to acknowledge the progress you have made."

"What, so it might be valuable then?"

"It's invaluable. Anyway what's this obsession with material things? I thought that you had turned your back on all that when you took the path."

"Yes I did but I like presents. I didn't get many when I was a kid."

"Well we're here now so you waiting is almost at an end."

"Great," Mad Dog said and rushed in. he looked around the place but found nothing that was of any interest to him, "Where is it then, has it been hidden away?"

"No, it's over in the far corner."

"What behind that broken mirror," Mad Dog said going over to it.

"It is the mirror."

"What," Mad Dog said in disgust, "Is this some sort of joke? I know you like a joke but isn't this taking it a bit far?"

"Well you've looked within so now its time to look at the shell."

"Yeah right."

"No, go over and pick it up."

"What's the point I know what I look like bleeding waste of time, present indeed." He picked it up anyway and looked at his reflection.

"What a state to let yourself get into," the voice said, "You should be ashamed of yourself I've seen better dressed scarecrows."

"Don't start; I'm not in the mood for you today."

"And that smell water doesn't burn you know. You want to try it some day. I've heard it said that if you want to hide anything from you, you just have to put it underneath a bar of soap."

"Funny, very funny. I wish I had thought of that I would have kept my mouth shut."

"No but seriously you want to take more care of yourself."

"Yes I know but there's not a lot I can do about it just yet."

"Well we'll have to speed up the next stage I suppose. I mean after all I have to put up with the smell as well you know."

"It will give you a bit of an incentive then." Mad Dog said with a laugh.

"Well get settled in anyway it will soon be nightfall."

Mad Dog prepared the place the best way that he could and said his prayers before retiring. Ironic really, not long after he had been re awakened he went to sleep.

Re-interpretation

Mad Dog found himself in the middle of an amphitheatre face to face with the old man, "Reality," the man said, "What does it mean to you?"

"A state of mind built on imagination," Mad Dog said mentally congratulating himself for remembering.

"No, not the definition, what does reality actually mean to you."

"Me?" Mad Dog said confused, "In what sense?"

"Look around you, what do you see? Death? Destruction? Mutilation?"

"No it's empty."

"Look again." and with the scene changed. He found himself back in time surrounded by ragged men and women being jeered at by a baying crowd. He heard a roar and much to his horror saw a lion circling around them. The serenity of the people around him seemed to add to his fear as it went against all his sense of reality. Another lion appeared and then another and then it happened. One at a time the people around him fell and closer and closer death got towards him. His heart beat quicker and the sweat poured down his back. He wanted to run but there was no way out. Nowhere to hide, no chance of escape he just stood there contemplating his demise.

"Perceptions of reality," the man said bringing him back from his torment, "One man's meat is another man's poison."

"So what was all that about?" Mad Dog said his shaking subsiding as he calmed down.

"Perceptions of reality," the man said again, "I can understand why people might die for their belief but why should anyone want to kill for their belief?"

"Err, I don't know," Mad Dog said forgetting the scene for the moment, "Misguided perhaps?"

"In a big way so what is your reality? What is your faith if you like?"

"Well after what I've just been through I don't know," Mad Dog admitted, "I'm going to have to re evaluate it."

"I wouldn't be in to much of a hurry," the man said with a laugh, "You ain't seen nothing yet."

"Oh the re-interpretation, that's what all this is about isn't it?"

"You've got it, civilisation as you know it was built on misconceptions and misguided preconceptions."

"Right I sort of gathered that when I saw the revised edition of Genesis."

"Not just Christian based society all modern societies has over rationalised their part of the word out of ignorance of the divine. Tell me Mad Dog, there is only one path so why isn't there only one religion?"

"I don't know, misconceptions?"

"Got it, now when did these misconceptions begin?"

"I guess they must have been quite a long time ago judging by the age of Genesis."

"A very long time ago. In the next stage of your development I'm going to take you on a journey of discovery. One that will kick senseless your sense of reality and make it so you don't even know what day of the week it is."

"Err," Mad Dog said sheepishly, "I'm afraid that's true already. I've lost track of time altogether since I came into the forest."

"Well that's a good start already," the man said with a laugh, "Well first of all we had better try and find out what holds society together. Have you any thoughts in that direction?"

"I suppose, well up to recently it was a belief in God or Gods of some sort."

"Up till recently?"

“Well yes. Nowadays there seems to be quite a shift in favour of a more humanist type of society. One that says that man does not need a God to uphold a set of moral values and take care of his fellow man.”

“Really, and this works?”

“No, not really it seems to me that society has fallen to decadence through lack of direction.”

“How?”

“The family unit has lost its place as the cornerstone. The underclass is heavily into hard drugs and crime rates are up because of it. People are talking about personal liberty as the be all and end all without any regard to responsibility.”

“Oh, here we go again.”

“What, has this happened before?”

“Oh yes the cycle of life has turned full circle. Man has stepped off the path once again.

Virtually every civilisation falls at its base first.”

“Really. I've heard that about the Romans but I didn't know about the others.”

“Oh there have been quite a few. If civilisation cannot evolve in equality then you'll get internal strife, discord and lack of direction for a major part of it. In fact I would go so far as to say that civilisation without equality is a misnomer but that's getting us well of the point. So man had found the God in himself again,” and laughed.

“Sorry?”

“Oh don't mind me. So anyway where do these new perceptions come from if they are not based on Christianity?”

“I don't know Greek I guess, science that sort of thing.”

“Greek,” the man said roaring with laughter, “Well talk about the blind leading the blind.”

“What, I thought that it was supposed to be a highly developed civilised culture.”

“Really,” the man said still laughing, “And however did you reach that conclusion?”

“Well that's what they say. You are held in very high esteem if you have a classical education I can tell you. It's supposed to be the mark of a gentleman.”

“Not really a gauge though is it. I mean what is a gentleman anyway?”

“I don't know someone who understands the finer things in life I suppose.”

“Like Greek literature. No originally a gentleman was somebody who could live of his estate, a man of independent means.”

“Oh right.”

“Or taking it down a level somebody who lived of others sweat.”

“Yes I suppose so I can see the logic in that.”

“Well you're not self deluded.” the man said with a laugh, “I mean to them that was actually something to be proud of. All that spare time and a restless mind led them to dream up the concept of etiquette and chivalry to their fellow man, well gentleman that is.”

“And Greek literature, what's wrong with it?”

“Do you know much about it?”

“No, nothing really.”

“Well my son,” The man said laughing, “I will give you a classical education then.”

“Err, sure.”

“From Chaos and Nox which is night came Erubus which is darkness who paired with Nox and from this pairing came Aether or light and Hemera, day from the union of these two came Eros which is love. Now from Eros came Gaea, earth and Pontus, sea. Are you with me so far?”

“Yes, well I think so anyway.”

“Good, well forget it we'll start again. From the spiritual will of God seeing understanding and light seeing insight you get through knowing love, a self of loving understanding which paired with light seeing insight gives you God through spiritual wisdom (through knowing)

and the spirit and life through knowing God. The mergence of these two gives you (through) knowing seeing understanding from which you get a will of God (through God) and the word sees light (wisdom),(loving understanding).”

“Really that’s amazing. I would have never thought that.”

“Yes there is more to reality than meets the eye.”

“You’re telling me.”

“I know,” the man said with a laugh, “I’ve just heard myself. So you want some more then?”

“Yes, sure.”

“Well Gaea merged with Uranus and from the union came Saturn, Rhea, Coeus, Pheobe, Japetus, Oceanus, Tethys and Cronus or in other words. From a will of God (through God) and loving knowing of God's light (loving understanding) you get understanding God's wisdom (love knows light) spiritual knowing through God, the will sees (through loving understanding) the spiritual word (through seeing self through) and blessed by God's word (through wisdom) loving understanding sees will through God's light, love understands wisdom through spiritual wisdom blessing understanding and a will of knowing seeing light (loving understanding). You know that your next step will be to put it into poetry so you can say that you are well versed in it.”

“What really?”

“No I'm only joking. Right so Saturn and Rhea got it together and from the union came Zeus, Demeter, Hera, Hades, Poseidon and Hestia and Zeus went on to have Athene or From Understanding God's wisdom(love knows light) and spiritual knowing through God you get a mind through loving understanding transformed through life and wisdom(through knowing), the spirit through knowing God, the spirit of God transformed through understanding, the word seeing understanding through blessed transformation seeing light and the spirit through understanding wisdom blessed by God.

From a mind through loving understanding you get God's spiritual wisdom and light through. Anyway Coeus and Pheobe got together and had Leto, I'll let you do that one to stop you getting bored.”

“Okay from the will seeing through loving understanding and the spiritual word (through seeing self through) you get God's purpose through wisdom seen.”

“Good we can't have you falling asleep especially not in a dream.”

“Really why what would happen?”

“You’d wake up,” the man said with a laugh, “Anyway Japetus went on to have Epimetheus who had Dione, Prometheus and Atlas who had Maia. From being blessed by God's word through wisdom, (loving understanding) you get through the word, a blessed life through spiritual wisdom and loving understanding which gives you a transformation (blessed seeing light) through the word (knowing seeing life) through spiritual wisdom and loving understanding, and God, God's purpose (the wisdom of God's understanding) from which you get a life of God blessed by God. I'm sorry if you start to find it a bit boring but it's got to be done.”

“Well it does seem to drag on but they're virtually self explanatory.”

“If it's any consolation we won't be going too deeply into the other Mythologies.”

“The others, what others are we doing?”

“Well there's Norse, Celtic, Egyptian and a few others beside.”

“It’s going to be a long stage then. The other fellows going to be pleased he's starting to complain about the smell already.”

“He’s only winding you up. You are in control of the senses. He can't smell a thing.”

“He’s a right one,” Mad Dog said shaking his head.

“He’s only got your interests at heart,” the man said with a laugh, so from Oceanus and Tethys you get Inachus, Oceanids, Clymene and Doris who married to Nereus gives

Nereides. Or from seeing will through God's light(loving understanding)and wisdom through spiritual wisdom blessed with understanding you get the blessed light of God's spiritual will, loving understanding sees will through God's light(blessed transformation), an understanding will of God's purpose blesses life and light through transformation seeing knowing(blessed with understanding)which married to light and knowing through loving understanding gives you light through knowing and the blessed transformation through understanding.

Then Cronus and Rhea got together and had Neptune and Amphitrite who themselves got together and had Proteus, Triton, Galatea and Thetis who had Achilles.”

“Some families they were and I was on about the family unit falling in to decay now.”

“ Yes right,” the man said with a laugh, “ So from a will of knowing seeing light(loving understanding)and spiritual knowing through God you get light through the word (wisdom), loving light through God's life, and the spiritual word blessed with wisdom (knowing blesses wisdom through)from which you get the word (known seeing wisdom) through loving understanding, wisdom knowing blessed wisdom seeing light, a will of God (God's purpose), God's wisdom through God and spiritual wisdom through wisdom blessed with understanding which gives you God's spiritual will blessed with God's purpose(God's purpose through understanding). I'll let you do the next one.”

“Sure.”

“Gaea and Pontus got together and had Nereus, Thamus, Pharcys and Ceto.”

“ From a will of God (though God) and the word seeing light (wisdom)(loving understanding) you get light and knowing through loving understanding, spiritual wisdom, God's life, loving understanding of the spiritual word, God's knowing will blessed with understanding and a will through wisdom seen.”

“Good so here's another as you're on a roll from Thamus you get Iris and Harpies.”

“From the spiritual wisdom of God's life (loving understanding) you get blessed with knowing blessed understanding and the spirit of God knowing the word (blessed through understanding).”

“Good one more and then it's just Zeus relationships then.”

“Oh right,” Mad Dog said picking up, “Not long then.”

“No not long,” The man said with a laugh that preyed on Mad Dog's mind, “So from Pharcys and Ceto you get Gorgons, Sirens and Scylla or from (spiritual word) God’s knowing will blessed with understanding and a will through wisdom seen, the will sees a knowing will seeing light understood (understanding blessed with knowing through light understood) and you also get an understanding will (blessed with God's purpose), God's purpose and God.”

“Right so on to Zeus I guess.”

“Well you are keen. Zeus married Hera and from them came Hebe, Ares and Hephaestos or from a mind through loving understanding married to the spirit through knowing God you get the spirit and self through God's knowing (through understanding) and the spirit through the spiritual word of God through understanding wisdom (seeing understanding). Well Zeus was a bit of a ladies man and had an affair with Leto from which came Apollo and Artemis or from a mind through loving understanding and God's purpose through wisdom seen you get God's word seeing God's purpose, and God's purpose seeing God's knowing wisdom through a life blessed with understanding. He also had an affair with Dione and from it came Aphrodite so from a mind through loving understanding and transformation blessed seeing light through you get God's spiritual word known seeing transformation blessing wisdom through. He also had Maia and from this came Hermes or from a mind through loving understanding and a life of God blessed by God you get the spirit through knowing life through understanding. Anyway he also had an affair with Semele and from this came Dionysus or from a mind through loving understanding and understanding through life and God's purpose through you get the transformation blessed seeing light(blessed with

understanding loving understanding). He also went with Themis and from his union came Horae, Parcoe and Astra or from a mind though loving understanding and spiritual wisdom through a life blessed with understanding you get the spirit seeing knowing(God through the word), God's knowing will seen though God (understanding wisdom) knowing God.”

“It’s just lucky they did not have the C.S.A. in those days,” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“ Yes,” the man said laughing, “So another one he got with was Mnemosyne and from these came the muses Clio(history) Euterpe(lyric poetry), Thaleia(comedy and Idyllic) Melpomene(tragedy), Terpsichore (choral dance and song) Erato(erotic poetry and mimicry) Polymnia (sublime hymnal) Urania (astronomy) and Calliope(epic poetry) or from a mind through loving understanding and a life of light through life seeing understanding(blessing light through) you get a will of God's purpose (blessed seeing) through loving wisdom through knowing the word (through spiritual wisdom), God, God's purpose and blessed by God's life through God's purpose the word sees life through light and wisdom through knowing the word, understanding blesses spiritual will (seeing knowing) and through knowing God's wisdom seeing the word(seeing God's purpose) blessing life, light blessed by God's loving knowing (God's light blessed by God) and will of God (God’s purpose), God’s purpose blessed seeing the word through.”

“I see what you mean about being well versed.”

“Very a musing,” the man said with a laugh, “So Zeus and Alceme got together and had Heracles or through a mind though loving understanding and God's (God's purpose) will (life and light through) you get the spirit through knowing God's will, (God's purpose through understanding). He also got with Demeter and had Prosperpina or from a mind through loving understanding and transformation and life through wisdom (through knowing) you get the word known seeing understanding and the word through knowing the word blessed by the light of God. Finally he got with Eurynome and had the graces Aglaia, Thalia and Euphrosyne or from a mind through loving understanding and through loving knowing blessing light (seeing life through) you get God's will (God's purpose) (God blessed by God), the spiritual wisdom of God (God's purpose blessed by God) and through love the spiritual word knows seeing understanding blessing light through.”

“And the Greeks never knew what it was all about then?”

“Well the people never, they worshipped the phrases as gods.”

“What about the priests though I've heard that they had secret rites?”

“Mainly rituals, they did not know the true significance of what they had. They couldn't have done really.”

“They couldn't?”

“They would have been out spreading the word instead of hiding it under a bushel. I mean at the end of the day that's how you grow.” the man seemed to grow slightly younger and Mad Dog said, “What happened there?”

“I’m imparting the wisdom of the ages, it has that effect.”

“That doesn't mean I'll be growing older does it?”

“Mentally maybe as it will help you grow but I wouldn't worry about physically as it doesn't work like that.”

“Oh right,” Mad Dog said with a sigh of relief, “So that's Greek then.”

“Well its essence, in much the same was as the genealogies are the essence of Genesis. You still have the metaphysical level; you know Spirit and Soul and how to get the mergence.”

“Sort of flesh on the bones then.”

“You could say that, not quite as deep as the genealogies but deeper than first perception.”

“And do you think that the priests had that level?”

“Not fully though I bet that a few of the adepts got pretty close in their search for immortality.”

“Yes from the little bit I know that did seem to be a constant theme.”

“Yes the pursuit of infinite wisdom, the Elixir of Life. It certainly took up a lot of their higher thought.”

“They did seem to dwell on it. Mind you all cultures seem to have a belief in the afterlife.”

“The quest for the unknown, though from what you have been telling me it seems they've given up.”

“Sorry?”

“In life after death as that usually goes hand in hand with a belief in God.”

“A lot of people have. They believe that when you die that's it”

“Tragic, oh well each to his own. I mean it's their free will at the end of the day.”

“True.”

“Good I'm glad you said that. If people aren't ready to hear you are just wasting your time. You are not here to change views as such but to evolve and enhance them.”

“I'm not sure about that as from what you have told me a lot of people will have to.”

“I was talking about a belief in God as opposed to what form the belief is. That's not a change in views that's an evolution of views.”

“And those that don't believe at all?”

“Their free will, if they want to turn their back on their self that's something they'll have to put up with. Don't get me wrong it grieves me to see a blind man but if he wants to poke his eyes out there is nothing I can do about it.”

“I suppose.”

“When Jesus talked about tending the flock he was talking about the sheep not the goats. If they want to act the goat it's up to them,” and laughed, “No your concern is the seed that fell on fertile land, it gives a lot better return.”

“I'll bare that in mind. You surprised me saying that though as I always thought about the repentant sinner and the joy that it brings.”

“Well true but it's his free will as to whether he repents or not. He has to come to the Lord himself and of his own choice.”

“I can see that. So at the end of the day I would be just wasting my time.”

“You'd probably do him more harm than good as no one wants to be preached to.”

“So how will that harm him?” Mad Dog said confused.

“He'll just switch off. You'll not only be wasting your time you might actually drive him further from the light.”

“Yes I suppose so. I remember that I used to hide when ever the Jehovah's Witnesses came to the door.”

“You probably thought that they were T.V. License detectors,” the man said with a laugh,

“Anyway you covered a lot of ground and did very well. It should get easier now as all the messages are pretty similar. I had to do the first one like that just to prove it to you.”

“Fair enough so what's next on the agenda?”

“Day shift I'm afraid that you've just ran out of time so I'll see you later.”

With that Mad Dog woke up.

Chapter 2

Mad Dog woke up and said his prayers. He got up and took a fresh new look around his home.

“So how did you get on?” the voice said.

“Not bad, we did Greek Mythology; it was pretty hard going for a while.”

“Well it’s finished now. Any thoughts on reality now you are seeing it in a new light?”

“Just confused ones.”

“Stick around. Just wait till we really open it up.”

“Yes I can imagine.”

“Then you are half way there for without it you'll just be wasting you time.”

“So what's next on the agenda?”

“Something close to your heart but first we'll see what the new place has to offer.”

Mad Dog searched around the place but found nothing that he thought would come in handy,

“ I should have took that knife and some matches. How am I going to make a meal now?”

“Don’t worry it will all be taken care of. Well it looks like you are walking again.”

“Where to, there are no shops around here and besides unless you intend to find me some more money it's a bit pointless.”

“How much of that tenner have you got left?”

Mad Dog checked his pockets and said, “A couple of quid and some shrapnel.”

“That’s plenty. I don't know why you are complaining.”

“I could get some matches I suppose. That's about it though I could not afford a knife.”

“All you need is a lottery ticket. They sell scratch cards in that village we went the other day don't they?”

“Yes sure, can you do that then?”

“Wait and see. You'll not win anything just standing around though.”

“Fair enough,” Mad Dog said and headed off on his way, “So what's this subject close to my heart then?”

“Celtic Mythology.”

“What, I don't know anything about it.”

“That’s what I'm here for. So what actually, well sorry how little you do actually know about it?”

“Err, a leprechaun?”

“What seriously is that all?”

“Well we didn't do anything like it at school.”

“That’s no excuse, I'm surprised at you. What ever happened to your yearning for learning?”

“Well I've got it now so you tell me.”

“Alright, so for the purpose of this conversation think of me as a leprechaun.”

“You, how do you work that one out?”

“God’s purpose through the word known through spiritual will (God’s loving light). You just decode the letters, easy really.”

“I thought it was just a folk tale. If you catch one you'll get his pot full of gold. I wouldn't have even said it was real Mythology in the true sense of the word.”

“Well you've caught me so now you've got your pot of gold, which is?”

“ Immortality?”

“Spiritual gold God with his purpose inside now incidentally there is a pot of gold at the end of every rainbow too, any thoughts in that direction?”

“Well the rainbow is symbolic of balance after the cleansing.”

“Good, now I used to be known as Fir Dhearg which means the word (blessed with knowing) transforms the spirit through God's knowing wisdom and I was well renowned as a bit of a trickster.”

“I thought you might have been. Anyway what do you mean I smell? How do you know the other man said you have no sense of smell?”

“Well let's be honest,” the voice said with a laugh, “It hardly takes a genius to work out that you would, looking like that.”

“I suppose not,” Mad Dog said relenting, “Mind you there is not a lot I can do about it at the moment.”

“We'll see,” the voice said mysteriously, “Anyway the druids taught the existence of one God that was the life of everything and identified it with the Sun. It was called Be'al.”

“Self through God (God's purpose), the spirits of love and knowing, that would be the Collective Conscious.”

“Very good I did not realise that you knew the alphabet.”

“Not really I just picked up a few things along the way.”

“Well good anyway incidentally the Pheonician's worshipped a God call Baal with the same identification, the Sun but that's getting us off the point.”

“True,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “I mean we don't want to make things complicated do we.”

“Alright, alright it's not big and it's not clever and it's not getting us anywhere. Now next thing on the list is a thing called Tir Na Nog.”

“The land of the ever young yes I remember that. I think it was on the T.V, a children's programme.”

“Right, well each to his own I suppose so what does it actually stand for?”

“Err I don't know. I only remember a few of the letters.”

“Wisdom blessed with knowing light of God, light seeing will.”

“Right when your will changes from life to light through wisdom.”

“Good, eternal youth anyway this is just skirting so let's get down to the nitty gritty. The Celts were a highly influential and wide spread people. They believed themselves to be descended from Dis the God of the underworld inhabited by the dead. Dis stands for transformed to blessed understanding.”

“That's astounding, the shift in consciousness.”

“That's right. I thought that would appeal to you. Man God's. They were supposed to have enjoyed an Earthly paradise in perpetual spring with unbroken peace and ever lasting youth and health.”

“So what went wrong?” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“They got bored I guess, lost the message over time even though they did have incredible memories. Their descendants had no fear of death though as they believed in the immortality of the Soul and the only thing they feared was the sky falling down on them.”

“Sorry?”

“Yes it was a common pledge. I swear by the gods that my people swear by that if we observe not this engagement may the sky fall on us and crush us may the earth gape and swallow us up, may the sea burst out and overwhelm us.”

“No, I mean why did they fear the sky falling down on them? Did it actually signify anything?”

“Yes they would be crushed,” the voice said with a laugh.

“Oh, was that it then?”

“No I'm only joking. The descendants probably did not realise the implication of the thing they were saying. It means may they lose their blessing.”

“Does it? You'll have to explain that one to me.”

“Sure, the sky is symbolic of the Physical Spirit to the Earth's Soul. Now bearing in mind that their ancestors were the blessed understanding what would happen if the Physical Spirit came back?”

“You mean I nearly got crushed. I thought it was just trying to push me out.”

“Now I did say that it would try and kill you. How else did you think you would have gone?”

“I never really thought.”

“Well it's done now unless you fall from grace that is because the Spiritual Will, will become the Physical once again.”

“Oh, I'll definitely bear that in mind.”

“Good idea, believe me you would not survive that time.”

“Right,” Mad Dog said changing the subject, “So what deities did they believe in?”

“Well a triad of them called Aesus, Teutates and Taraus but there were others.”

“And do they stand for anything?”

“Yes, Aesus means God through understanding loving understanding, Teutates means wisdom through loving wisdom(God's wisdom through understanding) and Taraus means the wisdom of God knowing God's loving understanding.”

“Right, so what's next then?”

“The God of light, he was called Lugh or Lugus either God's purpose, loving spiritual will or God's purpose, loving will, loving understanding. We'll go into the deities in a bit more detail later as they vary from place to place.”

“Fair enough, so what's next then?”

“Well in the interests of your sanity I thought I would centre it around Irish Mythology though throw in a bit of Welsh and the legends of Arthur. But first we'll get you sorted out,” as they entered into the village, “Nip in that shop and get yourself a lottery ticket.”

Mad Dog entered the shop and asked for a ticket from the elderly man who was behind the counter. “Sure,” he said in a friendly manner, “Now tell me to mind my own business and I don't mean offence but wouldn't you be better off buying food with that.”

Mad Dog was a little stunned at hearing this. “Told you,” the voice said, “You haven't realised how far you've let yourself go. Thank him for his concern and tell him it's your lucky day.”

“I appreciate your advice,” Mad Dog said to the man, “But today's my lucky day.”

“Fair enough,” he said and handed one to Mad Dog. Mad Dog scratched it and found to his delight that he had won £50. “Told you,” he said giving the ticket back.

“Well, well done,” the man said and seemed genuinely happy for him.

“That man's got a good heart,” the voice said, “Offer him a fiver if he will let you have a bath and shave.”

“I was wondering if I could ask a favour,” Mad Dog said sheepishly as he felt foolish for asking.

“Well err sure, there's no harm asking.”

“If I gave you a fiver would you let me have a bath and shave?”

“You're welcome. Go on through to the back. Don't worry about the money though. Angie will show you where it is.”

“Angie?”

“Yes, my wife.”

Mad Dog went through and saw Angie who was a little surprised at first because it was a strange request but nevertheless ran him a bath.

As Mad Dog soaked himself in the water and washed himself the voice said, “See there still are good people around. You just need to know where to look.”

“True,” Mad Dog said aloud.

“It might be a good idea just to think it. These places have thin walls.”

“Sure,” Mad Dog thought, “It seems like ages since I've done this.”

“It is. I'm surprised that you still remember how.”

“Funny. So what will I do with the money?”

“Well it's yours so anything that you would want to do with it.”

“Alright, though what would you recommend I do with it as you are my guide and know what I need.”

“Well said. Right if I were you I would hold onto it awhile as the next stage will only take two of three days at the maximum.”

“I could always get something from the shop if that's the case.”

“Sure but I don't think you'll go hungry today judging by the hospitality of this family.”

“Really so just a couple of days then?”

“Yes, how are your joinery skills by the way are they still well honed?”

“I suppose so, why?”

“Well have you never heard of singing for your supper,” the voice said with a laugh.

“Yes sure, what wants doing?”

“Not much. Back door's sticking and there's a couple of doors come off the kitchen units plus a slipped slate on the roof.”

“Shouldn't take too long then so what happens after I finish stage two?”

“You go onto stage three, Resurrection.”

“Yes I know. What I mean is, is it time to go back or will I still be in the forest.”

“Time to go back but we'll talk about that a bit nearer the time.”

Mad Dog finished his bath and had a shave and looked a lot younger than he did before. As he left the bathroom the man said, “I've got some old clothes that I was going to give to Oxfam, you are most welcome to them.”

“Thanks, er,” and looking at the man, “They might be a little too small for me.”

“Oh no they belonged to my son. He left them when he emigrated to Australia it will save me a trip into town.”

“Well alright. Thanks a lot.”

The man gave Mad Dog a bag full of clothes and he went to the bathroom and got changed. His old clothes were only fit for the bin now so when he went back that was where they went.

“You'll stop for a bite to eat?” Angie said, “It's nearly ready now it won't take too long.”

“Thanks,” Mad Dog said not used to all the hospitality, “I don't want to put you out.”

“No bother, you timed it just right in fact. We usually have our dinner about now.”

The man locked up the shop and they all sat down to eat. Mad Dog had not seen so much food in ages.”

“So what do you do then,” the man said by way of conversation as looking at Mad Dog when he had first come in it looked like he did not do anything.

“Well I'm a joiner by trade. In fact if there is anything that wants doing just let me know as I won't feel so guilty.”

“Now you mention it,” Angie said, “There are a couple of things. I'm afraid Cyril's not too good at that sort of thing with his arthritis now. The back door sticks badly.”

“Sure no problem.”

They finished their meals and went into the kitchen. Mad Dog pulled at the door and it took some opening. “Just wants a bit off. Have you got a plane by any chance?”

“Yes,” Cyril said and went to fetch it.

Mad Dog saw the kitchen units and said, “Do you want me to fix them whilst I'm here?”

“Well if you wouldn't mind?”

“No problem,” Mad Dog said as Cyril returned with the plane. The door was fixed in five minutes and Mad Dog tried it to make sure that it did not stick, “There you go so the kitchen next then.”

They had just slipped off so he got a screw driver and re-fixed them. "Any slates loose whilst I'm here?"

"Well yes," Cyril said giving him a strange look, "There's one around the back of the house actually."

"I must be psychic," Mad Dog said with a laugh, "Have you got a ladder by any chance?"

"Sure, round the back."

They both went out and Mad Dog put the ladder up and soon refitted the slate.

"There you go," he said after he came down, "Anything else want doing?"

"No," Cyril said, "That's the lot thanks. I did not expect you to do that lot."

"Well what you sow so shall you reap," Mad Dog said with a laugh, "Besides it was no trouble as I enjoy doing that sort of thing."

"You saved me a lot of bother, more than just a meal. What do I owe you?"

"Nothing I was just repaying your kindness."

"Yes but I see your circumstances, no offence but you look like you need help."

"Well I won £50. I don't think I did too badly for one day."

"I'll tell you what; let me give you some food to take with you then. I'll feel a lot better about it."

"Er sure I'll not say no to that."

"Good just take a look around the shop and see what you want."

"Thanks," Mad Dog said and did as he was bid. He took a shopping bag full in the end and the man threw in a can opener for good measure. Mad Dog thanked him again and with a bag full of clothes and one of groceries headed back home.

Chapter 3

As they walked back the voice said, "God does indeed move in mysterious ways."

"Well I'm not complaining."

"Yes but you had to give in order to receive. Take that as a good lesson for the future and you'll not be led astray."

"True though having said that it doesn't work every time."

"No I'll admit to that but you'll get it back in other ways so I wouldn't worry about it too much."

"Very true, yes I realise that now."

"You've come along way, so pedants. What are your views on them?"

"I've never really thought about them. Never came in contact with them before."

"But you will. So how would you react when you are trying to explain the intricacies of long division when some divvy is asking you why one and three equals four when two and two also equals four?"

"With patience I hope," Mad Dog said with a laugh.

"Good keep that in mind at all times and you shouldn't go astray."

"Right, looks like its back to Celtic Mythology then or is there something else first?"

"No back on course. Erin now sure isn't that a poetic name. Doesn't it fill your head with flights of fancy?"

"Well er...emmm."

"Well alright then you Heathen, through knowing blessed with light or Ireland if you prefer, blessed with knowing through God's purpose, (God's light transformation). Now the Mythology cycle talks of five immigrations, the first was Parthalan, the second Nemed, then the Firbolgs, the Tuatha De Danaan and finally the Milesians or through knowing blessed with light you get the word of God knowing spiritual wisdom, God, God's purpose, God's light coming in, light and life through transformation coming in, the word blessed with knowing self seeing God's purpose, will of understanding coming in, wisdom, loving God's spiritual wisdom, God transformed through transformation to God's light, God. God's light coming in and a life blessed with God's purpose through understanding blessed with God's light understood coming in."

"Right."

"I won't go into too much detail as it's mainly the gods we are dealing with so I'll just give you a grounding. Parthalan came from a place to the west called Tir Na Mbeo known as the land of the living or the place of eternal life. His people died out though pestilence though one survived to tell the tale although he had to be reincarnated to do it. Then Nemed son of Agnoman took possession but his people all mysteriously died out. The next one over was Semion from whom the Firbolgs were descended and then after that was the Tuatha De Danann who I would like to dwell on a little."

"Sure fair enough I won't argue with that."

"Right," the voice said laughing, "Now the Danaan actually invaded Ireland in the sense there was already people living there where before people had come to an empty land. They wafted in on a magic cloud and first appeared in western Connaught where they fortified their camp at Moyrein. They met the Firbolgs and proposed that the two races should divide the island and join to defend it against all comers in the future. Although they were less well armed than the Danaan the Firbolgs were not impressed and refused the offer. This led to a battle on the plain of Moytura to the south of Co. Mayo near a place now called Cong. The Firbolgs were defeated but were given the province of Connaught as their territory. Now the Danaan originally came from four cities, Falais, from which came Lia Fail or the Stone of Destiny, Gorias from which came the Spear of Lugh, Finias from which came the Sword of Nuanda and Murius from which came the Cauldron of the Dagda. Or from the word of God, God's

purpose (God blessed with understanding) you get God's purpose blessed by God, (the word of God blessed by God's purpose). From the will seeing knowing (blessed with God's understanding) you get God's purpose (a loving spiritual will). From the word blessed with light, (blessed by God's understanding) you get the light of love (God's light transformed by God) and from a life of loving knowing (blessed by loving understanding) you get transformed to God's will (transformation of God). The artefacts are symbolic of the elements the Stone, Earth. The Spear, Fire, the Sword, Water and the Cauldron, Air.

“Oh right the elements of the mind Soul, Imagination, Intellect and Spirit.”

“Good, well with the coming of the Milesians after the final battle the Danaans lost their sovereignty but by the magic art they cast a veil of invisibility over themselves and so lived in Spiritual Ireland as opposed to Earthly Ireland.”

“Sorry?”

“The spiritual realms, over time they got distorted and took up a role more akin to fairies, the people of the sidhe. Well that's timed it right we're home.”

They arrived back and took out all the groceries and had a look at the clothes.

“They're not bad,” Mad Dog said picking up a light blue shirt and checking it, “Not bad at all.”

“Yes you did well there, very well indeed. Clothed and fed, not bad going.”

“True,” Mad Dog said and looking at the food spread on the floor, “I could hold out for a long time.”

“It shouldn't be too long you're well on track.”

“I don't know about that this Celtic Mythology is certainly hard going.”

“Well you've got it easy for a bit. Most of the work is done by me in this stage.”

“Oh right, fair enough. So what's next then?”

“First things first we'll talk about the deities of the Danaan.”

“Sure, the gods that they worshipped you mean?”

“No according to legends they were actually gods themselves.”

“Oh right, I understand.”

“Well first things first we'll talk about the Dagda or Dagda Mor to give him his full name Transformed to God's will (Transformation of God's life seeing knowing). He was the Father and Chief of the People of Dana and a big fellow by all accounts both in size and actions. His name stands for Good God though he went under other names. One was Eochaid Ollathair or through seeing spiritual will God blessed with transformation seeing God's purpose, (God's purpose-God's spiritual wisdom) God blessed with knowing otherwise called the All-Father. His other name was Ruad Rofessa or knowing loving God's transformation knowing sees the word through understanding (understanding God) otherwise called Lord of Great Knowledge. He was the Guardian of the Cauldron from Mirias that satisfied all hunger as it never emptied.”

“And you said that was symbolic of Air so would the contents be wisdom?”

“That's right now the Irish goddess of love is called Boanna and this is where the river Boyne got its name from. From the union of her and the Dagda came Angus Og or from the transformation of God's will (transformation of God) and the self seeing God's light, light of God you get God's light, a will of loving understanding (seeing will). Now Angus was a bit of a heart throb by all accounts but he fell in love with a girl he had seen in a dream and after both his parents searching for her in vain he enlisted the help of Bov the Red King of the Munster Danaans. They found the girl by a lake called the Lake of the Dragon's Mouth and found out her name. It was Caer daughter of a prince of the Danaans of Connaught called Ethal Anubal. Now Angus seeks the help of Ailel and Maev of Connaught but to no avail as they have no jurisdiction over the Prince. They besiege him and take him prisoner after he refuses to give her up. He tells them that he can not comply as she is more powerful than him.

He says that she changes every alternate year into a swan so Angus goes of at the appointed time and she changes him into a swan and they fly off together.”

“Ah, that's a nice little story.”

“Alright so you haven't got a poetic mind you don't know what you're missing. So from God's light, a will of loving understanding and a self seeing love with the aid of God blessed with God's purpose through God's purpose and a life of God through love you get a will of God through knowing that comes through the spiritual wisdom of God(God's purpose), (God's light) and a loving self of God (God's purpose).”

“Amazing, and they put it all in a story like that?”

“I thought that might change your mind. Can you imagine all the imagination that went into putting that together?”

“True, it puts you to shame doesn't it?”

“Right so Bov the Red King had a goldsmith called Len who gave his name to the ancient name for the Lakes of Killarney, Locha lein or the Lakes of Len of the Many Hammers. Then we come to Lugh but we've mentioned him before. He had a son with the maiden Deictera called Cuchulain or from God's purpose (loving spiritual will) and transformation through will of wisdom through knowing God you get a will of love, a spiritual will of love, God's purpose and God blessed with light. The hound of Culain is a very famous figure so read up on him, remember that this is just a grounding. Finally for the time being the Dagda had another son called Midir the proud who had a palace called Bri Leith in Co. Longford. So from transformation to God's will (transformation of God) you get a life blessed with transformation (blessed with knowing) and this lives in a self of knowing blessed with God's purpose through blessed spiritual wisdom.”

“Right, so what's next then?”

“The Resurrection, back to life I'm afraid so what about a place to stay?”

“I could always see if my mate would put me up again. I'm sure he wouldn't mind.”

“Well you could, it's your choice after all.”

“Well I'm open to suggestions after all you know what's best. So why don't you think it's a good idea?”

“Two reasons really. Firstly you'll need time to write and you won't get much there and secondly it might be good to make a fresh start and sever links with the past.”

“Well I can see the first part. I'm not sure about the second though. I still have a few good friends I would not really like to lose.”

“No I was talking about memories. You go back to sleeping on the floor again there is a very good chance you'll go back to your old way of life. I'm talking of a fresh start in that sense.”

“Yes I can see the logic. So what would you recommend?”

“What about the Caravan Park just outside the village we went to. It looks very quiet and you'll need that for your writing.”

“I don't mind where I sleep but I don't really know if I can afford it.”

“The deposit will be cheaper than a flat. It's only £100 but the rents £40 and I happen to know that the place needs someone to look after it so maybe you could make a deal?”

“Sounds good I'll give it a try. Mind you I haven't enough for a deposit so it's a bit hypothetical at the moment.”

“Don't worry about it,” the voice said with a laugh, “You could always buy a lottery ticket.”

“Well alright then. Yes I wouldn't mind it at all.”

“Good that's sorted then. Pens and paper are cheap enough so that won't be much of a problem. Most things seem to be falling into place.”

“Sound, so what's next on my Resurrection?”

“That will do for the time being. Well except to find out how long you'll need to write it.”

“I don't know as I've never done anything like it before. Sure I did essays at school but that's not really a comparison.”

“You'll have to ask the night shift then.”

“Did you know he's starting to look younger?”

“Goes with the territory, I'm starting to sound more like you as well. So where were we anyway?”

“Mimir the proud.”

“Little is mentioned about him really except he dwelt in invisibility in Slieve Fuad in Co. Armagh. He had a son called Mananan or from God's purpose blessed with knowing you get a life of God, light of God and light of God's light. Now Mananan was the Lord of the Sea and had a steed called Aonbarr and the Isle of Man is supposed to be named after him. Although he is older than the Danaan he is still reckoned as one of them.”

“Fair enough.”

“Next we have Dana, daughter of the Dagda and mother of the Irish gods. She had three sons Brenos who later became known as Brian, Lucher and Iucher. So from transformation of God (light of God) you get a self of knowing through light seeing understanding, God's purpose (loving spiritual will through knowing) and blessed with a loving spiritual will through knowing. Nearly done now, next we have Aine who was the daughter of Owel the foster son of Mananan. So from a life of God, light of God and light of God's light you see love through God's purpose from which you get God's blessed light through.”

“Amazing I'll definitely take up reading again.”

“Good idea it will open up a new world to you and slow down the pace of life no end. It cuts a lot of stress as well. That just leaves us with Sinend then the son of Lir so God's purpose blessed with knowing gives you understanding blessing light through light transformation. I'll let you rest awhile to let it sink in.”

Chapter 4

“Right,” the voice said after a while, “Next we'll move onto Welsh Mythology. Now the gods generally came from two divine houses. The House of Don and the House of Llyr and are paralleled to some extent to the Irish gods. Don the mother goddess and her husband Beli to Dana and Bile the God of death whose descendants were the children of light, the House of Llyr and the Irish Lir. We'll finish off with the Pantheon of Arthur so that should give you something to go at.”

“Right I'll look forward to that.”

“Right the family of Don then. Now Don along with Math came from Mathonwy or from a life of God's spiritual wisdom seeing light (loving blessing) you get the transformation seeing light and a life of God's spiritual wisdom. She had a husband called Beli who came from Manogan so from a life of God's light seeing will of God's light you get a self through God's purpose blessed. Don and Beli had nine children Gwydion, Arianrod, Gilvaethwy, Amaethon, Govannan, Nudd, Penardun, Nynnian and Peiban. So from the transformation seeing light and a self through God's purpose blessed you get a will of love blessed with transformation (blessed seeing light), God's knowing blessed by God's light (knowing seeing transformation), a will blessed with God's purpose, the love of God through spiritual wisdom (love blessed by God), a life of God through spiritual wisdom seeing light, the will sees love of God's light (light of God's light), light of love transforming transformation, the word through light of God knowing transformation (loving light), light blessing light, light blessed by God's light and the word through blessed self of God's light.”

“Quite a passage.”

“Nearly done with Don actually so Nudd had Gwyn, I'll let you do that one.”

“From the light of love transforming transformation you get a will of love blessed with light.”

“Good so finally Gwydion and Arianrod got together and had Nwyre, Llewllaw, Gyffes and Dylan. Or from a will of love blessed with transformation (blessed seeing light) and God's knowing blessed by God's light (knowing seeing transformation) you get light lovingly blessed (known through God's purpose), God's purpose through love, God's purpose (God's purpose-God's love), a will blessed with the word, the word through understanding, transformation blessed with God's purpose, God's light. I'll let you have a little time for that to sink in.”

“Sure. Is there much to do in Celtic Mythology. It seems a lot more detailed than the Greek?”

“Well we've gone into much more detail that's all. You only had the genealogies.”

“Was there any reason for that?”

“Just to compare the information with Genesis really.”

“So I didn't need to go into the stories then?”

“This is only grounding. In time you'll look through them all but there's plenty of time for that.”

“So what after the Celts?”

“Norse but that will be the turn of the night shift. So are you ready for some more?”

“Yes sure go on then.”

“The house of Llyr, Iweriadd, Llyr and Euroswydd or blessed by love through knowing (blessed by God's transformation) transformed to God's purpose (God's purpose blessed with knowing) through loving knowing seeing understanding (love blessed with transformation) transformation. So Iweriadd got together with Llyr and had Bran and Branwen or being blessed by love through knowing transformed to God's purpose and God's purpose blessed with knowing gives you a self that knows God's light and a self knowing God's light (love through light). Well Branwen married Mathalwch and had Gwern so from a self knowing God's light and a life of God, spiritual wisdom of God, God's purpose (loving spiritual will) you get a will of love through knowing light. Well Llyr married Penardun the daughter of

Don and they had Manawyddan who married Rhiannon. So from the transformation seeing light you get the word and the light of God's knowing transformation to loving light which married to God's purpose blessed with knowing gives you a life of God's light, God's love blessed with transformation (transformed to God's light) which is married to spiritual knowing blessing God's light (light seeing light). Are you still with me?"

"Sure. Well I think so anyway."

"Not many now. So Penardun went with Euroswdd and had Nissyen and Eunissyen. So from the word and the light of God's knowing transformation to loving light through loving knowing seeing understanding transformation you get the light blessed with understanding (understanding blessed through light) through loving light blessing understanding (understanding blessed through light). And finally Pwyll went with Rhiannon and had Pryderi who married Kicua. So the word (love blessed with God's purpose), God's purpose married to spiritual knowing blessed with God's light (light seeing light) gives you the word knowing blessed transformation through knowing blessed which is married to work blessing will (love of God). So that's Llyr."

"Just Arthur then?"

"And a few pearls if you are lucky."

"I'll look forward to that," Mad Dog said in a sarcastic tone.

"Pears before swine then, are you hungry?"

"Not after that meal earlier. I probably won't be hungry tomorrow either as it was that big."

"We'll crack on then. Anlawdd had Yipaddaden, Custennin and Golenddydd. So from God's light, God's purpose, God's loving transformation transformed you get blessed with the word of God's transformation, the transformation of God (transformation through light), a will of love understanding wisdom through light (light blessing light) and a will seeing God's purpose through light transforming (blessed transformation) transformation. Yipaddaden went on to have Olwen. So from being blessed with the word of God's transformation, transformation of God you get seeing God's purpose, love through light. Now Golenddydd married Kilwydd and had Kilhwch who married to Olwen. So from the will seeing God's purpose through light transforming transformation married to work blessed with God's purpose, love blessing transforming transformation you get work blessed with God's spiritual purpose (loving spiritual will) which is married to seeing God's purpose, love through light. I'll let you do the next two."

"Thanks."

"They're not that bad. So Custennin went on to have Goreu, Erbin and Igera."

"So from a will of love understanding wisdom through light you get a will seeing knowing through love (through knowing self blessed with light) and a blessed will through knowing light of God."

"Good and Erbin goes on to have Geraint."

"Through knowing self blessed with light you get a will through knowing God's blessed light (wisdom)."

"Very good so Igera married Uther Ben and they had Arthur and Gwyar. Or from a blessed will through knowing light of God married to loving spiritual wisdom through knowing (self through light) you get God's knowing spiritual wisdom (loving knowing) and a will of love blessed with God's knowing. And finally Gwyar married Lot and they had Gwalchmai and Medrawt. So from a will of love blessed with God's knowing married to God's purpose seeing wisdom you get a will that loves God, God's purpose (spiritual will), a life of God's blessing and life through transformation knowing God's loving wisdom. Have a rest now and we'll talk some more about your Resurrection."

"Sure."

"So have you thought about getting a part time job when you get back?"

“Not really. To tell you the truth I haven't thought that far ahead.”

“Well I happen to know that there's a vacancy in the shop window where you got the scratch card from. They were looking for a gardener/handyman. Would that appeal to you?”

“I wouldn't mind especially with the summer. I would rather work outside in the Sun.”

“Good, so that's settled then. It's only one day a week but it pays £60. It will give you time to write if you can live on that.”

“Should think so as the bills shouldn't be too much.”

“You won't get much time to spend it either,” the voice said with a laugh, “Well that's the genealogies done so I thought I would finish off with your name sake.”

“Sorry?”

“The Legend of Peredur, this was the legend that the Grail was based on. I want you to give me the names as I go on so that should keep you on your toes.”

“Fair enough I thought I had it pretty easy so far.”

“You'll enjoy it. So anyway although Peredur was the seventh son he was not very lucky. His father Evrawc and his six bothers had all been killed and so his mother fearing the same fate for him brought him up in the forest.”

“Through love knowing God's loving will you get the word through knowing through transformation of loving knowing.”

“Good. Now here he grew in strength though he was rustic in manner it must be said. One day he saw three knights of Arthur's, Gwalchmai, Geneir and Owain.”

“God's knowing spiritual wisdom is served by a will of love, God, God's purpose (spiritual will), life of God's blessing, a will through light through blessed knowing and seeing love of God's blessed light.”

“We'll come back to that later. Anyway Peredur asked his mother what they were on seeing them in armour and she told him they were angels. He decided that he wanted to be an angel too and so rode out to meet them. They tell them who they are and Owain out of courtesy explains to him the use of a saddle and the weapons of war. When Peredur comes back he picks out a mangy draught horse dressing him up with a saddle made out of twigs and his mother realises she has no choice in the matter and so gives him her blessing she tells him to go to Arthur's court where he would meet the best knights. He had sharp pointed sticks as weapons and so looked quite a sight.

Now on arrival at Arthur's court the steward Kai repulses him because of his rusticity though he is welcomed and highly praised by a dwarf and dwarfess who had been in the Court for ages without speaking to anyone. Kai chastises the dwarves and when Peredur demands to see Arthur tells him that he will have to overcome a knight first who had just insulted the Court by throwing a goblet of wine in the face of Gwenhwyar. Peredur went out to where the knight was swaggering around and offering everyone out and they started fighting. Peredur slew him by piercing his skull with a sharp stake. Now Owain came out as Peredur was trying to get the dead knights armour off and showed him how to unfasten it and Peredur took it along with the other weapons and rode off to further adventures. Now all the knights that he beat he sent to Arthur with the message that he had overthrown them for his honour though he would not come to Court himself until he had avenged the insult to the dwarves upon Kai who was then reproved by Arthur and greatly grieved there after. So what does that actually tell you?”

“I suppose it would be a good idea to try and find out what Peredur actually was.”

“Good, the word through knowing through transformation of loving knowing. So what actually is it?”

“Would that be the self of understanding?”

“Well it comes through loving knowing of God's loving will, what does that tell you?”

“I would say that God's loving will would be the Holy Spirit and this feeds the self of understanding so yes I think it is.”

“That's right Peredur is the self of understanding and he was brought up in poor circumstances which gave him strength and a different perception of reality.”

“Sorry?”

“He was brought up in a fairly simple kind of lifestyle and this made him think about life differently. Non materialistic on one hand but maybe a little crude for want of a better word. This is bore out by his weaponry and saddle later.”

“Yes,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “A bit too self reliant for some.”

“Well yes. So he sees the three knights which are actually three spirits as Arthur is the spirit of knowing. Would you care to take a guess?”

“I would say Gwalchmai would be the spirit of life, Geneir, wisdom and Owain understanding.”

“Good. Well when he sees them first he thinks they are angels though I suppose you could say they were three wise men” and laughed, “So he wants to get to know them and through the spirit of understanding learns the rudiments and gets a bit of light and wants to be enlightened. His mother realising that his heart is set on it gives her blessing, which is?”

“The mergence,” Mad Dog said getting interested.

“That's right so he goes of to Court or a spiritual life but he has a little trouble when he gets there. First he gets rejected by the work of God's blessing because of his rusticity. What do you make of that?”

“He needs cleaning up a bit I suppose.”

“Could be so what actually is the work of God's blessing, that might help?”

“The Holy Spirit?”

“Good. Now the two dwarves who had not spoken all the time when they were there greeted Peredur and praised him highly. What do you make of that?”

“Would that be the waking of the sleeping consciousness?”

“Well it does happen afterwards. He also has to defeat a stranger who has threw a goblet of wine in Gwenhwyar's face or a will of love through light, spiritual love blessed with God's knowing. What would throw wine in the face?”

“Anger,” Mad Dog said upon reflection “And so he defeated the God of anger to get to see Arthur. He would do his work though would not go back until Kai had been reprimanded. Now I'm not sure about that.”

“He would lead a spiritual life but he would not go back to the Collective until the God within was fully evolved.”

“How does that equate with the Holy Spirit being forgiven?”

“Well it was the insult appeased that's slightly different.”

“So what was the insult?”

“For speaking up for Peredur when they had been quiet for so long.”

“For being asleep in the first place?”

“No it's more than that. What sort of temperament would he have? Patient or impatient.”

“Impatience, though how does that fit in with the rest of it?”

“Well on one level he wants to get on. He could see what he could be by what the dwarves told him. And what did they tell him?”

“Anger, they glorified him.”

“Got it and when Arthur reprovved Kai it meant that the spirit of knowing was activated.”

“Reprovved Kai?”

“Got rid of the word swearing, no it means more about cleansing his doubt. Everyone a fallen knight”

“Oh right, of course.”

“Well that's as far as we got in the story.”

“Right, so on to the next part I guess.”

“Give yourself a little time to let it sink in. so how are you getting on with it?”

“Hard going but it's definitely got me interested.”

“Hungry?”

“No I'm still full.”

“Right so next Norse Mythology, any thoughts on that?”

“I don't know much about, “and then laughed before he said, “I guess I will do by the end of the night though. So nearly done then?”

“Another day should do it and then we'll see about getting you moved to that caravan.”

“Is that symbolic again?”

“Ay it's life but not as you know it,” and laughed.

“Oh right. Things seem to be moving a little faster now.”

“Yes hold on to your hat and get your pencil sharpened.”

“Well anyway just Peredur then and that's it for today.”

Chapter 5

“Right,” The voice said after awhile, “On we go. One day Peredur came to a castle that was by a lake. He saw a venerable man with his attendants and they were fishing in the lake. As Peredur got closer the man got up and entered the castle and Peredur noticed that he was lame. Peredur also entered the castle and was received with hospitality in the Great Hall. After they had finished eating the man asked him if he knew how to use a sword and promised to teach him the ways of the knight, the manners and customs of different countries, courtesy, gentleness and noble bearing explaining that he was Peredur's uncle on his mother's side. Finally he bid him to ride forward and to remember that what ever he saw that might cause him wonder not to ask the meaning of if no-one had had the courtesy to explain it to him.

Peredur rode on and came to a vast desert wood beyond which he came to a great castle called the Castle of Wonders. He entered in through an open door and was received honourably by a stately grey haired old man who was sitting in the Great Hall with many pages around him. Peredur sat and dined next to the man and was asked after he had finished eating if he could use a sword. Peredur said that he thought that he could if he received instruction.

The lord then gave him a sword and told him to strike a great iron staple that was on the floor. Peredur did so and cut the staple in two breaking the sword in the process. The lord told him to place the sword together and then both the sword and the staple became one again. This happened again but on the third it would not unite. The lord said that he was at two thirds of his strength and then went on to tell him that he too was his uncle and the brother of the man that Peredur had stayed with the previous night. They talked on and two youths entered into the hall carrying a spear of mighty size. From its point three streams of blood dripped into the ground. Now all the company when they saw this broke down in tears and started wailing. The lord took no notice and carried on his conversation with Peredur.

Next came two maidens carrying a large salver between them and on the salver amidst a lot of blood was a man's severed head. The wailing got louder though it eventually fell silent and Peredur was led off to his chamber without asking the meaning of it. Peredur rode off to adventure abundant and the mystery of the castle is revealed near the end of the story, the head being a cousin of Peredur and the lance that was the weapon that killed him and lamed his uncle the Fisher King. The nine sorceresses of Gloucester were said to have worked their evil on the deed and so with the help of Arthur he attacks them and vengeance is met.”

“Quite a story a castle by the lake and an old man fishing, tricky that.”

“What did the old man offer him,” the voice said by way of encouragement.

“To teach him the ways of the knight would that be to teach him a life of service?”

“Good, the manners and customs of other countries?”

“To broaden his mind.”

“Close, what about the ability to talk in tongues?”

“Yes of course. Courtesy and gentleness, would that be humility?”

“Good, so what would teach him a life of service, humility and the ability to speak on many levels?”

“Wisdom?”

“In a way but he was the Fisher King. What does that tell you?”

“He liked to fish?”

“Well a bit more than that,” the voice said with a laugh, “Now if he was one of the seven spirits which one do you think it would be?”

Mad Dog thought awhile and said, “I don't know, the spirit of understanding?”

“Wouldn't you say that it was the spirit of discernment, fishing for knowledge in the lake?”

“Oh could be. Peredur would have to know more than one set of beliefs to get it.”

“Yes. Now why would he tell him never to question what he saw unless the answer was freely given to him?”

“Actually yes that's a good question. I thought with discernment you get it through understanding.”

“So?”

“I don't know then. It seems to be telling him to accept things blind and I don't really know how you would get discernment by doing that.”

“We'll come back to that later then. Now the next day he went through a vast desert wood and came to a castle called the Castle of Wonders now what would the desert wood signify?”

“Something he had to get through to get to the castle,” Mad Dog said going deep in thought, “Now would the forest be the trials of life?”

“Yes but being a desert as well they are not just the normal trials of life.”

“True the barren trials of life?”

“In what sense?”

“Er I don't know. I just said that because it was a desert.”

“It was the wasteland so what does that tell you?”

Mad Dog thought some more and said, “He had to get to the wheat by going through the chaff.”

“Good and the wheat being?”

“The Castle of Wonders?”

“Yes. Now by the fact that he had to go out and earn it what does it say?”

“You have to earn it. It's not just given to you.”

“Good, so now he's dined on wisdom and he is asked if he was up to the job. Could he use a sword which is symbolic of the mind so in a way he was being tested?”

“Was he, in what way?”

“Humility but it's up to you to work out how I got that conclusion.”

“I suppose that if he would have said yes it would be arrogant and he did not know at the time what was actually expected of him.”

“Good, now his answer bears that out. He said that he thought he could if he received instruction any thoughts on that?”

“He was saying that he could do the job if he was guided by wisdom.”

“Not strictly true. He could do the job if he was guided by the spirit of wisdom, his Spirit to be precise.”

“Yes I understand that so what about the two youths and the lance?”

“Now Mad Dog don't you know that it's rude to ask without being told.”

“What,” Mad Dog said in surprise.

“If you want true discernment you'll get it under guidance. Now if you were ready to hear the reason at the time you would have been told there and then. Sure he found the answer later on but by then he was ready to understand and deal with it. He had to grow in experience to do it. So why did the man tell him not to ask, what do you really need to get discernment?”

Mad Dog thought a while and said, “Patience.”

“Good. Now next he was given a sword and told to strike a metal hasp that was on the floor any thoughts on that?”

“Well the sword is the mind although I'm not really sure about the hasp.”

“What is one?” The voice said encouraging him.

“Well it's a thing that goes with a staple I suppose, half a lock. It's the thing that holds the staple in place.”

“Right something that the mind has to break three times and each time it destroys itself.”

“Would that be levels of consciousness?”

“Go on,” the voice said wanting some elaboration.

“Perceptions of reality the first two are repairable but the next isn't.”

“Well you are right but I would like to know how you got there.”

“Well a hasp that holds a lock. It's what holds your reality together. Now the first time when it broke would be when his insular reality was broken. I would say it was when he saw the knights as it was a shock to the system.”

“Yes and by the same logic that would be the death of your mother. You started to question your life and climbed out of the first level.”

“Right and the sword going back together does that mean that I got my head around it?”

“Good. Now the new hasp meant a new perception of reality maybe one with God in Heaven and the ability to believe in an after life? Now the sword going back together would be the wisdom that he needed for that level. Right so what would the third one be?”

“I don't know but he couldn't put it back together afterwards.”

“Don't worry he was only at two thirds of his strength he still had more journeying to do.”

“Oh would that be when I left my body then?”

“Well that put you on the third level. The third level will actually end when he defeats the nine sorceresses of Gloucester so we'll come back to that later.”

“Fair enough.”

“So let's move on to the bloodied lance that killed his cousin. First things first find out what his cousin actually was.”

“So what comes from wisdom and has to be killed?”

“Very good well thought through. So do you think it was?”

“Spiritual anger?”

“Good. So the spear what is that symbolic of?”

“Your imagination.”

“And being bloodied three times?”

“It has to be used three times. The three negative aspects of the self?”

“Elaborate a little.”

“The one I killed in the semi dream, the negative imagination, and the third I'm not sure about as you said it just evolves.”

“That got reformed in the light. So the two youths carrying it, what carries your imagination?”

“Your Spirit and Soul?”

“And by their youth you could say that they were evolved. Now the next thing was two maidens carrying anger's head on a platter. So what would deliver anger up? What were the two maidens symbolic of?”

“Virtues I suppose.”

“Good but which two?”

“I would say that patience would be one and the other humility as once you have no pride you have no temper from hurt pride.”

“Very good, so how does patience and humility deliver up anger?”

“By controlling it?”

“Yes by taking its head, now what about the heavy wailing?”

“I don't know I thought they would have been happy about it.”

“You would so it might be worth your while to look a little deeper. What are the Courtiers, what serves wisdom?”

“Understanding?”

“Good, they had to go through the pain just as he did though he couldn't ask why. Now on another level we also have knowing. He had to know they were dead, see the evidence if you like and this activates the spirit of purpose. His purpose was now set though at the time he did not realise it. And the purpose was?”

“To avenge the death.”

“So back to the nine sorceresses of Gloucester, A will of God's purpose seeing loving will through understanding wisdom through knowing. A will of God's purpose and his evolution is complete. So that's the story of Peredur. Now all you have to do is rewrite it and bring it up to date.”

“What, is that the book I have to write?”

“Yes. Now do you see why I went into so much detail?”

“I've got to write it. I thought I was just writing a book to keep all the knowledge in.”

“Well it will when you have written it. But don't forget that it's the journey to the answer as well. I mean let's be honest we are not going to turn around and say that your first book should be a rewriting of Peredur in verse form are we?”

“In verse and what do you mean journey to the answer?”

“You'll not come out and do it straight away. You'll have to build it up one step at a time.”

“Building it up one step at a time is that saying what I think it is?”

“Well that would depend on what you thought it was.”

“No, no don't play games. You mentioned steps. Would I be right in thinking these steps would be other books?”

“Of course, what else could they be?”

“Now hang on, one books fine but how many are we actually talking about?”

“You wouldn't really want to know that. You might find the idea a bit off putting so it might not be a good idea to know.”

“That many so what are we talking four, five.”

“Oh well if you really want to know but I did warn you. Twelve.”

“What, you are joking.”

“Told you sometimes ignorance is bliss.”

“Yes but twelve why so many?”

“We've got to build you up to it. A 7,000 line poem is going to take some doing.”

“And how far have you actually thought into this, the stories, everything?”

“To the last detail so take it one step at a time and you should be alright.”

“Well it certainly brightened my day and I still have to get my head around Norse Mythology. I don't think I can.”

“You could always just forget this conversation ever took place.”

“I doubt it. So what are these books about then?”

“Well there's a lot of poetry.”

“Well that's me out as I haven't the first idea.”

“You will have after you've put the History of Ireland in verse.”

“Is that one of the books?”

“Er no, it's just a quarter. We also want England, Scotland and Wales and tied in with another poem at the front.”

“And that's just one book. You're not in a hurry are you?”

“You'll be surprised at how quickly you get through them. You'll have to get books to study but you'll grow from it in more ways than you can imagine.”

“So I'll just sit and write it. What about plots and characters and all that?”

“All done the only thing you have to be careful of is putting your own emotional interpretation on it.”

“Yes but I'll know it's you so I won't do that.”

“You won't. You'll think that you are actually doing it yourself.”

“No chance. I mean let's be honest how could I forget something like this.”

“Believe me, you can. Anyway I will see you in the morning and we'll carry on.”

Mad Dog never answered just said his prayers and went to bed.

Chapter 6

Mad Dog found himself back in the amphitheatre back with the old man who was now a lot younger. Where his hair was fully grey now there were only flecks and his once long beard now just covered his skin. "I see you have come a long way," he said by way of greeting.

"Er, you too."

"So Norse Mythology then."

"What about the book?"

"The book?"

"The one I'm supposed to be writing, well the 12 to be more precise."

"Oh, what about it?"

"Why didn't you tell me? I mean 12 books that's a lot of teaching to be done."

"It will be worth it in the end. You'll not know how big the job is as you'll get it a little at a time."

"But I do know and 12 books I am hardly likely to forget."

"Oh but you will so don't worry about it."

"Easier said than done," Mad Dog muttered to himself.

"So anyway Norse Mythology where to begin? Alfadur now what does that name conjure up for you?"

"I don't know. To tell you the truth I don't know anything about Norse Mythology."

"Well what does it sound like?"

"All father?"

"Correct. Some people say that it was Odin and others a deity higher than him."

"Oh and what does it stand for?"

"God, God's purpose, the word of God transformed to loving knowing. Let's talk about it a while and mill it over in our heads."

"Er sure in what direction?"

"Word of God transformed to loving knowing. What is it actually talking about?"

"Well I suppose that the word of God would be wisdom and transformed to loving knowing would be the merging of Spirit and Soul through transformation."

"Good now God God's purpose, what would they be?"

"Well God's purpose would be the spirit of purpose and God would be an enlightened Soul."

"Right but God is more than that. He's the word, he's a loving will and he's work. So with his work light sees loving understanding. He's unknowable."

"What. But you just said..."

"Well put the words together," The man said with a laugh.

Mad Dog thought a while and said, "F###k knows."

"Got it lighten up, what's the matter with you?"

"Well it's the books; I'm still trying to get my head around it."

"You'll be trained up for it. You have nothing to worry about."

"Yes right."

"Believe me it will all be taken care off. Now let's turn to Odin. Seeing transformation (blessed with light). What does that sound like to you?"

"Eden, through transformation through light?"

"Good, now to reinforce the point Odin had two wolves and two ravens. Geri and Freki, Hugin and Mumin."

"So?"

"Well let's take Geri. A will through knowing blessed. Now to me that sounds like the word blessed with understanding seeing light. What do you think?"

"Sure, it could do I suppose. Why do you ask?"

"Pison, one of the rivers that left Eden."

“Oh right. What about the others though?”

“Freki, the word known through work blessed or spirit blessed with transformation transformed through work and God's purpose or Hiddekel. Then we come to Hugin a spiritual loving will blessed with light or the will blessed with spirit seeing light or Gihon. And finally Mumin a life of love, a life of blessed light. Now at first glance Euphrates or through love the spiritual word knows God's wisdom through understanding does not seem to fit. Look deeper though and knowing God's wisdom through understanding would be a life of blessed light and a life of love would be the loving spiritual word.”

“So that's Eden in Norse Mythology then.”

“That's right. Incidentally the nine muses in Greek Mythology tally with the nine worlds of creation from Norse; you can work that one out in your own time though.”

“Fair enough.”

“We'll talk about Creation instead. Now in the beginning there was no heaven and earth only a bottomless deep and a world of mist in which a fountain flowed. Now 12 rivers came from the fountain and flowed far away where they froze to ice. One layer after another until the great deep was filled up. Now south from the World of Mist was the World of Light and from this light flowed a warm wind that melted the ice, the vapours rose and formed clouds from which sprang Ymir the frost giant, his children and the cow Audhumbla whose milk nourished the giant.”

“God's loving transformation, spiritual loving life; self of God's purpose, God feeds a blessed life blessed with knowing.”

“Good I didn't realise you were going to do that?”

“I did it in the day shift.”

“Fair enough now the cow used to feed itself by licking the frost and salt from the ice, one day as she was doing this there appeared the hair of a man, the next his whole head and on the third his entire body. Now this new being was a God and he took as wife a daughter of the frost giant's and from there union sprang up three brothers Odin, Vili and Ve. They slew the giant and out of his body formed the Earth. His blood was the seas, his bones the mountains, his hair the trees his skull the heavens and his brains clouds. Ymir's eyebrows went on to form Midgard or mid earth destined to be the home of man. So anyway Odin went on to regulate day and night and the seasons by placing the Sun and Moon in the Heavens and soon with the Sun shining the vegetable world sprang up. The gods walked upon the Earth and saw that it was incomplete for it had no human on it. They took an Ash Tree and made a man from it called Aske and then an Alder from which they made a woman and called her Embla. Odin then gave them life and a Soul, Vili gave them reason and motion and Ve the senses, speech and expression. They took up Midgard as there abode and from them came the whole human race. That should do you for a little while. We'll go over it and see what we can dredge up.”

“Sure,” Mad Dog said although he did not have a clue.

“Right the Worlds of Mist and Light what do you think that might signify?”

“Light and darkness?”

“Not quite the darkness is the void. Think of it more as wisdom and understanding. Now in the mist there was a fountain, what would that mean?”

“Eternal life?”

“Well in a way, life. And from the river sprang 12 rivers, so what do you get from life?”

“Understanding though I thought there were only 11 levels.”

“There is. The last one is true understanding, actually experiencing it. Knowing would be a better description. Now the rivers froze into ice and filled up the great void any thoughts?”

“The understanding was frozen?”

“In a way it comes from your instinct, that's why it's ice. Now a warm wind blew from the World of Light and this melted some of the ice and from the vapours forming clouds Ymir and the frost giants were formed along with the cow Audhumbla. What about that?”

“Well I'm not really sure, unless the light is your Physical Will.”

“Nearly the wind is your Physical Will the light being your Spiritual. So from the actions of wisdom and understanding you get blessed with a life blessed with knowing and the transformation of God. Does that make sense?”

“Yes I can see it.”

“Now the cow used to feed itself by licking the frost and salt from the ice any thoughts?”

“It feeds on understanding?”

“Not quite. It does not feed of the ice it feeds of the frost hoar frost to be exact, its frozen dew.”

“Right, that would be a by product of the vapour wouldn't it?”

“That's right.”

“Wisdom and understanding?”

“Closer, knowledge of the divine, that is the water of its life.”

“How does that equate?”

“A by product of wisdom and understanding would be the vapour which is a blessed life blessed with knowing which would be divine wisdom as opposed to wisdom of the divine. This wisdom has to be re-understood (chewed twice) to turn it into wisdom of the divine.”

“Sorry?”

“Divine wisdom builds up your Spirit that is the frost giant. Wisdom of the divine is the re-understanding of that wisdom and that feeds the God within which also feeds your Spirit.”

“Right.”

“It also feeds on salt any thoughts on that?”

“Well salt used to be a payment years ago. So would that be a payment for service?”

“Good so it feeds of knowledge of the divine and service. So put that together.”

“From the Physical Will merged with wisdom and understanding you get your Spirit and the God within. Your Spirit is fed by divine knowing and the God within divine understanding.”

“Right, so the cow uncovered the hair of man, then the head and then the entire body.”

“This is a parallel of the hasps in the legend of Peredur.”

“Good, so explain the stages and we'll be there.”

“Well the hair, your understanding has grown enough for you to believe there is more to reality than meets your eye. You see traces of God but don't exactly know what it is so you put your own perceptions on him. You know like the old man in heaven.”

“Good and the next stage?”

“Well the head. You know what it looks like. You know what he is. This happens when you see him. Your understanding has increased enough to do this.”

“And the last one?”

“Then you become him an enlightened Soul with a purpose to serve.”

“Excellent. Now this God took up with the daughter of a frost giant and from the union came the three brothers. Now the legends also have Vili and Ve as Odin's sons but we'll use this one to illustrate the point. So first you'll have to translate them.”

“Seeing transformation blessing light love blessed with God's purpose (blessing love through).”

“And they killed Ymir and built the world around him so you could say that they got blessed with a life of blessed knowing and built their world around it. Now we get to the creation of man. From the Ash and Alder came Aske and Embla.”

“ So from God's spiritual understanding you get God understanding work through and from God, God's purpose transformed through knowing you get through life a self of God's purpose, God.”

“Good so Odin gave them life and a Soul what does that say?”

“The transformation gave them a spiritual life and spiritual life, essence and being.”

“Good. Now Vili gave them reason and motion?”

“Reason would be purpose and motion strength to carry out that purpose, confidence from knowing your purpose I suppose.”

“So that just leaves Ve.”

“Well Ve is love isn't it. I don't really see how it fits in.”

“Think of him as the Soul. Remember I said that some legends have him as Odin's son.”

“Oh right, so your Soul is responsible for those then?”

“Yes it's the actual thing that illuminates your life.”

“Right.”

“So that just leaves the abode of man. Midgard, what does it stand for.”

“Life blessed with transformation (will of God's knowing transformation).”

“That's right. So how does that equate?”

“I'm not sure. Well unless it's talking about the meaning of life as opposed to the reality of their surroundings.”

“Well in a way. That's what we are here for but it's also saying something else.”

“It is?”

“Yes whilst you are in the realms of time your evolution is the transformation. So anyway that's it for Creation. We'll take a breather now to let it sink in.”

“Sure.”

“So we'll talk a little about the books you'll be writing.”

“Ah.”

“Don't worry. Anyway they'll be set out in five lots of three.”

“What that's fifteen.”

“No two of them will be placed like a triangle reflected at the peak and one triad is a book in three sections.”

“Oh so why five triangles anyway?”

“Instinctive, intellectual, spiritual negative and positive and divine. Do you want to hear about it?”

“Well I suppose so. I've got nothing else to do so why not add to my woes.”

“Good that's the spirit. Now to explain the format is quite complicated so you'll have to bear with me.”

“Yes right.”

“Well the first triad instinct. That will be three books the first one a sort of cross between last of the summer wine and MacBeth if you see what I mean.”

“Er no.”

“The plot revolves around men in their seventies and in the end you don't know if the last one makes it.”

“Sounds like an interesting book. Have you got a title for it?”

“And Death Came a Courtin'. We've even designed a cover for it, a skeletal figure holding a cushion with a rose on it. It's amazing”

“Well it doesn't sound that good.”

“Ah but you haven't seen it. The skeleton is done in a spectral flat way and the cushion is done as three dimensional.”

“Er so?”

“ Well if you tilt the book forward it looks like he's towering above you and tilt it back it looks like its on its knees offering it to you.”

“Really, that might be interesting then.”

“Oh yes and as there are no eyeballs the book follows you around the room still offering the rose.”

“That would be quite a picture and what is the story meant to be saying?”

“Well it's the foundation for the other books. There's a lot of death and a few glimpses of an afterlife.”

“There is?”

“Yes, a man hearing his father calling him after he has had his fingers cut off with a set of secateurs.”

“What, what sort of story would involve something like that?”

“A pretty violent one,” the man said with a laugh “It’s to get you started in writing, that's the main thing so the next one on the list goes a little further.”

“Right, so what's that called?”

“Mary of the Seven Veils it's about two lives colliding. A man goes on a killing spree guided by his Spirit through his dreams.”

“Sounds interesting, tell me more.”

“Well the stories set around a nomadic drifter that might appeal to you.”

“Well depends what happens to him,” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“It’s a story of revenge. He comes home to help his friend who is in prison out and gets a little over his head for a while. His Spirit had been through virtually the same thing in his last life as history was repeating itself. Now with each killing he lifts a veil from a girl that he sees dancing in his dreams and can't stop thinking about her.”

“Oh romantic is it?”

“Not really no it turns out to be his mate's wife and he ends up as his Spirit fighting as a mercenary.”

“Well what's the point of writing that? It's got nothing to do with writing that book.”

“Oh it has. You'll be writing a plot very similar in your book.”

“I will?”

“Yes it will be set present day and crusader times. You'll have to slay 7 knights as to represent the seven deadly sins.”

“Oh, and these are the seven veils?”

That's right and Mary was a pure Soul.”

“That might be an interesting book. I'll look forward to reading that.”

“Just as soon as your finished writing it,” the man said with a laugh, “And finally The Path of Shadows. Basically it's a reworking of the Wooing of Etain but set in Wales.”

“So what's that all about?”

“I’m afraid you'll have to read up on that one. The story starts with Daniel son of Cormick being taken over by a wayward spirit.”

“What?”

“He evolves, it's just symbolic. He dies halfway through and gets himself another body. Not long before Daniel McCormick the last and only survivor in the first book is born in fact.”

“Oh so you've tied it in then any significance?”

“Yes Danny's Soul goes back on the cycle of life but his Spirit lives on. Through endurance it reaches majesty.”

“Er right. So what's next then?”

“Intellectual, three books under different names to represent different aspects of your self, intellect, intuition and ego.”

“I could send that one out anonymous then to prove that I haven't got one.”

“Not a bad idea we'll talk about that later. So the first book An Ancestral Walk you've talked about with the day shift.”

“Oh the four histories.”

“That’s right. Then you have Aspects of Life, thirty short stories of 2,000 words and thirty poems of the same name and then finally The Book Formerly Known as Reality.”

“Oh right so the book with no name by the author with no name. Yes I like that.”

“From beauty through power through love.”

“Sorry?”

“Oh it's just the path you've taken. Anyway back to Norse we can come back to the books on your next break.”

Chapter 7

“So anyway so let's talk a little about the gods. Odin, now legend says that he was the son of Bor and a giantess called Bestla. So from a self seeing knowing married to a self through understanding the wisdom of God's purpose, God, you see the transformation blessed with light. Now Odin had a spear which was also his staff called Gungnir which means will of loving light, will of light (blessed with knowing). Next we come to Frigga, the goddess of clouds, sky and married love amongst other things. Some legends say that she was the daughter of Odin and Njord although she later married him and had Hermod, Baldur, Hodur and Tyre. So from seeing transformation blessed with light married to light blessed seeing knowing transformation you get the word known blessing will (will of God) which married to seeing transformation blessed with light gives you the spirit through knowing life seeing transformation, a self of God, God's purpose transformed through loving knowing (spirit seeing transformation to loving knowing) and wisdom blessing knowing through. Now Frigga was a compassionate sort of girl and with the help of 11 hand maidens kept watch over humanity, any ideas?”

“The levels of understanding.”

“Good. Now in her house called Fensalir she spun golden threads and rainbow clouds. So the word known blessing will (will of God) lives in the word through light understanding God, God's purpose (blessed with knowing). Now first on the list of children was Hermod who was the messenger of the gods. So what does that tell you?”

“He was the spirit of knowing.”

“Right. Next came Baldur, called the beautiful, he was the God of light. Now he was slain by his twin brother Hodur after being tricked by Loki to throw a spear of mistletoe at him. So a self of God, God's purpose transformed by loving knowing is killed (obtained) by the spirit seeing transformation to loving knowing with the help of God's purpose seeing work blessed. So Hodur the God of darkness killer of his twin brother and blind to boot which leaves Tyre. He was the God of war and one of the three principle deities. Now we'll mention him at Ragnarok a little later so I won't go into detail here.”

“Ragnarok?”

“The destruction of power. You'll like that one, one final battle in which all of Creation is involved. We're talking about the end of the world.”

“Ah, you know some things are best not knowing.”

“To an inquiring mind like yours I would have thought that you would have jumped at the chance so anyway Freyr the God of fertility, sunshine and growth. He was the son of Njord and Nerthus and the twin of Freya. Or from light blessed seeing knowing transformation and light through knowing spiritual wisdom (loving understanding) you get the word known through (blessed by God) and the word known and blessed by God. Now Freyr lived in Alfheim and ruled over Lois Alfar so the word known through blessing lives in God, God's purpose (the spiritual word through a blessed life) and rules God, God's purpose, the word and God's knowing. Now Freyr was given a golden boar called Gallian-bursti or will of God, God's purpose (God's purpose blessed with God's light)-a self of loving knowing understanding wisdom blessed. The boar being symbolic of imagination and the fact that it was golden meant it was spiritual. He also had a magic ship called Skidbladmir or understanding work blessed with transformation, self of God's purpose (God transformation), life blessed with knowing. It could travel anywhere in the world and contain all the gods though when not in use it could be folded up into a pocket, any thoughts?”

“I haven't a clue.”

“Imagination again it incorporates everything and can go anywhere so next Freya, the goddess of love. She married Odur or sunshine and they had two daughters Hnoss and Gersemi. So the word known and blessed by God married to seeing transformation to loving

knowing gives spiritual light seeing understanding and an understanding will through knowing (understanding through life blessed). Well Freya lived in Sessyrymnir in the realm of Folkuang. So the word known and blessed by God lives in understanding through understanding (understanding blessed with knowing) blessed life (light of God's knowing) in the realms of the word seeing God's purpose, work of love, God's light will. Next we come to Bregi who married Iduna now he was the God of poetry and Iduna kept apples that should the gods feel age coming they only had to taste them to feel young again. I'll let you do that one."

"A self of knowing through will blessed is married to the blessed transformation (loving light of God)."

"Good. So what were these apples?"

"The fruit of the tree of life?"

"That's right, knowledge. Now next was Nanna the goddess of flowers and vegetation who was married to Baldur or?"

"Light (God's light, light of God) is married to a self of God, God's purpose (loving knowing)."

"Right that brings us to Thor or Thunar. He married Sif and his hall is Belskirmir the largest in Asgard. So spiritual wisdom seeing knowing married to understanding blessing the word is housed in a self through God's purpose understood, work blessed with knowing light (blessed with knowing). Now he had a couple of things to aid him in battle. One was a hammer called Mjolner or a life blessed seeing God's purpose, light through knowing and some iron gloves that he puts on whenever he wants to use it efficiently. When he throws the hammer it returns to his own hand of its own accord, any thoughts?"

"Service?"

"Go on."

"Well that's his strength plus the fact that it always returns back to him. You have to give in order to receive."

"Fair enough now Thor also had a belt of strength that when he wore his might would double. It was called Megingjord or life through will blessed with light (will blessed seeing knowing transformation)."

"The Holy Spirit, whenever he wore it he had the strength of the Collective Conscious behind him."

"Good. Now Vali the God of light and spring, he was the son of Odin and the giantess Rinda. So from seeing transformation blessed with light and knowing blessed with light (transformation of God) you get the love of God, God's purpose blessed. Now they were the Aesir or God through understanding blessed with knowing, the gods of Asgard. There are a few others to mention though. Loki, his father is said to be Bestla and he married Glut. I'll let you do that one."

"From a self through understanding wisdom, God's purpose, God you get God's purpose seeing work blessed which is married to a will of God's purpose (loving wisdom)."

"Right now Loki's second wife was called Angrboda and they had Hel, Fenris and the Midgard serpent. So from God's purpose seeing work blessed and God's light(will of knowing), self seeing the transformation of God you get the spirit through purpose, the word through light (knowing blessed with understanding)and a life blessed with transformation(will of God's knowing transformation). We'll go into more detail later."

"Ragnarok?"

"That's right. Next we have Heimdal guardian of Bilfrost the rainbow bridge of the God's that stretches between Earth and Asgard. Made of fire, water and air and destined to break at Ragnarok. First things first we'll work out what Bilfrost is."

“A self through God's purpose, the word known (seen understanding wisdom). Being a rainbow it denotes balance of the three elements Air, Spirit, Water, Intellect and Fire Imagination.”

“Good. Now Heimdal guards this so the spirit through blessed life transforms to God, God's purpose guards a self through God's purpose, the word known or the Holy Spirit as you call it. Heimdal is the gatekeeper to the Collective. Now next in line is another of Loki's wives Sigyn or?”

“God's purpose seeing work blessed is married to understanding blessing will blessed with light.”

“Good, Aegir Hler God of the sea in its more benign aspect. He was married to Ran the goddess of storms and whirlpools. So God through will blessed with spiritual knowing (God's purpose through knowing) is married to knowing God's light. And finally Getjon the goddess of agriculture who was an attendant of Frigga so the word known blessing will (will of God) is attended to by a will through wisdom (blessed seeing light). Take a rest awhile and we'll talk about the books some more.”

“Sure I won't argue with that.”

“Right spiritual negative is when you perceive God as a God of anger. The first book will be Ireland Folk Tales. Four sections followed by a section of poetry. The second book Folk Tales Too will be a collection of 20 stories of 4,000 word duration and it will have a supplement called Folk Tales Free. You'll be putting Genesis in verse in that section.”

“Right and what about the third book?”

“Folk Tales For, it will actually be Folk Tales Five as well. It will go out in two sections under two names. From power through love you get knowledge. The final two of the triad of spiritual positive will be Natural Born Sinners and Genesis A New Beginning which will be the books of wisdom and understanding.”

“So from knowledge you get wisdom and understanding.”

“Good, you are starting to get it.”

“Not really, I haven't a clue.”

“Oh well it's not important. So back we go. First I would like to talk of Valhalla, the hall of the chosen slain. Love of God, (God's purpose), spirit of God, (God's purpose), God's purpose, God, the spirits of love and purpose. Now this is the residence of Odin and when he is seated on his throne he can see all heaven and earth. He lost an eye in the pursuit of knowledge. He sacrificed it to drink from the fountain of Mimir which conveyed all wisdom. Yes his hunger for knowledge was so great that he used to send his two ravens Hugin or thought and Mumin, memory out every day and told them to report back on everything they saw. This is just a bit of back ground really. Now next we move onto the Valkyrior or choosers of the slain. They go down to battle fields to choose the slain for they need heroes for the final battle with the giants at Ragnarok. So what are the Valkyrior?”

“Love of God, God's purpose, work blessed with knowing (blessed seeing knowing)”.

“Good now your favourite,

They stand on street corners with their banners held high

It's the end of the world boy; you're all going to die

But just think for a moment maybe it's true

You're all going to die boy, what are you going to do.”

“Not bad, I quite like that. It's fast moving.”

“One of yours, after you have written it of course. Before we start it might be a good idea to have a look at Loki's children once again.”

“Sounds good to me.”

“We'll start with Fenris then. Now he was a troublesome sort of beast and so the gods tried to chain him but he broke the strongest chains as if they were nothing. Finally they sent a

messenger to the mountain spirits who made them a chain called Glepnir fashioned from six things. The beards of women, the roots of stones, the spittle of birds, the breath of fish, the noise made by the foot fall of a cat and the nerves of bears.”

“What. Am I supposed to know what they are?”

“Oh no I was just showing you the poetic turn of phrase. Now this chain was as strong as Creation itself even though to look at it, it was as smooth and soft as a silken string. The next thing to do was to get Fenris to wear it which took some doing as even though it looked just like a ribbon he suspected it to be enchanted. He would only consent if one of the God's put his hand in Fenris' mouth as a pledge that the ribbon would be removed and so Tyre volunteered. Fenris found that he could not break the chain no matter how he struggled and as the gods would not release him he bit Tyre's hand off. So what does that tell you?”

“The word through light (knowing blessed with understanding) is held by a will of God's purpose through the word (light blessed with knowing) though wisdom (blessed with knowing through) gave a hand.”

“Right. So next on the list the Midgard serpent now Odin threw the serpent into the great ocean that surrounds the Earth but it grew to such an enormous size that it surrounded the Earth. Being a serpent makes it wisdom well made out of it for it is actually the spirit of purpose. This is what encircles everything. Finally Hel, her hall was called Eluidner so the spirit through God's purpose is housed in (through) God's purpose (love blessed with transformation, light through knowing). What about this then? Hunger is her table, starvation is her knife, delay her man, slowness her maid, precipice her thresh hold, care her bed and burning anguish are the trappings of her apartment.”

“Very good, yes I like it.”

“Good and now.

They stand in their pulpits and preach heaven and hell

They talk of a second coming, looking around its just as well

But just think for a moment, maybe its true

You're all going to die boy, what are you going to do?”

“Second part by any chance?”

“That's right and leading back nicely to Ragnarok or knowing God's will, light of God's knowing seeing work. This has been called the destruction of power, the end of the world and the end of time. We'll discuss that in a little more detail later as I don't want to scare you much.”

“Too late.”

“So on with the story. The fated day will not be without warning. Three terrible winters or Fimbul winters will precede it with heavy falls of snow and severe frosts. Then three similar winters will follow with war and discord spreading all over the world. Fenris will then break his bonds and the Midgard serpent rise out of his bed and Loki released from his bonds will join the enemies of the gods. The sons of Muspelheim under the leader Surtur rise up and try to cross the Bilfrost but the bridge collapses under their weight so they direct themselves to the battle field called Vigrid. They are joined here by Fenris, the serpent Loki and the followers of the frost giants.”

Heimdal sounds the Gialler horn to assemble the gods and heroes to battle and the battle begins. Odin falls to Fenris but Vidar, Odin's son avenges him. Thor gains renown for killing the serpent but falls dead after suffocating on the venom that the serpent vomits over him. Loki and Heimdal kill each other in battle and Surtur after killing Freya torches the world and the whole universe is burned up. The Sun becomes dim, the Earth sinks in the ocean, the Stars fall from heaven and there is time no more.”

“Oh, is that it then?”

“No the Alfadur will cause a new heaven and a new Earth filled with abundance, producing fruit without labour. Wickedness and misery will be gone and the gods and men shall live happily together.”

“And they all lived happily ever after,” Mad Dog said with a laugh.

“It’s the bit before that should concern you.”

“It is?” Mad Dog said going quiet, “Why is that then?”

“Because that’s what we are doing now,” the man said with a laugh.

“I’m not even sure if I want to do it.”

“We’ll only do the spiritual side. The effects of it we’ll leave to time if that’s any help.”

“Yes, that sounds better.”

“Right then three Fimbel winters or the word blessed with life, self through God’s purpose. I’ll get you started. Perceptions of the divine it’s a repeat of the hair, head and body again.”

“Oh right, yes I can see that.”

“Good, now the next three bringing war and discord. What would that be?”

“I guess that would be the three deaths then, negative self, will and imagination.”

“Good. Fenris breaks the chain?”

“The word through light let loose. That would be the new knowledge that you get.”

“The Midgard serpent?”

“The true purpose becomes manifest.”

“Very good, the sons of Muspelheim under the leadership of Surtur rise up and try to cross the bridge but it collapses?”

“Well Muspelheim is a life of loving understanding, the word through God’s purpose, spirit through blessed life. A spiritual life led by understanding love knowing wisdom (loving knowing). So understanding leads a spiritual life. The heavier the weight the more understanding I guess. It’s an evolution of Self through God’s purpose. When the bridge collapses it means they become a Self through God’s purpose.”

“Good they move to do battle at Vigrid or love blessed a will of knowing through transformation. So that’s what they are fighting for a will of knowing. Heimdal sounds the horn Gialler which comes to life when blown.”

“Well Heimdal is the Holy Spirit. The horn means will blessed by God, God’s purpose (God’s purpose through knowing). I guess this is what it transforms you to a will of knowing.”

“Odin is slayed by Fenris but Vidar avenges him. The word is fully transformed to understanding which in turn is transformed so you evolve to a will of light or God’s knowing. Thor slays the serpent but dies on its vomit, the spirits of wisdom and knowing merge with the spirit of purpose. Loki and Heimdal kill each other or you are fully enlightened as the transformation is complete. Surtur kills Freyr and torches the place. You understand and know that you are blessed by God and this destroys all your perceptions of reality and finally a new heaven and Earth, new perceptions of reality. So put that together.”

“First you go through the three perceptions of the divine followed by the three deaths, negative self, will and imagination. You receive new knowledge and get a deeper understanding so your true purpose becomes known. You lead a more spiritual life and get to know things at an even greater depth. The spirit of knowing evolves and merges with the spirit of purpose and you understand and know that you are blessed by God and this destroys all your previous perceptions of reality and you get new ones.”

“Good, it’s the end of time because you don’t need it any more, the end of the world, well your perceptions of it and the destruction of power because now you are in the hands of God. Well that’s it for the grounding on Norse I would continue studying it though as it all adds to your faith. You did very well to cover all that ground. I will see you tonight then.”

Chapter 8

Mad Dog woke up and said his prayers. He looked out and saw a bright new day.

“Walkies,” The voice said, “How did you get on?”

“Good I think. We finished Norse though it was quite hard going.”

“Well that's the main part over. Let's go for a walk and see what we can find.”

“Sure. So which way are we going today?”

“Straight ahead and we'll start by talking a little bit about Egyptian Mythology.”

“Right, so what do you actually want to know?”

“Yes right,” the voice said, “Well the ancient Egyptians believed in a supreme being as far back as the knowledge went. They called him Ammon or the hidden one, God's life, (life seeing light) and it was from various aspects of this God that all his successors originated. Next we move onto the sun God who was called Ra. Now he had Osiris and Isis, Set and Nephthys and Osiris and Isis went onto have Horus whilst Set and Nephthys had Anubis. So what does that tell you?”

“From knowing God you get seeing understanding blessed with knowing loving understanding and blessed with understanding blessed understanding, understanding through wisdom and light through the spiritual word (spiritual wisdom blessed with understanding). From seeing understanding blessed with knowing loving understanding and blessed with understanding blessed understanding you get the spirit seeing knowing, loving understanding. From understanding through wisdom and light through the spiritual word (spiritual wisdom blessed with understanding) you get God's light, a loving self blessed with understanding.”

“Some legends put Anubis as the son of Osiris and Nephthys but I wouldn't worry too much about it. I would recommend you take a look at the story of Osiris and Isis in your own time though.”

“What is that it?”

“Yes we don't have to go into too much detail really as it's just a grounding. They all say the same underneath. So anyway I thought we might try some Sushi if you're hungry.”

“Sorry?”

“Understanding love, spiritual understanding blessed. Japan. Do you feel up to travelling?”

“Sure,” Mad Dog said with a laugh, “I'll get my coat.”

“Seven gods of good luck, Bishamon, the God of war and wealth, Daikoku, the God of wealth, Fukurokuyu, the God of good luck, Hotei another God of good luck and the wisdom of being content, Jurojin, Ebisu and Benten. They all come under the name of Shichi Fukujin or spiritual understanding blesses spiritual will, blessed with the word loving work (loving blessing) blesses light. Which is?”

“It sounds like an enlightened Soul with a purpose to serve to me.”

“We'll see. Bishamon or a self blessed with spiritual understanding, God's life seeing light. What would that be?”

“It sounds like the spirit of purpose to me, spiritual understanding would be understanding of your purpose and God's life seeing light would be a life of service.”

“Good, Daikoku then, transformation of God's blessed work seeing work of love?”

“The spirit of life, God's blessed work seeing work of love would be a spiritual life.”

“Right, Fukurokuyu, the word, loving work, loving knowing seeing work, love blesses love. You might find that quite easy.”

“The spirit of love by any chance?”

“Sure is a lot of love, Hotei, spirit seeing wisdom through blessing?”

“I would think that would be the spirit of understanding because that is the spirit that sees wisdom when they merge at the blessing.”

“Okay, Jurojin or blessed with loving knowing seeing blessing with blessed light. Sounds quite tricky but there's not many left.”

“I think it's the spirit of knowing, blessed with loving knowing sort of speaks for itself.”

“Fair enough, Ebisu or (through) self blessed understanding love?”

“I would say that it is the spirit of discernment for you have to be discerning to understanding love.”

“Good so finally Benten or self through light, wisdom through light. I'll leave you a difficult one to finish off with.”

“Well weighing up the pros and cons and pairing off one against another in a logical way I have come to the conclusion that it has to be wisdom.”

“Fair enough, next we'll move on to the five wisdom Buddhas. Buddha first though. It stands for self of love transformed (transformed by the spirit of God). The five collectively were called Go-chi Nyorai or will seeing spiritual will blessed, light blessed seeing (knowing) God's blessing. What does that sound like to you?”

“It sounds like when I met my Maker. Will seeing spiritual will would be the slab of mist and seeing God's blessing would be when I left my body and the light that saw it would be me I suppose.”

“Good. Now the five were Yokushi-Nyorai or blessed seeing work loving spiritual understanding blesses light (blessed seeing (knowing) God's blessing). Taho or wisdom of God's spirit seeing, Dainichi or transformation of God (blessed with light) blessed by spiritual will blessed. Ashuku-Nyorai or God's spiritual understanding, loving work, loving light blessed with seeing knowing God's blessing and finally Shaka or spiritual understanding of God, work of God.”

“They sound like different aspects of the transformation. The first would be the shift in consciousness, the second seeing God's spirit, the third the transformation itself, the fourth would be the Holy Spirit and the fifth the understanding you get from the transformation.”

“Good. Now in Sanskrit the five wisdom Buddhas are Bhaishajya or self, spirit of God blessed by spiritual understanding of God's blessing (blessed by God), Amida or God's life blessed by the transformation of God. Vairocana or the love of God blessed with knowing seeing will of God, light of God. Akshobhya Adarsanajnana or God's work, spiritual understanding seeing self, spirit blessed by God. God's transformation to God's knowing, understanding God's light, God blessed by light, God's light, God. And finally Shakyomuni or spiritual understanding of God's work blessed seeing life of loving light blessed.”

“What. What am I supposed to do with that lot?”

“Nothing the comparisons between them are easy to make. I was just showing you how the word holds true where ever it goes. I would like to take a look at one of those names again though.”

“Sure go ahead if you want. I'll keep myself busy whilst you are doing it.”

“Funny, so guess which one it is.”

“Knowing you it's that tongue twister.”

“Akshobhya Adarsanajnana. Yes you are right. Just the second part though. God's transformation to God's knowing, what does that sound like to you?”

“I'm not sure.”

“Step 1 Understanding God's light. Step 2 God blessed by light. Step 3 God's light and Step 4 God. Any help?”

“The transformation, steps to enlightenment. I'm not sure about Step 2 though.”

“God blessed by light you mean. It's the activation of the sleeping conscious. Right we won't go into any more detail. Next we'll move to Papua New Guinea.”

“We certainly travel. I've never been there before.”

“One of many places I'll bet. Now on the island of Nehan before the advent of people lived the mother of many, the Great Mother Timbehes. She lived in Hohou the place of sleep and though she had food she wanted children. Anyway she got a banana and I won't go into too

much detail to save a Catholic boy like yourself embarrassment but she became pregnant and had a son called Bangar. She did the same trick later and had another son called Lean. Well she did it a third time and had a daughter called Sisianlik. So what does that tell you?"

"She liked bananas."

"Funny. Put it all together and you'll be surprised."

"In the spirit seeing spirit seeing love lives wisdom blessed with life and a self and spirit through understanding from which you get a self of God's light, will of God's knowing, God's purpose through God's light and understanding blessed by understanding blessed God's light, God's purpose blessed by light."

"Good now think of Hohou as Noah and that should make it easier."

"Yes I can see that. Bangar would be Ham then as a self of God's light is the same as the spirit of God's life. Shem would be Lean. God's purpose being spiritual understanding and God's light would now be life and Japeth blessed with God's word through spiritual wisdom or understanding blessed by God's light."

"Good we'll turn back and by the time you get home you should be pretty hungry."

"Sure, so what's next on the agenda?"

"Persia. Right the ancient Persian's religion was derived from the Zendavesta the sacred book of the people. Mind through light transformed by God's love through understanding the wisdom of God. They believe in the existence of a supreme being who created two mighty beings imparting some of his nature on them. One was Ormuzd who was faithful and Ahriman who rebelled and who brought evil into the world. What does that tell you?"

"Well Ormuzd stands for seeing knowing life a loving mind transforms and Ahriman God's spiritual knowing blesses life of God's light though I can't see the connection with good and evil."

"Well would you say that the first one is God's self through God's purpose?"

"Well yes a knowing mind would be God's self and a loving one God's purpose."

"Right and the second one could that be will of God's blessed light?"

"Yes, er so?"

"Cain and Abel, right then now the wise men were called magi or life of God's will blessed and Persia was originally called Pars or the word of God knowing understanding. Strike another of you list."

"We're certainly getting through these quickly."

"I'm really only touching on them to show you the similarities. You'll have to look a lot deeper yourself but you'll have plenty of time to do it."

"Fair enough."

"So next we have Hindu or the spirit blessed with light transformed by love. Now the religion of the Hindu's was founded on the Vedas or love through transformation to God's understanding. They believed in a supreme God called Brahma but his attributes are represented by three powers that have been deified."

"Sorry?"

"Turned into Gods, now the powers are Creation, Preservation and Destruction (Regeneration). The triad is called Trimurti and the powers are Brahma, Vishnu and Siva. So wisdom knowing blessed life (love knowing wisdom blessed) is composed of a self that knows God's spirit, life of God, love blessing spiritual understanding (light of love) and understanding blessed with the love of God. Now they also had minor gods Indra the God of heaven or blessed with light transformation knowing God. Agni the God of fire or God's will (light blessed) Yama the God of the infernal regions or blessed by God, life of God and Surya the God of the Sun or understanding loving knowing blessed by God. Finally we have Juggernaut or blessed with loving will (will through knowing light) God's loving wisdom. Back to Vishnu now to finish off, to protect the world he descends to Earth in different

incarnations, the descents being called Avatars. The first was Matsya the fish who came down to preserve Manu the ancestor of the human race during a universal deluge. Well he comes down ten times in all but I won't go into details as you can do that at your leisure. I recommend that you do though as you'll find it fulfilling. I'm just sorry that I haven't the time to pay it the respect it deserves. Anyway you're home now so what are you having to eat?"

"I'm not that hungry to tell you the truth I'll just settle for a tin of rice."

"Idle git well if that's the case I'll carry on as you eat."

"Sure," Mad Dog said sitting down with the tin he had just opened.

"Right so next we'll move to Africa, the Bambora people of Mali to be precise. Now in the beginning was the great empty Fu. Then there was the awakening of Glan. Now this movement went in two directions one was breath Zo Nyami and the voice Yo. Now the action of the voice created the effect of thinking Tasi. It also created vibration, the essence of the voice which is Yereyereli. There is also Nugu which is substance and contains Air Yalan, Wind Fayan, Water Sani, Fire Yeren and Earth Yelengu. Now these elements work on one another because of Mana. That is the Creation myth so what do you think of it?"

"Well its good isn't it? I don't think I would have a hope in hells chance of picking my way through it."

"We'll take it one step at a time then. You'll soon pick it up."

"Well I got as far as in the beginning was the word, Fu word of love."

"The great void so what about Glan then?"

"Will of God's purpose (God's light), would that be light?"

"Good. Now this light went in two directions, Zo Nyami or breath and Yo or the voice."

"Well the first one breath I suppose would be life. Mind seeing light blessed by God's life blessed. Light would be knowledge the mind's life and the voice or blessed with seeing would be the understanding of the knowledge."

"How would that fit in with Tasi?"

"Wisdom of God's understanding blessed. Well that would be an effect. Breath would be the wisdom the voice the understanding. Not Cain and Abel but Cain and Seth."

"You're well on track it just wants closing. Why would its effect be thinking as opposed to its cause?"

"You have to be able to understand before you can think. It's the spirit of discernment."

"Good, and the essence of the voice, the vibration Yereyereli what do you make of that?"

"Blessed through knowing and blessed through knowing through God's purpose blessed. It's the spirit of knowing. The essence of understanding knows."

"Good, so put them together and see what you get."

"In the beginning was the spirit of love and it created the spirit of purpose with the spirits of wisdom, understanding, discernment, life and knowing."

"Okay. Now Nugu, the substance, how would that fit in?"

"Light of love, will of love. I'm not sure."

"Think of as above so below."

"Spiritual?"

"Go on."

"Are these the realms of the spiritual world and Nugu would be the self of purpose?"

"Good, right substance, first of all Mana, life of God, light of God. All the elements interact around it in a concentric spiral. The five elements spiral out of it like a five legged spider."

"Oh right, and they all interact with each other because of Mana."

"So now we'll work out what the elements are and put it together, Air or Yalan, blessed by God, God's purpose, God's light."

"That sounds like the spirit of life."

"Next Wind or Fayan?"

“The word of God blessed by God's light. That would be wisdom.”
 “Good, so Water or Sani?”
 “Understanding God's light blessed that would be understanding.”
 “Right, next we move to Fire and that's called Yeren?”
 “Blessed through knowing through light that would be knowing.”
 “Finally Earth or Yelengu?”
 “Blessed through God's purpose through light (will of love), that would be the spirit of love.”
 “So putting them together?”
 “The spirits of life, wisdom, understanding, knowing and love all interact with each other with their centre a spiritual life as their catalyst.”
 “Good. We'll finish of with Chinese that should do you for today.”
 “Sound.”
 “Ma Wang, king of the horses. Now in the Book of Rites he is the name of the celestial horse of Fang and is represented as a three faced God. Ma Tsu, the ancestor of horses. Hsien Mu, the first breeder of horses and Ma She the first riding master. He is sometimes portrayed as a king accompanied by his officers under the name of Ssu-Ma Shen the great spiritual cavalier. In other guises he is portrayed with a dragon, a pheonix and a crane, any thoughts?”
 “He likes horses.”
 “Right, Fang what does that mean?”
 “The word, God's light will. That doesn't sound right.”
 “It should read the word, will of God's light. You move the G to before the an, this also happens with ing, eng, ong and ung.”
 “Oh right I'll bare that in mind. So the word, will of God's light and Ma Wang was a horse. A life of God, loving will of God's light. Being a horse I suppose he would be a channel to the divine so a life of God and loving will of God's light will get you to the word.”
 “In one sense but by the same logic you will get it from the word.”
 “Are we talking about Noah again?”
 “We'll have a look at his three aspects and see what they say.”
 “Well Ma Tsu would be life of God's wisdom understanding love. That would be Japeth. Hsien Mu would be spiritual understanding blessed through light, life of love. That would be Shem and Ma She, life of God, spiritual understanding through.”
 “Good, Ssu-Ma Shen?”
 “Ma, life of God would be Ham, Shen, spiritual understanding through light would be Japeth and Ssu would be your understanding, understanding love or Shem.”
 “Good, dragon, crane and phoenix. Wisdom, longevity and I'll leave you the Phoenix.”
 “Rebirth I suppose as it rose from the ashes. It stands for the spiritual word seen through light blessed with insight. So that is what rises after all of your perceptions have fallen or got burned.”
 “They all accompany life after the transformation. Take a rest and then we'll finish off.”

Chapter 9

“Now to finish off I would like to take a Journey to the West.”

“Oh, I thought we were sticking with China.”

“That’s what it's called. Now the story centres around Sun Hau-Tzu who was born after a magic stone on the Mountain of Flowers and Fruit ripened and split open. So understanding loving light, the spirit of God's love, wisdom and a mind of love is?”

“The self of understanding.”

“Right, now the Jade Emperor made him the king of the monkeys for he was a fit companion for the animals of the mountain and he travelled for a while in search of knowledge. On his return he found that his fellow monkeys had been troubled by an evil spirit which he disposed off. He then approached the Dragon King Ao Kuang for a magic weapon and received an iron rod. So who was Ao Kuang?”

“God seeing work of love, will of God's light, that would be a will of wisdom emphasised by the fact he was the dragon king.”

“And the iron rod?”

“A strong faith, are we talking about the mergence? The evil spirit denoting the Physical Will.”

“Good. Now he used this faith to bad cause and was summoned before the Jade Emperor who was called Yu Huang or?”

“Blessed with love, the spirit of love, will of God's light. Would that be the Holy Spirit?”

“Good. He was then made Chief Groom to the celestial stables but considered it too inferior and so returned home and laid siege to the armies of heaven declaring himself Great Sage and their equal. To appease him he was made Guardian of the Celestial Peaches. Any thought on that?”

“Would the groom be the tender of the divine channels meaning that he was getting access to them?”

“That’s right, now what about the Great Sage?”

“A little spiritual pride he thought that he was a God but in the old sense of the word.”

“The Guardian of the Celestial Peaches, what would you make of that?”

“What were the peaches?”

“Well eating them would make him immortal so it's more what they did.”

“He thought that he was immortal but that would have been more of an effect from when he left his body and thought he was God I suppose.”

“Now angry at not being invited to the banquet of the peaches given by Wang Mu he ate them and all the other food whilst the guests were asleep. This made him the target of the anger of the gods in heaven and they tried to catch him. He was caught when a magic ring was thrown at him that encircled his head whilst the celestial dog T'ien Kou bit him and held him until he was over powered.”

“Would eating the peaches be his shift in consciousness and the ring the by-product of it? The dog would be wisdom blessed through light, work seeing love, a spiritual life.”

“Good. He was sentenced to death but now being immortal it proved a waste of time so Buddha asked him what he wanted most and he said to be supreme ruler of the Universe. Buddha agreed to surrender his position if the monkey could prove himself by leaping beyond Buddha's reach. The monkey soared into space to the edge of the Universe and to prove he had done it signed his name on the boundary. He got back to find he had signed his name on Buddha's hand. What was that saying?”

“He got rid of his pride by finding out that all he knew was very little compared with the mind of God.”

“ Yes, but it also was saying that where ever you go you are within the reach of the divine and this had the effect of subduing your pride.”

“Oh right, yes.”

“He then agreed to act as guide to Hsuan Tsang on a perilous mission to bring the scriptures back to China. The Jade Emperor gave Hsuan Tsang a white horse and they set off on their journey.”

“Hsuan Tsang would be spiritual understanding (love of God's light), wisdom understood (will of God's light) and by the fact it has a white horse that would be the spirit of understanding.”

“That’s right. So they went on many adventures. I'll go over a few and see what you make of them. Hsuan Tsang lost his robe to the black bear spirit but with monkey's help got it back.”

“Would the bear be symbolic of possessiveness?”

“Go on.”

“Well more materialistic. The spirit of understanding lost its robe or saintliness because the new opportunities that went with the state of mind opened him up to temptation.”

“Good though explain a little more about new opportunities so I can make sure you have the full picture.”

“With a positive mind things go well. You are opened up to a world of new opportunities as you have the strength of mind to do anything you want to do. You haven't the fear of failure any more because that died when you did.”

“Good, next they encountered Chu Pa Chia, the pig spirit who reformed and joined them.”

“Spiritual will of love, word of God, spiritual will blessed by God's blessing. Would that be the spirit of life?”

“Yes. Then they met the giant Sha who also reformed and joined them.”

“He was the fish monster wasn't he?” Mad Dog said out of the blue much to the voice's surprise.

“Yes, however did you know that?”

“I saw it on the T.V. when I was a kid. It didn't really sink in till you mentioned the pig.”

“Right so you'll know what it is then.”

“Sha would be spiritual understanding of God which is wisdom emphasised by the fact he was a fish.”

“Good, so he's got the spirits of understanding, wisdom and life. Does that tally with anything else we've done?”

“Peredur.”

“Got it well later on Hsuan Tsang is captured by the white bone lady and had to be rescued any thoughts on that?”

“Bone lady I haven't a clue unless it's something to do with witchcraft.”

“Good guess. White being symbolic of the occult and the bone lady witchcraft so by capturing Hsuan Tsang it meant he started dabbling in witchcraft though not in the sense of flying on brooms it's more to do with clairvoyance.”

“He developed second sight. So he didn't go around turning people into toads then?”

“No,” the voice said with a laugh, “Reading runes, dream interpretation that sort of thing, it's a spiritual gift.”

“Oh right.”

“They were caught again and had to be rescued by Monkey. He did this by stealing the treasures from the two demons that had caught them. The treasures originally belonged to Lao Tzu any thoughts?”

“God’s purpose, God seeing wisdom, mind of love would this be the activation of the sleeping conscious?”

“And the two demons?” the voice said not answering him.

“Pride and anger.”

“Good, emotional as opposed to spiritual. Next the King of Wuchi who had been murdered by a lion had to be restored to life and given his kingdom back.”

“Loving love (spiritual will blessed). What was the lion symbolic of?”

“Strength brought about through aggression or anger.”

“It sounds the same as the last one, activation of the sleeping conscious.”

“In a way it's the activation of the spirit of purpose another aspect of the sleeping conscious, the first being the self.”

“Right, makes sense.”

“Monkey meets his match against the red boy demon and has to call on Kuan Yin to save Hsuan Tsang any thought on that?”

“Work of love, God's light blessed with blessed light. I don't know how it fits in really.”

“It was originally called Avolokitevara if that's any help?”

“What. Right then, God's love seeing God's purpose seeing work blessed with wisdom through love of God knowing God. Spiritual anger, the red boy demon must be the negative spiritual will.”

“Good. They defeat a monster that turns into a carp, any thoughts?”

“Will of God knowing the word, the spirit of knowing.”

“And another that turned out to be an ox on which the philosopher Lao Tzu used to travel.”

“Well ox would be the spirit of discernment. It would mean seeing insight.”

“In another he meets his reflection, equal to him in every way and only the Buddha can determine which one is the impostor.”

“I'm not sure about that. I don't think I've been through that yet.”

“Oh you have. Remember that you are your imagination.”

“That inner body thing.”

“That's right. Now reaching little thunder mountain they are captured by a false Buddha but rescued when the Jade Emperor sends the spirits of 28 lunar mansions to save them.”

“Well that would be the God of anger though I thought he had already defeated it.”

“Divine anger as opposed to spiritual, spiritual is the man in heaven and divine is indignation at the imbalance in the world.”

“Oh right.”

“Spirits of the 28 mansions?”

“The Collective Conscious.”

“Right, they went to cross Persimmon Mountain but it was covered in rotten fruit and so the pig had to eat his way through it?”

“Well Persimmon stands for the word through knowing, understanding blesses life (life seeing light) though I can't see how the spirit of life fits in.”

“Think about it. It's more to do with the will of love side through the effect of a spiritual life.”

“Would the fruit be the fruit of the word and by the fact that it was rotten it hasn't been tasted in a long time.”

“Yes in a way and the will of love?”

“With God as love as opposed to anger it opens up all that old knowledge to him.”

“Good. Then Hsuan Tsang was lured into a trap by the seven spider women. When monkey came to his aid the spider women enlisted the help of a Taoist magician. His magic proved too powerful until the old lady Li told monkey to seek the help of a Hindu deity who rescued Hsuan Tsang and his companions.”

“Seven spider women is there any significance in that?”

“Well you tell me. What does it stand for?”

““I don't know. I can't see anything. If it was the seven deadly sins he must have already defeated them to get to that stage.”

“I'll give you it and then you simplify it.”

“Er sure.”

“Well the seven spiders aided by a Taoist would be understanding through love and light, understanding the word blessed by transformation through knowing understanding which is aided by the wisdom of God seeing blessing understanding wisdom.”

“It’s talking about a deeper understanding isn’t it? Blessed understanding.”

“Good. Hsuan Tsang gets kidnapped by demons posing as Sedan Chair Carriers and the Buddha himself has to come to his rescue.”

“I think that the Sedan Chair would be the new understanding that carries you though I'm not sure about the rest.”

“A down side to this understanding perhaps?”

“A rebalancing of perceptions?”

“Go on.”

“Well all the old ones go out the window and this causes a negative reaction that has to be balanced by Buddha.”

“Buddha being?”

“The God within.”

“Hsuan Tsang is trapped in a fathomless cavern when he is tricked by an evil spirit pretending to be a damsel in distress. Although monkey sees through her disguise it’s too late to save the monk. He enlists the help of King Li of the Cloud Tower Palace whose officers rescue the monk.”

“Well Li would be God's purpose blessed and he was King of the Cloud Tower Palace so that would be the next step.”

“And?”

“Well it's something ruled by God's purpose blessed.”

“Why don't you try it from another angle? What is a will of understanding without purpose?”

“Oh, trapped in a bottomless cavern as it has no direction to channel it. I don't know about the demon disguised as a woman though.”

“Or the Tower, just to illustrate the story really, the Tower might represent a higher spiritual purpose but it’s not really relevant. Right so finally they were entertained by a wealthy man who shortly afterwards is murdered and robbed and they get accused of the crime. Monkey realises that it was a plot hatched by the man's wife and raises him from the dead and the conspiracy is revealed. What about that?”

“Is that the Resurrection you were talking about?”

“Good. So after spending 14 years and crossing nine kingdoms they finally reached their destination India and obtained the sacred scriptures. They return to Chang the capital of China and present the 5048 volumes to the T'ang Emperor T'ai T'sung who orders them to be copied and distributed around the Empire. Well that completes my side. It's getting late now we'll call it a day so we can make an early start tomorrow.”

“Fair enough I'll see you in the morning then.”

Mad Dog settled down to get ready for sleep and said his prayers. He fell quickly and found himself back in the amphitheatre face to face with the man who looked exactly like Mad Dog,

“Well looks like you are nearly ready,” the man said greeting him.

“So what's next then?”

“The final triad of books the divine, called The 3 R's. The Reawakening, the Re-interpretation and the Resurrection, the first one will be looking at Genesis, the second going around the world and the third will be the reworking of the Legend of Peredur.”

“I'll look forward to it.”

“You’ll enjoy it. The whole collection will be called 'The Tree of Life-The Collective Thoughts of a Schizophrenic. So let's talk about the Resurrection.”

“The Legend of Peredur?”

“No, the actual Resurrection.”

“Sorry?”

“When I come to life again.”

“You? I thought it was me.”

“I know,” he said with a laugh, “But I’m afraid it’s me not you.”

“Er so where does that leave me?”

“Here,” the man said and disappeared.

Mad Dog found himself back in the carnage. People being torn limb from limb and still the strange eerie silence. The crowds bayed louder at the spectacle, the macabre mutilation exciting them well past fever pitch. Fear gripped him as a large lioness came closer towards him. He stood there froze in time and motion and waited for his impending doom. Closer it got and he resigned himself to the fact that he would soon be no more. He felt pain, mind numbing pain as his shoulder was ripped into from behind by another lion. He had not even seen it coming as all his sense had been numbed by the fear of the oncoming lioness. He fell to the floor and felt another bite and then he was no more.

Resurrection

A seven thousand line upgrading of the Legend of Peredur on which the Legend of the Grail was based.

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

Come gather round oh Celtic men and heed the words that leave my pen,
I'll tell a tale that questions when, what is now and what was then.
So bide with me and learn to grow to a tale of wonder you already know,
a tale of Knights where blood doth flow or modern life with its neon glow.

List awhile if you have the time and I'll try and put it into rhyme
and though my motives are sublime sometimes the scanning might not chime.
A funny story it is true, about a man that could be you
who struggled hard with comforts few unknowing he was guided through.

It was a simple life that he liked to lead his only want was his need
So on simple meals he would gladly feed although occasionally he took the weed.
The Story begins in a forest dense with the man waking up devoid of sense
his dream had left him very tense and took his memory as recompense.

He looked around the vibrant flora and from behind a bush he saw an aura,
its golden glow meant he couldn't be surer even though it left his senses poorer.
As he looked on the aura lifted and the sight he saw meant he was gifted
for up from the foliage a Chalice lifted, perceptions of reality had truly shifted.

It was encompassed in a golden glow and looked out of place like Summer Snow
and inside the man a fear did grow for now reality had become his foe.
He stared awhile as it held his gaze in fact it left him in a daze
he hoped his madness was just a phase as he looked into the vibrant haze.

Then 3 men appeared in Celtic gear and this only added to his fear,
he wondered if his death was near for their motives were not clear.
They studied him for quite a while and took him for a man of guile
and because his motives were not vile I guessed they must have liked his style.

They came over in a friendly way and the man kept his fear at bay
by telling himself that he must be fey though that fell down when one did say;

Owain: Oh mortal man come bide with us we'll take you on a quest,
to a world of opportunity and a vocation truly blessed.
To face your fears, destroy your doubts and finally find your Self
and walk forth in divinity forsaking material wealth.

Through perilous swamps and mountains high you'll journey for the Light
meeting Demons on the way who will give you quite a fright
but with your faith and strength of mind you'll quickly find the way
so come forth now oh Peredur and tell us what you say?

Narrator: Is this some joke, a cruel jest or has madness finally come out best
with thoughts of insanity going west has he finally reached the cuckoo's nest?
The man stood there in quite a haze and as his memory was still a daze
to work this out would be a maze so he kept quiet as silence pays

Owain: Speak to us oh mortal man tell us what's on your mind
fear us not, we mean no harm our motives are just kind
we are here to give you destiny and take you out of Hell
so use your voice, have no dread, we're here to do you well.

Peredur: You're not here, this is not real my senses' do deceive
go away, leave this place, don't expect me to believe.
You come here in your fancy dress to take me for a fool
but that's not nice, it isn't right, you shouldn't be so cruel.

Owain: Owain's the name so let's speak plain I'm here to help your cause
now this reality you talk of, well I'm afraid it's took a pause.
Don't be daft, keep an open mind and you'll not find this demanding
see me now and know me thus for I am your understanding.

Peredur: What is it you want from me, I have nothing to give
all I have is what you see for that is how I live.
You talk of quests and divinity that means nothing to me
life's not thus, just look around, this is reality.

Owain: Reality is a state of mind built on imagination
mark that well and heed these words we're going on vacation.
You need a rest deluded one to help you with your sanity,
just look around see for yourself all this is just vanity.

Self consciousness is what you have, you can't see past the shell,
you gauge yourself by what you own now to your Soul that's hell,
so take time out and look within, give your life some meaning
see me now for what I am and take a Spiritual leaning.

Peredur: I have no wealth to gauge myself though I can see your point
I look around this World today and see it's badly out of joint,
people starve or go without whilst others have to diet
it's sure not fair I must admit though I'm not one to start a riot.

Owain: That is good oh child of God for war is not your quest
look within and not without for Mother knows what's best.
The world today is in a mess of that there is no doubt
but anger's not the answer for all it does is shout

No listen now and heed these words my purpose is to aid,
I've come to help expand your mind so fear of death must fade.
Take strong heart and have your faith and you will never fail
for now you have your destiny, you've seen the Holy Grail.

Peredur: So what's it for, life I mean what's it all about?
You're born, you live and then you die of that I have no doubt.
I mean let's be honest, look around it has no real intention
Heaven, Hell, God as well they're just man's invention.

Owain: Now Peredur look beyond, try and use that power
see life now for what it is don't let the milk go sour,
life is here for mental growth to find the Ultimate Truth
for once you know time will go, you'll have Eternal Youth.

So think again, reassess, it's not a race for rats
materialism is not for you so leave that for the prats.
Find your balance from within and truly know thy Self,
never take more than you need it nulls your Spiritual health.

Keep that in mind, grow in strength and walk in cleansing Light
for the cycle that you call life is actually just night,
so come on out of ignorance, purify your Soul
then I'll expand your consciousness with divinity as your goal.

You'll walk in love and bask in Light, you'll be a man of God,
you'll see life then for what it is, your faith will be your rod.

Peredur: Faith you say, that's not my way for seeing is believing,
I cannot put my trust in words sometimes they are deceiving.
People use them all the time to try and make things viable.
To justify their shallow views they'll make the Scriptures liable

Owain: You speak in truth I must admit though never lose your yearning
for I am here to give you hope and make you more discerning.
I'll show you how to look beyond and read between the line
and with the spirit I possess you'll recognise each sign.

Cross reference knowledge that you have, you'll soon get the truth
for the quest, the Grail you seek might sometimes seem aloof
But with patience and with fortitude you'll soon cut through the chaff
and by rational deduction you'll find each and every gaffe.

Peredur: So what's this quest of which you speak is it the Holy Grail
and if it is and I take it up what happens if I fail?
You speak of Demons, perilous swamps, what might become of me?
Tell me now, be up front, don't say wait and see.

Owain: Don't talk like that now Peredur who said that you would lose,
think about it, have this faith we're fussy who we choose.
It won't be easy, I'll admit, you have to fight to grow
for only by experience do you truly start to know.

The Demons that you have to fight come only from within
and the perilous swamp that you have to cross is called Original Sin,
The Mountains that you have to climb are really just your fears
but take heart now for we'll be there to dry up any tears.

So what do you say, bide with us and we'll get the Holy Grail
no more talk of losing though for we don't intend to fail.
Take the Grail and you'll not regret for your life will have new zest,
pick up the gauntlet, what do you say, are we going on a quest?

Narrator: Peredur was just about to have his say
but the scene shifted to a Cavern grey
and to a heavy odour that reeked decay,
Peredur thought it might be time to pray.

He looked around but there was no comfort there,
first it was loneliness then despair
and when a heavy mist descended he ought to beware,
although he'd already gathered he should take care.

A shape appeared from out of this dark
with pointed ears and features stark,
Peredur knew that this was no lark
This Demon held the Devil's mark.

Belphegor: Oh foolish child you mortal trash, you dare to take me on
don't look to God to save you now for He is just a con.
The Path of Light, don't make me laugh, you'll never make the grade,
do you know what it involves, the sacrifices made?

Seriously, let it go, do you really want the Grail,
think about it give it up what happens if you fail?
They'll say you won't but then they would, they're only saying that
to them you see you're just a mortal and that equates with prat.

Peredur: What do you mean the Path of Light, what is this anyway?
You come to me with threatening words, what am I supposed to say?
The sacrifices that you speak, how do I know that's not a lie?
All I know is with the Grail I will never die.

Narrator: On seeing Peredur was calm it left the Demon in alarm
for now it nulled the threat of harm he had to use his charm.
So he tried a different tact and gave to Peredur a cold hard fact
hoping that his fortitude lacked he offered him a pact.

Belphegor: The Path of Light is a lonely path that takes a lot of grind.
Intensive study, self analysis, your life is just a bind.
The sacrifice that you make is that life is not your own,
a life of service to the Divine and on bigotry it's sown.

The little thanks you get from it will fill you full of pain
and all that work and all that strife will be all in vain.
Think it through, you'll see my point, what will it bring to you,
constant work and in ignorance you'll strive without a clue.

Eternal life, alright it can but that's not life as such
for that life is not your own, the price to pay too much.
He's no friend, think about it, your life to Him's no loss,
let's be honest no real father leaves his son upon a cross.

Now Peredur I mean you well, I'm not here to give you hassle
so bide with me, I'll set you free so you can be my vassal.
Take the power that I offer and things will go your way
and I'll protect you from the stress so come on what do you say?

Peredur: I hear the words that you are saying and maybe they are true
but hard work does not bother me, it's not a thing I rue.
Loneliness is no ordeal as I've had it all my life
so all those things you mentioned don't seem to me like strife.

Belphegor: Well maybe not at present but what when things get hot?
A life of Divine nonsense is just a path to rot.
You think that you've been lonely just you wait and see
your plight till now's been nothing, a blood meal to a flea

And as for working hard, well that takes on real intent,
years of constant turmoil never ceasing to relent.
You'll think you have found the Grail just to see it fall from grace
it's just a waste of time as it has no real face.

So hear my words and take them in it's not a job to take
and to even give it credence would be a bad mistake.
There's too much toil involved and for little in return,
the Path of Light won't guide you, all it will do it burn.

Peredur: Maybe you are right but I have seen the Holy Grail
and with the men as guides they say I'll never fail.
Sure they might be lying but that's a chance I have to take,
I'll need to mull it over, a tricky choice to make.

Now you mentioned having power, what was all that about,
what have you to offer to give your words some clout?

Belphegor: The power that I have comes through me from my boss
he'll give your life real substance and put on loads of gloss.
You'll never want for anything of that you can be sure
for if you follow this guy you will never end up poor.

You just sit back awhile and it will come to you,
with peace of mind like that you never need feel blue.
So instead of chasing Rainbows relax and take a chair
life works for you then, no trouble no despair.

Peredur: The power that you talk about could lead me into strife
sitting on my bum all day to me that isn't life.
Where's the challenge, where's the cause, where's the fun in that?
With what you have to offer I'm sure to end up fat.

Belphegor: What do you need a challenge for, you might end up in harm,
take life now for what it is, a tranquil sea of calm,
never rock the boat I say as it might just tip you out,
take it easy, just relax for that's what life's about.

You're looking for a cause you say well what's the point of that?
Fighting others battles who are too scared to hold the bat.
Why should you suffer, they'll still think you're the fool
fighting for their Crown though they'll still hold the jewel.

You're looking for some fun you say well I know what you're saying
though you won't find it in the Light it's more to do with praying.
You'll have no fun and I'll tell you why, God will see to that.
Oh and as for your last point what's wrong with being fat.

Peredur: The way you put it I'll admit is tempting to my mind
to walk the path that you are on doesn't seem a bind,
a carefree life without the stress it sure does sound appealing,
no danger there to bother me no fear that I'll be feeling

But what about stagnation as I'm a restless sort of bloke,
I can't be sitting idle as my arteries would choke.
I do need some ambition something to keep me sane,
for a life without direction they say is quite a pain.

Belphegor: Stagnate you say, of course you won't whoever told you that?
Them I bet, those lying gits, that's a load of crap.
Restlessness is a state of mind that quickly goes away,
believe me when I tell you that, hear the words I say.

Stagnation is just a word they use to get you out to work
and while you toil they'll reap reward for the labour they did shirk.
Look around, you'll see I'm right, they're living off your sweat,
leave them to it, that's what I say, take what you can get.

Ambition, now that's a lame excuse to get you out of bed,
you've got no chance, forget about it it's better you were dead.
Seriously it's a loaded gun, there's no hope you can win
and besides in your God's eyes ambition is a sin.

Direction huh, don't make me laugh you're just wasting your breath
life is just a circle that ends up in your death.
See the signs, they're all around, so enjoy life while you can
look to yourself, forget the rest remember you're the man.

Don't talk to me of things like that they're just Man's own invention
to keep you in your little place for that was their intention.

Peredur: I see your point, what you say is true but that's the world today,
they live life now for what they can, never heard of equal pay.
They'll con you blind soon as look at you I guess that is their greed
and all the toil you give to them will be paid by just your need.

That's not ambition in the sense I mean, I won't go down that path.
No leave them to it you are right they must be having a laugh.
The Grail though it is different it's worthy to obtain
for when I have it then I'll know it was worth the pain.

I crave no money or no fame to me they're just a waste
all that wealth and power will never be to my taste.
No what I want transcends all that I'm after inner peace,
that's ambition, that's my drive that my Golden Fleece.

Belphegor: Very noble I'll admit but have you ever thought it through?
Hunting high and low for it they won't even leave a clue.
Suffering you'll have your fill and for very little gain,
a metal cup that carries wine is it really worth the pain?

Let's be honest if it was easy they would have got it for themselves,
they'll tell you they are Angels well to me they're more like Elves.
So think hard, use your logic is it really worth the strife,
it's just a drinking vessel is it really worth your life?

Peredur: It's more than just a goblet, it's a vibrant state of mind
that tells you all is well and repays you back in kind.
It gives you hope and freedom and purpose to your being
and frees you from your vanity the essence of your seeing.

Belphegor: Well if they tell you that then maybe it is true
but still you haven't answered why'd they pick on you?
You see to me that sounds suspicious did you never question why?
How come you get lumbered, are they too afraid to die?

Peredur: Now if I was suspicious I would have had that thought instead
but look at it with logic let's be honest they are dead.
I can tell just by looking they haven't been here for a while
and as to why they picked on me could it be they liked my style?

Belphegor: Now no need for flippancy maybe they too took the test
and looking at the outcome you can tell what came out best.
So maybe you should rethink with this thought inside your head
if getting this Grail's so easy how is it they are dead?

Peredur: I never said it would be easy, do you really think me vain?
I know there'll be great hardships, some suffering loads of pain
but surely it will be worth it when I hold the Grail up high
content in my existence knowing I will never die.

Belphegor: Sure it sounds all hunky dory and you'll get your comfort there
though I don't want to be a wet blanket but it will end up in despair.
I would hate to see you suffer in a quest that's just for fools
especially when you're guided by failed Grail hunting ghouls.
So listen to my words, have sense take my advice
don't go after the Grail, you'll end up food for lice.

Peredur: Of death I have no fear, I see the Great Beyond
though I don't intend to fail and my word must be my bond.
Now no matter what you tell me I will still take on the quest
for now that I have seen it, it has gave my life some zest

So anything else you say would be a waste of time
though you are welcome to continue as talking is no crime
but don't expect me to listen for I've started to use my loaf
I can see that your perceptions come straight out of Sloth.

Narrator: Now in a dimension not far away
a young Knight had a dragon to slay,
seven heads that he must keep at bay
for that was the price that he had to pay.

So he parried forward in hand a lance
whilst the dragon swayed like on a dance,
in fortitude he kept his stance
and taking deep breaths he'd advance.

Turning the nearest head with his shield
the very action meant its Fate was sealed
and though it struggled hard and would not yield
a sword went in and the dragon reeled.

A shriek of pain and a bloodied nose,
the head turned round in anger throes,
it spat out venom just like a hose
though it missed the Knight who had changed his pose.
The Knight rushed forward with sword in hand
for to finish off was his demand,
he swung to the left and the sword did land
a head dispatched it had left the band.

CHAPTER 2

A flash of Light and the Cavern brightened
leaving Peredur slightly frightened
his senses now had just been heightened
for his doubts had just been Lightened.

He did not know that he had killed his foe
for the Demon did not go
it just changed form for as you know
recognition is its fatal blow.

Now seven aspects go to make the whole
and to defeat them all was Peredur's goal
for it was the only way to cleanse his Soul
and strengthen him to take his role.

Though to all this Peredur was in the dark,
all he saw was his condition stark
and even though he had made his mark
the Demon came on like a shark.

Asmodeus: Maybe you don't fear hard work and can put up with the toil
and all the endless suffering perhaps you just might foil
but what of life in general, has your love life really sunk
that you'd take the vow of chastity and end up like a Monk.

For that is what will happen, did they ever mention that,
to take a life of purity you must wear the Bishop's hat
so think about it Peredur I don't want to throw a hex
but I'm afraid that masturbation is the closest thing to sex

And even that is frowned upon as you couldn't call it chaste
step back awhile, think it through, don't marry yourself in haste
for chastity's a big step and makes for a lonely life
hardly compensation when the Church becomes your wife

Peredur: There seems misunderstanding I won't be wearing the frock
the quest if I embark on it does not involve a flock,
it's a very personnel journey that has no Religious rite
no ceremony nor communion and not a confessional in sight.

The path that you have mentioned is not one that I'll take
for I'm after true enlightenment not to follow someone's wake.
It follows no Religion for it transcends dogmatic cause
though it does involve the Scriptures and following its Laws.

As for a life of celibacy well I'm not sure if that's the case
but if it says it on the contract it's a problem I must face

Asmodeus: Easy said now Peredur but what happens when it's nigh,
a vibrant girl with sparkling eyes your heart just has to sigh.
Firm round breasts, those silky thighs and oh that waist so tight
you know damn well when it comes to it you very well just might.

So think again work it out, is it really worth the hassle
a life of stark austerity and to celibacy you're the vassal
and what's it for at the end of the day life will not be kind
with all that gorgeous Totty you'll not get peace of mind

Peredur: I've heard the words you're saying as they've entered in my head
though I don't think celibacy matters, otherwise they would have said.
No, thinking through it can't do because Man he needs to love
it's a natural form of worship ordained by God above.

You just have to look at Genesis that was why He created Eve,
to satisfy Man's loneliness and make his heart strings heave.
So the quest does not need chastity of that I have no doubt
for if it did then logic says there would be few of us about.

Asmodeus: Maybe you are right then if your logic tells you that
but you see I have my doubts as I seem to smell a rat,
look at all religions they seem very strong on sex
they see it just as dirty and purity it wrecks.

So which of you is right then for there seems to be a clash
and with all their years of knowledge maybe you're a little rash.
Think about it longer, maybe they have a point
and those facts perceived as logic are slightly out of joint.

You mentioned Adam and Eve but even that upholds my case
for on seeing they were naked they dared not show their face.
They hid away from God in shame as they were scared of Him
now surely that is positive proof that God thinks sex a sin.

You might think that, that sounds silly but it's a proven fact
and enhanced by Religious bigotry my logic it is backed.
I mean stoning for adultery being put to death in shame,
just for having sex can man really be to blame?

Peredur: My logic still holds good though you'll try to put it down,
you see the Grail I'm after does not sport a Religious gown,
now Churches and their views on sex well that's up to them
I don't look to them for guidance as their dogma's sometimes hem.

Alright they might have learning and maybe they are right
but only time will tell on that when all things come to Light.
Now Adam, Eve in Eden well their nakedness wasn't a sin,
you're just manipulating the Bible in the hope that you might win.

You mentioned adultery also and couldn't see it as a crime
and though I don't like stoning my alarms bells started to chime.
Chastity's not the problem to you it's the casual affair,
now to me that sounds like Lechery, you see sex everywhere.

Narrator: The Knight leaned back and swung out high,
another aspect about to die.
Sure enough he waved goodbye
as its head swung upwards to the sky
A flash of Light the room got brighter
for his doubts had just got Lighter,
it's nice to see he was a fighter
for the next one was a Biter.

Beelzebub: You're not into casual relationships, well each towards his own
though it doesn't alter the fact you have to leave the pleasure zone
for the path you want to follow involves fasting all the time
and eating simple food which to your palate is a crime,

You miss out on the finer things for no apparent reason
let's be honest, what's the point to your stomach it is treason

Peredur: Fasting doesn't worry me I'm in the habit of going without
for the life style that I follow means there's little food about
so it's no real hardship, in fact to me it's daily living
I don't look at it as punishment for my stomach is forgiving.

Simple food I like to eat for I find it to my taste
so all that stuff perceived as finer would only go to waste,
food is no big deal to me it's just to sate my need
I only eat when hungry as anything else is greed.

Beelzebub: Well they say never have never miss, maybe it is true
but there's more to that than meets the eye, give this thought its due,
follow me to the finer things and you'll never once look back.
I'll educate your palate to all the things you lack,

Seriously I'll do you well, you'll never want for more.
The best food you can think of, my taste is never poor.
It will give your life new meaning, let you see beyond,
simple stuffs no good at all, if you think that you've been conned.

Peredur: Sure my taste is pretty basic, of that I will admit
simple food and a simple life to me that just seems fit.
You talk of finer things, well there's more to life than that
and listening to your logic I will probably end up fat.

Beelzebub: It's a sign of good living so of that you should be proud
it tells people you have made it you stand out in a crowd.
They'll see you as a man of taste and pander to your need,
simple food's for simpletons, you are just what you feed.

Look around this world today you'll see that I am right
abstinence is just for wimps too afraid to take a bite.
Walk with me I'll set you free, you'll have the chance to choose,
so stick with me and then you'll see that you could never lose.

Peredur: I hear your words but they don't make sense, maybe I'm a fool
why should that enhance your life it's not like it's a jewel.
I look around this world today and what you say is right
but I tell you what honestly, it gives me such a fright.

Where's the logic in it to be judged by what you eat,
a trip to an expensive restaurant is considered quite a treat.
I'm afraid that it's a concept I could never bring to ground,
it's just a waste of money, no comfort to be found.

You call it all good living but I'll have to disagree,
you see from where I'm standing it sounds like Gluttony.

Narrator: The Knight swung out low and to the right
giving another head a fright
and though he missed it was only slight
his next victim was in sight.

He swung again this time a hit
though he never killed but wounded it,
the dragon reeled back in pain a fit
and the Knight moved in, its throat did slit.

The room got lighter once again as Peredur made another gain
he could not see the Demon's pain for it had the power to feign

Mammon: So food is out, that's your choice but what of other pleasure,
fancy clothes, big flash cars, things that you can treasure.
All that stuff you'll leave behind if you take the Path of Light
for to really follow God keeps poverty in your sight.

No rich man enters Heaven you know that that is right
you see God begrudges wealth as he thrives on others plight.
What sort of man could do that, leave His children in despair,
it's got to be positive proof that the Father doesn't care.

So tell me foolish mortal do you want to be part of that,
forsook by an indifferent Father and to others just a mat.

Peredur: Fancy cloths don't bother me I care not how I look,
I don't go judging covers I'd rather read the Book.
Clothes are there to keep me warm and stop me getting wet
so let's be honest does it matter if it's an expensive set.

Mammon: Your point of view, it doesn't hold true with the world today,
people judge by how you look no matter what you say.
What about a car or two to show them you're the man,
three or four maybe more just because you can?

Surely it's important what others think of you
don't fall foul of society as you'll drift without a clue
for that's what's all around you and people like the dark
they'd rather live in ignorance as the other choice is stark.

So think it through Peredur, do you really want the hassle
of being the odd man out with poverty as his vassal

Peredur: A car's no good I cannot drive, it's never appealed to me
and even if I could what's the point of three.
People might make judgement, it's up to them I guess
but it's not a thing to worry, in fact I couldn't care less.

What's society that you speak of as it changes man to man,
People perceive it differently so your logic's down the pan
if people crave for darkness that's nothing to do with me
though I'd rather have the Light, at least then I can see.
Now I won't put judgement on others, I expect that in return
for I'd rather sit and listen, it's the only way to learn.

Mammon: Well a car is out, what about security, free from financial stress,
put your faith in God above and you'll end up in a mess.
You need finance to cushion life and give you peace of mind,
bills to pay and food to find is God really that kind.

Shift your faith and follow me, you'll want for nothing more,
make no mistake with me about you'll never end up poor.
God will leave you on your own for this is not His turf
you see He is a spiritual being what does He care for Earth?

Peredur: I don't expect God to provide I can do that for myself,
as you said He's spiritual, that's where I want my wealth.
You said He thrives on people's plight, well that's not strictly true
for God is there with strength of mind to see that you get through.

That poverty you mentioned is just a state of mind
to me it's more like balance so I don't see it as a bind.
A rich man entering Heaven, yes I see the truth in that
but he's had his heaven already so I guess he's just a prat,

Being wealthy isn't deadly, I mean it's not like he's diseased
it's just another state of mind, he could change it if he pleased.
If I looked to God for riches I'd just be wasting time
as when people starve in millions being wealthy is a crime.

Now if you want allegiance come up with something better
because the materialism you talk about, to me is just a fetter.

Mammon: The strength of mind you talk about is just inside your head,
the only time you'll know God for sure is when you end up dead,
the lifestyle that you talk about might just be in your mind,
then all this poverty you preach will just turn out a bind.

So think again, work it out, you're living in the present,
life should be fun I say, yet you won't even make it pleasant.
Materialism is alright it gives comfort when you need
yet you are misguided, you just see it as greed.

God is just a state of mind you admitted it yourself
and this heaven that you talk about revolves around your wealth.
Now the poor are always with us, I'm sure you've heard before,
it doesn't mean you join them, follow your own law.

It's all free Will at the end of the day so put you trust in me,
I'll always stand beside you with rewards that you can see.
I'm not a phoney concept that can't be brought to Earth,
just look around and see me after all this is my turf

Peredur: I can see what you're saying and you've wrapped it up quite well
but I could never call this heaven when others live in hell,
you talk of strength of mind, then try throw in a doubt
now that's a waste of time for its substance has no clout.

Materialism is alright you say, quite close to the truth,
it's just that it's for everyone and not something aloof
and as for phoney concepts you see God by His work,
you just have to look around, now don't you feel a berk

Mammon: Well all I see is poverty, is that what you are saying
and if that's the case well done, you've done a lot of praying
for I can see God everywhere, it's a place devoid of fun,
congratulate Him by the way on the fine job He has done

But seriously Peredur you have no quarrel with me
I am here to do you good trust me and you'll see.
You'll want for nothing, that's my pledge, never feeling blue,
you see I'm here to play my role and that's to work for you.

Travel the World imagine it broadening your mind,
interesting people exotic places, amazing what you find.
Get a Yacht and cruise the bay, wouldn't that be fun,
fishing, swimming, diving maybe or just basking in the sun.

Get a big House with the finer things be your own boss,
Parties all night, dancing away you wouldn't call it a loss.
So stick with me what do you say, I'll show you a real good life,
free from pain and undue stress, what do you want with strife?

Peredur: Your perception of fun is misguided, just you wait and see,
short term gain for long term pain that doesn't interest me.
Selfishness might be your thing, don't tar me with that brush,
I get my pleasure from helping others, it just gives me a rush.

I could travel the world if I wanted to, I don't need you for that,
pretty easy really and all done of my own bat.
You see you have nothing to offer that doesn't involve greed
but that's not a life that I adhere to as through it others bleed

Mammon: I'm not here to think of others, I'm like you in that respect,
I'm here to help you Peredur, my work is to reflect.
I want to give you everything, you see that is my job
so if you follow me boy, you'll never be short of a bob.

You say you don't judge others, so why are you judging me,
I'm just here to bring you comfort with goods that you can see.
I might not be God in Heaven but I'm the next best thing you know
for when I get to working, your finance will truly grow.

You mentioned care for others, what will they do in return?
Throw it back I'll wager for the Light has a nasty burn.
You might think you're doing good but that might not be the case
for surely they have to suffer, it's the only way to get grace.

That's the trouble with the Light, it shines on everyone
so when you actually help them, you deprive them of the Sun.
You see it's about self reliance so charity does them harm
and what you think as service might just be removing the balm

Peredur: A very interesting point though it fell flat on its face
and for you to actually use it, well that's another disgrace.
Deprive them of the Sun you say is that some sort of joke,
would you sit there idly by and watch some poor man choke?

You talk of self reliance and try to dismiss charity
yet in the eyes of God, He treats them both with parity.
One doesn't null the other they both have their place
for they evolve you on different levels, both with equal pace.

You say you're here to serve me yet you're out to do me harm,
you'll lead me into trouble and take away my calm.
You want to give me everything, well give me inner peace,
don't pester me with drivel, stop, desist and cease.

Mammon: I am here for peace of mind to take away your stress
you'll have no worries with me I'll get you out this mess.
You'll never hunger with me here of that have no doubt,
there'll be no such thing as poverty, not whilst I'm about.

Surely that's peace of mind, freedom from the bills,
struggling to make ends meet is the bitterest of pills.
No seriously, I'm here for you, though on an Earthly plain,
I'm here to give you pleasure and a life devoid of pain.

If that's not inner peace then tell me just what is?
Freedom from the strife and a life that's full of fizz.
So what do you say Peredur, put your trust in me,
I can give you all that God can except I will do it free.

I don't want to see you struggle I want you to have some fun,
you'll have peace, financial freedom, you'll thank me when I'm done.

Peredur: You can give me all that God can, what about eternal life,
the purpose of my being, the culmination of my strife?
Now if you can deliver that then yes I'll be your man
so go ahead surprise me, tell me that you can.

You see the trouble with short term pleasure, it only leads to pain
and though I'd wealth a plenty I wouldn't call it gain

Mammon: I'll admit that's not in my power but I'll do the next best thing,
I can make this life a heaven, even make the Angels sing.
With me you'll want for nothing and never have the strife
in fact I'd say it was better, it beats eternal life.

You see it's a matter of preference, what you take under wing
you could be eternally a Slave or a short time as a King?
Though when I say a short time it would be a lifetime for you
it could be forty years by the time that you are through.

Now that's not a short term gain, it's a lifetime for some
so tell me what you say, go on give the thumb.

Peredur: That's no good to me that time will quickly pass
and before I even know it they'll be at my funeral mass.
No I'm afraid that way won't work, I don't see myself as King
and if that's the best on offer you won't get me to sing.

I guess you're wasting time trying to play upon my greed
for that's just Avarice speaking and I'll never let that feed.

Narrator: The Knight came forward swinging wide
and the dragon had no place to hide,
as three of its heads had already died
it looked like it was on the losing side.

It tried its best to duck the blow
but got caught and blood did flow
for all the wounds had made it slow
and the Knight himself was an ardent foe.

The dragon screamed in pain again,
the Knight was proving quite a bane
and the blood was flowing like a drain
and driving it insane.

The sword was struck once more for sure,
a severed head lay on the floor,
the dragon struck out with its claw
but its aim was dismally poor.

CHAPTER 3

Narrator: A flash of Light around the room,
another Demon met its doom
the Cavern now has lost some gloom
though it still looked like a tomb.

Leviathan: So materialism's not for you and you don't crave Earthly pleasure
that's good in one way I suppose but are you really made to measure?
Many men have taken the quest and all of them have failed
better men than you have come and on crosses they've been nailed.

Now I don't want to throw a dampener but it's not been done before
so what makes you so special for to me you're pretty raw.
I've seen many clever people, brainier than you,
gone off on adventure and been killed before they're through.

Brilliant men, all scholars who knew what they're about
but the quest in which they'd taken quickly knocked them out
so what have you to offer to help you get this Grail
and it must be something special otherwise you're going to fail.

Peredur: Those who passed before me, well I'm sorry about their plight
though I cannot really comment as I do not have the right.
I can only talk for me now and I'll do the best I can
and as for something special, well no I'm just a man.

Leviathan: Well I'm afraid you've backed a loser if that's the best you've got for better men have entered and ended up as rot.
Think hard about the quest, if I were you I'd turn it down,
you'll end up disappointed and feeling like a clown.

Men of good intention with strength of mind have fell,
you've got to be more special to have a chance of doing well.

Peredur: I'll try my best, that's all I'll say and listen to my guide
and if it comes to danger well I hope I will not hide
but I don't worry about others, the journey's about me
so if you're really interested I'll just say wait and see.

Leviathan: I hear the words you're saying, I'm just making you aware
that better men have failed so you should have a care,
you're not really a bad fellow although a bit naive
I don't want to see you hurt as intelligence can deceive.

They'll tie you up in corners leave you without a clue
wallowing in your ignorance, you'll be mad before you're through.
You're just a Country Bumpkin who knows little about life
I'm sorry if it's insulting but it will save a lot of strife.

Peredur: I'm as good as the next man but I don't want to blow my horn,
I'll not put up with drivel and I'll be no others pawn.
The advice that you give me, well I appreciate your concern
but I'm afraid I will reject it as I like to live and learn.

Leviathan: Well it's your choice, I'll not stand in your way
but heed the words I tell you, the advice I have to say,
when it comes to quests of glory well you're just a little boy
so it's better if you leave it as you'll never get the joy.

What makes you so special, to win when others fail
you haven't any hope of getting that Grail,
I see you for your weaknesses and to me there's quite a few
so maybe you should bow down, give respect to where it's due.

For you to take the quest is an insult to your betters,
what chance of you of winning for these were men of letters?
You need a good education to get that strength of mind
yet you wallow in your ignorance and take the quest on blind.

Peredur: Now hang on for a moment that is hardly fair
you come to me with insults pretending that you care.
I don't know what your game is but I know it will not work
for I'll gladly take the quest, responsibility I won't shirk.

So what actually is the problem, tell me, what's the ploy?
I don't know where you're coming from but I know you'll get no joy.

Leviathan: I'm just looking to your interests, giving it to you straight
making you aware before it gets too late.
The men might say you'll make it, they tell everyone the same
they like to see you suffer for to them it's just a game.

You see your life it is nothing, it has no real price
so if you want to lose it, follow their advice,
now if you had any real sense you'd take on what I say
and forget about the Grail as you'll never make it pay.

Peredur: No you're wrong, you can't be right those men are not like that,
they mean me well, I know the score, they don't think me a prat
I've seen the Grail, that must be good, they say I've got a chance
they've not going to waste their time just to lead me on a dance.

Leviathan: There you go, you've proved my point, believing what they say,
gullible, that's the word and what a price to pay.
They'd tell you that black was white and it would just sink in
and you'd follow them to your death, that should be a sin.

Stand aside and lose the quest, let others take the strife
believe me now you have no choice, it's just a waste of life.
Better men than you might win but even that'd be luck
so leave them to it's my advice, stick to clearing muck.

Peredur: I'm as good as the next man and I'm not afraid to die
and see all those words you say sound to me a lie.
You talk of better men than me but who are you to judge
because everything I'm hearing just seems to sound like fudge.

So how do you rate these men, what standards do you use,
and if they were so special how'd they manage to lose?
How do I know you're not lying, that seems to be you way,
I've come to the conclusion I don't believe a word you say.

You must think I'm a moron, one that's really thick
so come on now and tell me does Envy make you tick?

Narrator: The Knight moved back and missed the blow
there still was life left in the foe
so he thought he'd have another go
and struck his sword out pretty low.
He cut the neck and made it bleed
yet still the dragon would not cede
so he struck again and a head was freed
at least the maggots would have a feed.

The room got bright once again, another Demon slain
though Peredur never saw his gain, the Creature hid its pain.

Lucifer: Thinking about it maybe you're right, you're really not that bad,
you've got something about you those other men were sad.
It's all right reading about life in Books but you have been around,
you've got a thing called Common Sense, your judgement will be sound.

You've seen the Grail, that can't be bad, that must be to your gain
and looking at the size of you I'd guess you'd take the pain
but do you really need it, if it means you have to serve
now for God to ask that of you don't you think He's got a nerve.

I mean look around, let's be honest it's them that should serve you
it's called looking to your betters now you know that I speak true.
You've seen the Grail that makes you special, a God in others eyes
well it they wanted to believe you, you wouldn't be telling lies.

I mean let's be honest, you're enlightened, you've seen the Holy Grail
how many others can say that so you do deserve the hail.
In fact I wouldn't bother about it, enough it has been seen
think it through with logic and you'll see just what I mean.

Peredur: Something's happened that I've missed, why the change of heart,
the last time that we spoke I wasn't good enough to start?
Is this just another ploy, are you trying to confuse me
what's going on and why the change of plea?

Lucifer: See you've proved my point, you must be real smart,
you look at things more deeply, now that's a cracking start,
maybe you're enlightened already for that goes with the Grail,
It's just a Spiritual gift that tells you, you can't fail.

So this quest you talk about, it might actually be done
and by the fact you've seen the Grail it means you've already won
so to actually go after it might just be a waste of time
and to someone of your talent that would be an awful crime.

Peredur: You say I might have done it, well I can't see that myself,
I don't feel any different, I have no Spiritual wealth
besides they would have told me instead of offering me the quest
for if I'd already had it, it would be the cruellest jest.

Lucifer You can't measure Spiritual health, not in the sense you mean
it has to be experienced as it can't be seen,
take you as an example, now to me you have it all
so what those men have told you, well they must have had some gall.

I'd put it down to jealousy as they knew you've seen the Grail
sending you on adventure so you think that you might fail
and all the time you've got it doesn't it make you want to shout
for where there once was calm they try to throw in doubt.

No if you stop to think about it you know that I am right
they're sending you to war to a battle you need not fight
but you don't need to go, you're much cleverer than that,
leave them to it I say, you're not another man's bat.

Peredur: Logical in what you say though it doesn't make sense,
to send me on a needless quest where's the recompense?
What's the point in doing it, there's nothing to their gain,
no reward nor comfort to get from giving me pain.

You said that it was jealousy, well why is that the case
that doesn't add up, I would have seen it on their face,
no the Grail wants winning, the quest must still be on
and for me to leave it dangling would be the biggest con.

I mean I don't feel different, how can that be right
for I never actually held it I only had it in my sight.

Lucifer: Well go ahead if you must though it's a waste of time
but with your brain's you'll soon realise so it won't be such a crime
but why service as your goal, now to me that's strange
they should be serving you, that's more within your range.

See the truth in that as Man was made to work,
he has to know his place, a responsibility he can't shirk
but some were born to follow whilst others born to lead
and you my friend with your brains are the latter breed.

It's a real heavy duty to handle all that power
it takes strength of mind and the ability not to cower.
The Chain of Being it's called, each man knows his place
everything has to fit right and show a balanced face
So go out and get the Grail, then return and you must lead
you're now a man of destiny, a point you'll have to cede.

Peredur: I wasn't born to follow nor was I born to lead
I was born to serve for it satisfies my need,
you said the Chain of Being but I'm afraid it doesn't exist
it's just a man made invention that he pulled from out the mist.

What do I want with power it will lead me to confusion
for by its very nature it breeds corruption and delusion
Now if that's your idea of glory it has no place with me
it's a concept I will hide from for it's not my destiny.

Lucifer: Think it through, don't be hasty look around again,
the world needs people like you to take away its pain.
Don't turn your back on civilisation, that is not the way,
you've got to work from inside to really make it pay.

You've got to be like them if you want to make the change
you have to have the power to bring it into range.
God doesn't mind the fame if it helps you with the cause,
all He's really interested in is following His Laws,

He hates the thought of anarchy and the pain it brings
so a little powers good if it leads to better things.

Peredur: The power that you talk about causes all the trouble,
you can wrap it up in fancy talk but I've got to burst that bubble.
Power is deluding and leads to hardening of heart
and if I was to have it I'm afraid that God and me would part

So you can keep your power and with God I'll bide
because if I ever had it I would just succumb to Pride.

Narrator: The Knight came forward slashing wide
he cuts a head from the side,
he follows through the shield his guide
another aspect died.

Another flash and the room got bright
the whole Cavern was full of Light,
the figure before him was a sight
extolling all it's might.

Satan: So what do you want out of this, what gives you your drive
what makes you so special that on poverty you'll thrive,
you talk of life eternal as the icing on the cake
but if you ever found it, it would be a grave mistake.

Thinking through it logically it would be a life of pain
anyone can see it, it's just you being vain.
People take you for a mug and you'll have to cope with that,
turn the other cheek they say, you become a doormat.

Look around the world today sure it makes you sick
and what does God do about it, send visions to the thick.
He lets it happen all the time why should people suffer,
it's not that He's indifferent it's just that He's a bluffer.

Get the Grail what happens next, have you thought that far,
to change this world we live in, you'll need an iron bar.
You'll have to take the place by storm that is the only way
for the people who have power will try and null your say.

They'll laugh at you and call you down in a myriad of styles,
take you apart bit by bit and with the sweetest smiles
and what will God do anyway, just hide Himself away
for when it comes to Earthly things He has little say.

Peredur: Well I'm not here to change the World only just my own
so politics don't bother me, it's not really my moan,
the World today is a mess but I don't really care
I'm only here for eternal life I'll get my comfort there.

Satan: Then I'm afraid you walk in ignorance, very naive
or perhaps these so called friends of yours in pleasure do deceive,
get the Grail you'll work for God and He's a hard taskmaster
you'll have to change the World today to save it from disaster.

You see He works through others, that's His only way
and to change the World we live in is the price you have to pay.
What else do you think He wants, if not to spread the word,
the fact you never thought about it I find that absurd.
Did you expect just to sit around with the Grail as your prize,
it that's the case think again, it's about time you got wise

Peredur: If that's the case it must be done I'll have to do His work,
I'm not one to turn my back nor responsibility shirk
sure I'll get humiliated but I guess that goes with life
and maybe there'll be pain to go with all the strife

But my contract is with God so I'll cope with anything
and the strength I get from that will be most comforting.

Satan: You really think you've got protection, well I'm at a loss,
you think that God can help you what a load of dross.
Don't forget you're on your own you haven't got a chance
you'll pray and pray but what for He'll lead you on a dance.

He sacrificed His own son you know, doesn't that say it all,
if you think that God will help you, you're heading for a fall.
No if I were you I'd take my chance and get ready for a fight,
you probably won't win but at least you'll give a fright,

Follow me, it's your only chance, we'll rip them all to pieces
leave God up in Heaven where He can practise with His thesis.

Peredur: What are you offering, you've left me bemused,
you're talking about the work of God or have I got confused.
Are you saying that you'll help me, have I got that right
for that seems to me illogical helping in the fight.
I always thought you worked for evil or have I been misled
this is a strange turnaround, work for you instead.

Satan: Well why not, let's be honest, they've been doing it for years,
Religious wars, intolerance, I create the tears
but if you want equality you'll have to work through me
as I get things moving just you wait and see.

Actions needed in your work, it's the only way,
people might get wasted but that's the price you have to pay,
the World today's a cruel place so you have to be the same
it's the only way to get things done the answer it is plain.

A God of love has no place here Man treats Him as a joke
but a God like me is something else, I will make them choke,
seriously you want things done, follow me to the letter,
I'll tell you this I'll guarantee things will go much better.

Peredur: Maybe there's something in that, you've gave me food for thought
for to do God's work today does seem a little fraught.
I see logic in your words, although filled with hate
but that might be the only way for inequality to abate
But saying that I'm confused as two wrongs don't make right
and God should not be forced on you with the fear of might.

Satan: I hear the words you're saying but what's the other choice
do you think they'll ever listen if you have a frightened voice,
violence is their one respect, they fear to go through pain,
Give them hell, believe me then God can have His reign.
Follow me and heed the words and your work is quickly done,
once they have the fear of God then surely you have won

Peredur: I see what you're saying but you don't get God through fright
surely its a conscious decision, you should not have to fight,
Man was given Free Will so he might have the choice
how can it be Free Will with Anger as the voice.

Narrator: The Cavern flashed the Demon fell and Peredur left his hell,
his Mother told him all was well and then he left the shell.
His essence spread across the sky and so he knew he's never die,
he found purity though didn't know why, he was a lucky guy.

The Knight circled round for the kill,
the dragon's death was on the bill,
he plunged in hard with all his will
and the dragon had its fill

CHAPTER 4

Narrator: Mad Dog woke up to find he was in a strange place,
the memories of the last few days had gone without a trace,
the last thing he recalled was just staring into space
with serious thoughts of suicide he was about to chase.

His tortured thoughts and torment had somehow now abated
in fact for some strange reason he seemed to feel elated
and though the new environment to his reality had slated
with the state of mind he now was in his curiosity was sated.

He gave the place the once over to see what could be found
and his eyes lit on two bags that were littered on the ground,
one bag although empty had food stuffs scattered round
and the other full of cloths so at least he would be gowned.

He went over to the clothes to try a blue shirt on for size
which fitted him perfectly much to his surprise
but the thing that really got him, made him question his own eyes
was the clothes that he was wearing were not his usual guise.

He had a strangers clothes on and he was in a strange place
curiosity surfaced now and with more than just a trace,
Paranoia followed which is usually the case
he had a strange idea he might have a strangers face.

With the mirror in the corner though his Paranoia sated,
he must have just blacked out and his memory vacated,
it had happened before so his fear abated
probably the drink he said it was just a bit belated.

He sat awhile to ponder, to work out what he had done
for looking at the clothes and food he must have had some fun.
However did he get them as he never had a gun?
And looking at the articles they were unlikely to be won

He thought and thought the best he could but the memory was hid
so all he got was frustration and into negativity he slid,
pessimism came to the fore, in a strength he could not rid
as he wallowed in his ignorance unaware of what he did.

His reality was missing and more than just a chunk,
his memory had left him, gone and done a bunk,
to rationalise this situation his hopes were quickly sunk
despair now saw him in her bed and a strong urge to get drunk.

40 minutes he sat there bemoaning his own Fate,
he tried and tried the best he could but the anguish wouldn't abate,
eventually he gave up for it left him in a state
"Just a waste of time" he said no point to contemplate.

He sat there in self pity and wondered what to do,
for not wishing to go home he did not have a clue,
the memories of his former life were apt to leave him blue
so maybe he should start again, go out and see what's new.

"Great idea" he said aloud as he scrambled to his feet,
he grabbed the bags and went outside a new life for to greet,
the morning Sun beat down on him and he took in all its heat,
"Yes" he said stretching out, "this life cannot be beat".

Turning left he carried on without a real plan,
content in his existence and aloof from any clan,
he decided to just drift along and see if Fate's his man
and make no firm decision just live life while you can.

Onwards he went with a Spring in his step looking for pastures new,
mile after mile he walked in the Sun drifting without a clue,
the forest to him was foreign to him his sense of direction it threw
Though on seeing a derelict Caravan he got a mild sense of de ja vu.

He carried on regardless though for adventure was on his mind
still unaware of where he was for the forest had not been signed,
he just wanted to get away from it all, see what he could find
and hoped in his heart from that moment on life would be more kind.

Eventually the forest declined and a Village showed its face,
"Sheltham" he said aloud to himself on recognising the place,
he had no intention of stopping there not seeing it as a base
but circumstances were to change, Fate was to give him grace.

He put his bags down to tarry awhile, his feet were a little sore,
he sat on a bench to regain his strength leaving the bags on the floor,
checking his pockets to see what was there, he was no longer poor,
five ten pound notes, all crispy and clean, who could ask for more?

He headed off towards the shop, he thought he would have a smoke,
to celebrate his fortune and to give his lungs a choke,
on entering the premises though he recognised the folk
and this triggered off his senses and some memories awoke

Cyril: Ah Peredur you're back again, you've come out of the thicket
don't tell me, feeling lucky, you want another ticket.
Thanks again for the work you did you saved me lots of stress
I'm afraid that with my hands like this things get in a mess

Mad-Dog: Not to worry, my pleasure, in fact I thought it fun
and thanks again for all these alms and don't think that a pun,
you showed me kindness in despair and that's a very big deal
clothes and tins to see me through and what about that meal.

Angela: I'm glad you liked it thanks again but it was no great feat
just a meal at the end of the day, that's how we always eat
but what of you Peredur, have you decided what to do
for the last time that we spoke to you, you did not have a clue.

Mad-Dog: Well I thought I'd travel out a bit to see what I could find
journey long and see some life and hope that it is kind,
take the bull by the horns, take life as it comes
drift around and find myself I have not done my sums.

Cyril: Are you sure that's wise Peredur, you haven't made a plan,
without direction life is stark and could go down the pan,
think awhile and hear the words you know that it makes sense
for all you'll get is loneliness, it's hardly recompense.

Winter nights give quite a chill, they'll freeze you to the bone,
you'll sit there in your misery just shivering alone,
oh it's all right now it's summertime but that will quickly change
the leaves will fall, the nights draw in and winter comes in range.

I guess I shouldn't say this as it really isn't my place
but if you follow that path you'll end up in disgrace.

Mad-Dog: Well I appreciate your advice and thank you for your concern
but I'm afraid with me that's it's a case of live and learn,
loneliness doesn't bother me I've had that most my life
and as for the cold of winter well I wouldn't call it strife

Besides I have no option what else can I do
just wallow in self pity, I'll end up pretty blue.

Cyril: There's more to life than drifting, you'll end up in despair
alone in desolation and without someone to care
seriously I've been there and I tell you life is bleak
you want to settle down awhile just to find your feet.

Narrator: With that the door opened and the conversation abated
an elderly man walked in, his attire was rather dated,
Cyril went to serve him and Mad Dog stood and waited
little knowing from now on his life had just been Fated.

Cyril: Ah Arthur, now how's your luck I hope it's not too bad
for looking at a day like this it sure makes me feel glad
so tell me then what are you're after, maybe I can aid
we've got it all so don't be shy, there's a bargain to be made.

Arthur: Nice one Cyril, like your style but food's not on my mind
and as for luck I guess I'm out for life is not too kind,
I advertised for a Handyman in the local paper
no one answered, waste of money, sod that for a caper,
so anyway to cut to the chase I would like to run an ad
hopefully I might get joy for things are looking bad,
lawns to trim, things to mend, guess it's too much for me
and as for that idle son of mine he just sits there supping tea.

Cyril: Sure fair enough I'll get a pen then tell me what to say,
I'll write it down, we'll put it up and see what's on the way,
fifty pence, that's my charge, it's lucky I am retail,
so go on Arthur spit it out I need to know the detail.

Arthur: Well that's the problem Cyril see times are pretty bad
with everything against me my finances are sad,
I can't afford to pay them as I haven't got a cent
so what I was thinking was to offer them free rent,

With half my Caravans empty it seemed the logical thing,
well that's what I thought as I gave the newspaper a ring,
four weeks further on though I haven't had a call
so I guess that logic is going to have to fall.

Cyril: Yes tricky really Arthur I can understand your point,
no one works like that nowadays, your logics out of joint.
I could put it in the window and see if owt turns up
but chances are against it well unless England wins the cup.

Narrator: As Mad-Dog listened in a thought did cross his mind
Maybe he should stick around and see what he could find,
with half the Caravans empty it should not be a bind,
he might even get the gas threw in if the bloke was kind.

He could hang around a couple of months, see the winter out,
maybe get some money together find out what was about,
make some plans for later, nothing to scream and shout
for he needed to get another job to give his plan some clout.

It made sense the more he thought, reason did prevail
give him time to work things out make sure he didn't fail,
Cyril's logic came to mind for he had hit it on the nail,
his chances of survival, you could say pretty pale.

Mad-Dog: Excuse me sir would I be right, you're looking out to hire
maybe we could come to terms, both get out the mire,
I'm looking for some lodgings though I'm in need of rent
so that idea of yours, well to me it's Heaven sent.

Arthur: Maybe you are right, that depends on what you do
for I wouldn't really want you if you didn't have a clue,
are you working at the moment, no I guess you're not
so what do you usually do and don't say what you got.

Mad-Dog: I've done a bit of everything though I'm a Carpenter by trade,
Landscape Gardening, Building mainly, whatever was best paid.
I'm pretty fit, reliable, the best choice you could make
though as you don't know me that's a chance you might not take

Arthur: Well I'll be honest in desperate times I'll have to take your word,
the lack of response I've had so far, you're the best that I have heard.
I'll give you a trial see what happens maybe it will pay
six weeks in, no rent due so tell me what do you say?

Mad-Dog: I'll need to know what's involved before I make my mind,
hours involved, deposit due, the things that are the bind,
I have no tools to do the job so will they be provided
gas, electric, bills to pay or will they just be sided?

Arthur: Hours involved well let's see quite a few to start
because that lazy brat of mine has let things fall apart,
tools are mine help yourself though return them when you're done
better keep the Pitch Fork though you might need to rouse my son,

Bills to pay, well let's see, just the electric to you,
I'll do the water, Community Charge and a bottle of gas or two,
deposit now, that's the thing, I'm definitely going to need one
a hundred bar I'm afraid my friend and before anything can be done.

Mad-Dog: That might be the problem with finances as they are
I've only fifty quid so that won't take me far,
I'll need that anyway for I'll still have to live
I was hoping you might waive it after all I'm not a spiv.

Arthur: I'm afraid I can't do that as I've been hurt before,
the business that I'm in means no comeback from the Law,
most of the people I rent to don't see is as a home
for drifting is their nature and not the Garden Gnome.

Being nomadic by nature they disappear without a trace
leaving a derelict Caravan and me wiping egg of my face,
I always insist on a deposit to cover the damage that's done
it gives me some satisfaction after they've had their fun.

Mad-Dog: Well I can see your point to some extent, you've been hurt before
and if a deposit is needed well I guess that is the Law,
I'm interested I must admit but I'll have to get back to you
first things first I'll need a job, something to see me through.

Cyril: I'll tell you what I'll pay for it for the work you've done
I mean let's be really honest it was worth more than a ton.
I owe you that and if I don't there's plenty more to do
don't you worry about the money it will be paid before I'm through.

Mad-Dog: You've already paid me for my work, paid me well it's true
so anything else wants doing won't cost anything to you
thanks for the offer, but I want to do this on my own
for I'm not one to borrow and I would only see it as a loan.

Cyril: To me you've already earned it but I guess that it's your choice
you're not a man for charity I can hear it in your voice,
so what about a ticket then you never know your luck
besides if you should lose I could always refund the buck.

Mad-Dog: That's not a bad idea yes I think I'll have a go
I'm feeling pretty lucky, I mean well you never know,
it came up right the last time, I might be on a roll
besides it's only one Pound it'll hardly take a toll.

Narrator: He bought himself a ticket thinking to try his hand
and Lady Luck shined once more but this time with a Grand
problem solved, well sort of he couldn't get his Bag of Sand
for money prizes that big a delay was in demand.

Arthur: The job's yours if you want it, well unless you've changed you mind
for with a Grand in pocket life is not a bind,
the deposit will keep a while, for I'm happy to wait
now I know it's coming it doesn't matter if it's late.

Mad-Dog: Oh yes I'm interested, I could do with a place to stay
for it's not too bad round here, I seem to make it pay,
I'll still need a job though, this money won't last long
but I can cope with that, my luck's still running strong.

Arthur: Right then it's a deal when do you want to start,
the sooner the better for me, in case your luck should depart,
pop in and see us later, that's probably the best plan
I've a few things want doing but I'll be as quick as I can,

Make it around 4 o Clock that way I'm bound to be there
I'm the first Van on the left just be careful of the glare.

Narrator: With that Arthur went out and they were left alone
for Angela had left them, her cooking skills to hone
Mad-Dog was quite happy, he was the dog that got the bone
all he needed was a job and he'd be fully home.

Cyril: You changed your mind pretty quick, why the change of heart,
maybe what I said sank in and you're reluctant to depart?
Whatever it is I'm glad, you made a wise move,
you need time out to think awhile and make the journey smooth.

Mad-Dog: I see the sense in what you're saying so I thought I'd stay awhile
give me time to sort things out and put them in a pile.
Luck seems to be on my side and its fair picked up a pace,
to me this might be Heaven or at least a magical place,

If I can sort some work out then Fates no more the foe
I could save up for the Springtime and thus avoid the snow.

Cyril: Well that's a good idea so what work you looking for,
a part time job maybe, keep the wolf off from your door
for I might know something though it's only once a week
but £60 is the pay so you couldn't call it meek.

Mad-Dog: That sounds good to me, I could easily live of that,
I might even save a little once I've trimmed the fat
so tell me of the job then, what's the work involved
because if I'm up to doing it my problem will be solved.

Cyril: Well the man is David Smith, he's a bit of a funny type,
he was in the merchant Navy and now always smokes a pipe,
he's a bit of an old Sea Dog, well set in his ways
cantankerous at times but the job is one that pays.

He's after a handyman for maintenance on his place
for ever since his accident it's truly fell from grace,
bit of gardening mainly, mend the occasional gate,
not bad for the money so make sure that you're not late.

Don't worry about his nature he's just starting to show his age
he's generally all right just don't let him out the cage.

Mad-Dog: Well one day in a week won't give too much stress
so if that's the case, could I have his address,
I will give it a go, what have I got to lose
besides if I get down there is always the booze.

Cyril: I'll get the ad from the window and give Davy a bell,
you can have a chat with him, make sure that all is well.
He's not really a bad fellow and you'll quickly find your feet
and with £60 a day you've certainly got the wheat

Mad-Dog: Sure sounds good to me, thanks again once more
with all the help you gave me I'll never end up poor,
seriously I appreciate there's not many folk like that
most the people I know would rather take me for a prat.

Cyril: People are pretty fair, you just have to look around
carry a good heart and they're pretty easily found.
You've had bad luck that's all, it will quickly pass
then you'll see it differently, recognise the class.

Narrator: Cyril found the advert and took it from the wall
and went over to the telephone to give the man a call,
the phone, it rang a few times but nothing did befall,
there was nobody at home, the plan would have to stall.

Cyril said he would try later, he was probably at The Wheel,
it was his local pub where he liked to go and deal,
he invited Mad-Dog to stay awhile offered him a meal
which Mad-Dog quickly accepted and took to with great zeal.

CHAPTER 5

Narrator: 2 o'clock saw Mad-Dog outside the Sea Dog's gate
waiting his return for the man was running late,
he said to meet at 5 to when Mad-Dog phoned to make the date
though he'd other things to do, so try at any rate.

It was a quaint Country Cottage that revelled in the Light,
its white stone washed walls made the place real bright,
reflected in a clear pond it looked a pretty sight
pretty good condition too so it wouldn't be a plight.

Davy: So how's it look to you my son, sure is a pretty place
just needs bits and bobs to do to keep it from disgrace,
you must be Peredur, well that's a fine old name
though I dare say that your parents got a lot of blame.

David Smith's the name though most people just say Davy
and as you might have gathered I once was in the Navy,
I used to be able to run this place but now I have to beg
I'm afraid the years have caught me, damn and blast this leg,

Anyway I'll show you round then tell me what you think
I've got no tea or coffee but you are welcome to a drink.

Narrator: Mad-Dog followed Davy and received a guided tour,
a lick of paint was needed but that was not a chore,
a bit of weeding here and there hardly worth a war,
yes he'd definitely do it, he'd been expecting so much more.

They went inside the Cottage and the man got out a drink
he offered it to Mad-Dog who had to have a think
he'd normally have took it and necked it with a kink
but with his interview later he had to be in the pink.

Mad-Dog: Thank you for your offer but I'm afraid I must decline
I got to see a man for lodgings and he might not like the wine,
now the job looks pretty easy, a bit of polish and touch
but one thing I was wondering, why do you pay so much?

Davy: It's not that much really as you're going to have to work
I like to keep things ship shape and won't tolerate a shirk,
I'll expect a good 8 hours and not just to stand around
for idleness has no place as work is always found.

Mad-Dog: Well hard work never bothers me it keeps me in good fettle
I hate to stand around and I rarely use the kettle,
you'll get a good days work from me of that there is no doubt
for boredom is a foe to me if I have to stand about.

Davy: Good I like to hear that, in life you should go far
for with attitude like that reality has no bar,
you'll get a full day's work from me, of that there's little worry
but it will be pretty steady so you'll rarely have to hurry.

The job's yours if you want it, although only as a trial
for I'll have to see your actions, I might not like your style

Mad-Dog: I can understand that, I might not be as I say
for seeing is believing, I guess is the only way
but I'll gladly take the trial and you'll not find me lacking
for when it comes to work you'll never see me slacking.

Davy: Good, well it's a deal then, you've definitely made your mark
for I've got this funny feeling you can bite as well as bark
so when can you start then, make it pretty quick
for though it's nice and green now I don't want it turning sick.

Mad-Dog: Well I've got to see this man, for lodgings as I said
and instead of paying rent I'll be working for my bed.
I'll need some time to sort things out but how long I can't guess
for he said his son of his had left it in a mess

So I cannot say for sure though I'll haste as best I can
what about I see you later when I've met the man.

Davy: Fair enough to me, I'll be here till 8 o'clock
when you know for sure give the door a knock,
these lodgings that you talk about, it's not a Caravan
and Arthur Knight the tearaway would he be the man?

Mad-Dog: Yes that's right, you know him, well it's hardly a surprise
I guess it's pretty clicky in a village of this size,
I should only be an hour then I'll get back to you
for until I've seen the work involved I haven't got a clue

But Arthur as a tearaway is there something I should know
for he didn't seem that way to me or am I a little slow?

Davy: No it's just a throwback from when he was a lad
he was a right one I can tell you, perhaps a little mad,
he's different now he's older as life has calmed him down
though it's also turned full circle as his son now has the crown.

No, Arthur is a good man, he has a heart of gold
sure he has a drink occasionally though we all fit in that mould,
you may as well have a drink then if Arthur is that man
for he likes to do his business whilst drinking out a can.

Mad-Dog: Well it that's the case why not, it won't do any harm
I was expecting stormy waters though I guess the sea is calm,
you said you were a Navy man, that sounds an interesting life
I've set my mind on travelling, it gets rid of all the strife,

You must have had a good time, seen some real good places
all those different ways of life, all those funny faces.

Davy: Well I could tell a tale or two of that I must admit
for you tend to gather knowledge as from life to life you flit
but the best thing that I've found out, it might sound strange to you
it that everyone is all the same, no seriously it's true.

Mad-Dog: Er yes, I suppose they are if you think as such
but to travel the world to find that out, well it isn't much,
how did that help you out in life, what was it all for
I mean for a life that's full of adventure I guess that's pretty poor.

Davy: Adventure, yes I've had my fill, more than enough in fact
and the only thing it taught me was how to use my tact,
danger yes I've seen my share, I've hung off many a boat
struggling hard against the waves just to try and stay afloat,

Death as well in many forms though the outcome was the same
quite a memory bank that would put Writers to their shame,
I did it all and came away a better man no doubt
but I had to get some learning to give the transformation clout,

You want to go out travelling well why not I would say
though I'm not sure of your motive, is it just to get away?

Mad-Dog: They say the grass is greener I thought I'd try it out
I've got no ties to hold me back so I can get about,
I don't know what I'm looking for, just for something better
I don't know how to get it but hard work's not a fetter.

I thought I would just drift along and see what I can find
and hope that Fate shines on me or is at least a little kind.

Davy: It's just to get away then, when all said and done
but without a firm foundation your goal will not be won,
take time out and think awhile, give yourself a plan
because a life without direction is quickly down the pan.

Mad-Dog: I came to that conclusion so I thought I'd stick around
give me time to draft a plan and make finances sound,
I won't set off until the Spring, avoid the winter's cold
so 8 months should be long enough to get a plan that's bold.

Davy: Now the reason I went travelling was for broadening of mind
to accumulate some knowledge and experience the bind,
to find my strengths and weaknesses and try and turn them round
so I could be a better man with logic always sound.

Narrator: Mad-Dog listened attentively for the man had made him think
and whilst all this was happening he was poured another drink,
he took a healthy swallow and the whole lot he did sink
and as he was no longer used to it, it took him to the brink.

Davy: I mean have you ever asked yourself what's it all about,
running around like headless chickens waiting for a clout
and what's the point of running if you're void of direction
it's just like being a Candidate without a General Election.

Now when I started travelling I was trying to find my Self,
I wasn't looking for adventure and I didn't need the wealth.
I was looking for some peace of mind, it's hard to really explain
sort of like the Golden Fleece and that what's his name.

I wasn't looking out for danger, I never needed strife
I was looking for a purpose, a meaning for my life,
so tell me Peredur, can you think upon your feet,
when you come to facing problems do they end up in defeat

For to take a life of travelling, you'll need a vibrant mind
to take on any situation and make the most of what you find

Mad-Dog: Well I wouldn't say I'm clever but I guess I'm not a fool
I haven't really learned much only what was taught at school,
I can turn a situation and generally it will pay
but if I were being honest I'd rather just run away.

Davy: School to me is a Nemesis that tries to mould a Nation
I was glad to see the back of it so I could start my education,
the education I got came from the School of Life
where the Teacher is experience and the Examiner is strife.

Sure it's hardly Academic as it's generally Common Sense
but it gets me peace of mind so it's ample recompense,
you said you'd run away from problems, did I hear that right
for taking that decision could add misery to your plight

You have to face your fears otherwise they just repeat
you'll go around in circles and end up in defeat.

Mad-Dog: I can hear the words you're saying, I've got a lot to learn
I'm going to need some fortitude for life when it gets stern,
maybe all this travelling is just a desperate thought
in normal circumstances it never would have caught.

Davy: Don't despair Peredur as Summer's now the season
sure take a life of travelling but do it for a reason,
live to learn is a good one and seek and you will find
take the step, grow in strength and get a balanced mind.

You've got till Spring to think things through and get yourself a plan
and if you need sound logic I will help you if I can.
I could talk about my experience, tell you what went wrong
hopefully you'll learn by it and from it you'll grow strong

But if travelling's no longer vogue its somehow lost its yearning
think about another plan, what about some learning?
I've got a library full of Books just wanting to be read
anything you want to know, it's all good for your head,

You're welcome just to borrow them for adventure you will find
and the effect is just the same, a broadening of mind.

Narrator: Another drink was poured and Mad-Dog was in his flow
the warming of the rum had made him all aglow,
he thought about the travelling, did he really want to go
for Davy's words were hitting home, life was not his foe.

Maybe he should re-evaluate, get another plan,
travelling was no good for him so that idea fell down the pan,
he thought of education and although not quite a fan
he definitely needed something, he was a restless man.

Mad-Dog: The more I hear your words, the more I see your point,
travelling is not for me, guess my logic's out of joint
but education I don't know, that just might be a waste
reading Books all right for some but it's not to my taste.

I'll end up going back to school but what's the point in that
sitting on a chair all day and with a dunce's hat.

Davy: When I mention education, schools not on my mind
just sitting in a class all day had got to be a bind,
hearing views from others that you take to as your own
where's the understanding for in ignorance you've grown.

The learning that I talk about you find out for yourself,
you get true understanding, a boon for mental health,
you'll learn to hold your head up high, be no others fool
for you will have your understanding, that will be your tool.

Mad-Dog: This learning that you mentioned, what's all that about,
you don't need school to do it, with that I have a doubt.
We all need to have a Teacher, someone to confide
and if not for instruction then maybe for a guide

Davy: Then I will be your Teacher, school will be this life,
you don't need bricks and mortar just a little knife
to cut through indecision so you might find a path
for when you have direction life becomes a laugh.

I could talk of foreign places and tell you of their manners
culture and their language, the Flags they use as banners
I could show you how to conduct yourself in any given situation
for etiquette's a priceless thing though it varies by the Nation.

I could teach you nobility and give you self reliance
so you could walk in any sphere and quickly gain compliance.

Mad-Dog: Interesting I must admit, I'm pretty glad I came
but one thing does intrigue me you said everyone's the same
so all these different customs are surely just for show
and if I was to learn them I wouldn't really grow.

The piece about nobility, well that sort of got my vote,
I could see myself with bearing, I would be a man of note
but I have heard you're born to it so I have little hope
the same chance as an Anglican getting picked as Pope.

Self reliance sounds good to me, I have it to some extent,
I can usually tackle any job if I give it my intent
but what about on a mental level for that is what I lack
is there anything that you could do to take out all the slack?

Davy: I still say people are the same, well in the things that matter
but if you know about their ways it will help you in the patter,
they'll see you as a learned man because you know the score
believe me now with education you can open any door.

Your perceptions of nobility are not the ones I mean
I was talking of a noble heart and not a noble gene,
I can turn you into a Gentleman, in the true sense of the word
though it won't be passing port, I don't dwell in the absurd,

It's more to do with understanding and the ability to serve
and facing tricky situations knowing you have the nerve.
I can give you self reliance to cope with every task
I'd throw in self assurance so you need not wear a mask.

Mad-Dog: That sounds pretty good, I think I've took the hook
and I can get this information from the pages of a Book,
well if that's the case then I won't need to travel round
for all the things I need to know can be easily found
But what about adventure though I get quickly bored
Village life's all right for some though you'll not see me as its Lord.

Davy: Education's just the means it's up to you to find the end
for that is your direction the plan which you depend
now I can give you strength of mind and it will be a start
but find out what you want yourself for you need to have a part.

You've got until the Spring you said plenty time for choice
so put it to the back of your mind and get a stronger voice.

Mad-Dog: Yes you're right that's months away I shouldn't really worry
with all the time that's still to come I need not have to hurry
so talking education then, what's your best advice
when faced with situations whose outcome won't be nice,

Should I walk away do you think or should I stand my ground
tell me now in honesty as your logic's sound.

Davy: Well the answer's going to vary dependent on the case,
if you stand your ground though don't let it end up in your face,
you'll have to be discerning, it's the same with anything
know the situation then become its king.

Now if you want real advice here's the best I've got
don't ever get too nosey, sometimes the water's hot,
keep that conscious all the time, you'll be a better man,
seriously it will do you well so remember if you can.

Mad-Dog: Well thanks for that anyway though its gone above my head
for it must have hidden meaning or is my logic dead,
all advice that's available and you say don't get nosey
if that's all there is to life then my future's pretty rosy.

Davy: You might think it simplistic but it gets me well through life,
I don't get needless hassle so it cuts a lot of strife,
if you want a balanced mind then heed the words I say
for other people's problems are the price you have to pay.

You take on other's Karma and it soon becomes your own
as you tend to get involved in it and so the problems grown.

Mad-Dog: Well looking at it that way it makes a lot of sense
as it leads to needless trouble with hardly any recompense
but it doesn't seem to fit in with what you've said already,
where's the man with purpose whose nerves are always steady?

Davy: Well if your help is needed then surely they would ask
so don't take it upon yourself to champion each task,
self restraint we're talking, aloof from other's plight
but if those others come to you then you're doing right,
Think it through you'll see my point I'm not here to deceive
it's more to do with Divine Light and ask and you'll receive.

Mad-Dog: Sorry but you got me there what is Divine Light,
that's a term I've never heard before, have you got it right?
If we're talking Religion here, I'm afraid I've got no yearning
God can stay in Heaven though I still would like the learning.

Davy: I'm not a Preacher man of that you can rest assured
though to know your purpose you'll have to know your Lord,
Divine Light is knowledge and it gives peace of mind
so it might be in your interests to seek and you will find,

Keep an open mind and who knows what you'll see
as when it comes to education that's the best from me.

Mad-Dog: I'll think it through though I must admit it doesn't have appeal
but anyway time moves on I've got to make that deal,
I'll let you know how it goes and when I'll make my start
so it's a case of see you soon for now I have to part.

CHAPTER 6

Narrator: When Mad-Dog left Davy he was more than a little drunk
he thought about Religion and dismissed it all as bunk,
sure at times when he was young he'd thought of being a Monk
but the nearest think he got to it was a dog collar as a Punk.

The other things the man said though, had a good appeal,
he could see the truth in what he said and took to it with zeal.
The only doubt that crossed his mind was the man real.
He might just be a religious nut with a new line in his spiel.

"Time will tell" he said aloud as that thought fell from grace
he had to get to Arthur's now so he quick picked up his pace,
he'd been given the directions so he could find the place
but time was getting on now so it might end up a race.

He carried on, on his way the road turned into track,
he found himself in a forest, his direction he did lack,
he had to carry on though for there was no turning back
or he'll end up like the Postman before his start he'd get the sack.

The forest that he walked through was a desolate affair,
devoid of usual brushwood it lacked its normal flair,
he saw the occasional glimpse of one, although pretty rare,
he imagined in the night time it could give quite a scare.

Twisted torso's fought for space exuding natural fear
forming Titans in damned Light contempting with their leer,
thoughts of Witches crossed his mind and terror it did rear
the only comfort that he had was Arthur's place was near.

The forest thinned eventually and Mad-Dog saw the site,
rows of Caravans all in line and packed in pretty tight,
a chrome one stood out from the rest, reflecting in the Light
Mad-Dog had found Lancelot for this was Arthur's Knight.

He checked the watch to find the time, saw it just turned four
"Right on time" he said aloud who could ask for more?
He walked up to the gleaming bulk and knocked upon the door
and waited there for quite a while for he did not know the score.

"Who are you and what do you want?" a voice said from behind,
he turned to see a skinny youth with trouble on his mind,
he looked at Mad-Dog menacingly well menacingly of a kind
for to put this fellow on his back would not have been a bind.

Mad-Dog looked upon the youth and took it in his stride
he thought he might be Arthur's son and so his hands were tied,
he could have put him in his place as right was on his side
but that might have been cold comfort if his prospects died.

Mad-Dog: I'm looking for Arthur Knight, I was told to meet him here
although it seems he's not about, he's not in that is clear,
he said to meet at 4 o'clock so I might know the score
so if you see him let him know, tell him Peredur.

Narrator: The youth just laughed at Mad-Dog's name his humour it was dry,
the only answer Mad-Dog got was a condescending eye,
it seemed he wanted trouble, Mad-Dog would now comply
for he was now upon the handle and just about to fly.

He squared up to the lanky lad his stance to go to war,
he had the firmest intention to strike him on the jaw,
the youth backed off a little he saw Mad-Dog was sore
but before a thing could happen they were interrupted by the door.

Arthur: Ah Peredur you're here then, I must have fell asleep
come on in, I need a drink our business it will keep,
Lager, Bitter, take your pick as both of them's in stock,
help yourself and don't be shy it's not kept under lock.

Narrator:
Mad-Dog followed Arthur in the youth would have to wait
he looked around the Caravan which was in a vibrant state,
ornaments were all around and they looked of quite some date
but the thing that really caught his eye was the beauty of the plate.

It looked just like Aladdin's Cave all decked out so bright,
vivid colours all around it was a splendid sight,
landscaped pictures on the wall gave elegance its height
maybe Mad-Dog got it wrong could he be an Arabian Knight?

Arthur: Right Peredur business calls onto the job in hand,
the work is not too heavy as there's not much in demand,
the Gas Man comes on Wednesday morn so make sure you are there,
you'll have to check the infantry in case he don't play fair.

Another job involved with gas is you have to dish it out,
I'll show you where we keep it when we're on our walkabout,
make sure you get payment as some of them are funny
they'll give you lame excuses as they don't like spending money.

The big bottles cost a Pony that's £25 to you
but on that you'll make a Fiver sort of makes the job less blue
the small ones go for £13 we get them in at ten
so that's three pound in your pocket, feeling better then?

Mad-Dog: With that I will not argue for it sounds like Heaven sent,
I wasn't really expecting it I just thought I worked for rent.
I'm glad now that you've told me it makes for a pleasant surprise
that extra bit of income will be handy no disguise,
How much are we talking, how many bottles do you sell,
So I can work it out and see that all is well.

Arthur: If you're looking real profit you won't make it in this season
we sell more in the wintertime the cold being the reason
and with half the Caravans empty things look pretty bleak
if you're very lucky you'll make £15 a week,
Originally my lad did it although just for pocket money
but now its gone to you I just hope he don't get funny

Mad-Dog: Well £15 sounds good to me better than nothing any rate
and as I wasn't expecting it I'll class it as good Fate,
it will all be put to good use the electric maybe food
but how come I am getting it if you don't mind me being rude.

Arthur: A very pertinent question and good of you to make,
it shows that you have standards, are not just on the take,
no I don't really mind you asking as it goes to make the job
just think of it as a gift, a little way to make a bob.

So anyway electric next, over that we'll quickly pass
as the fire, showers and cookers only run on gas,
every six weeks read the meters, work out what they owe,
I'll probably have to help with that, well until you find the flow.

Every week the lawn wants mowing well in Summer anyway
though the way my lad has left it, it's well into decay,
that's about your lot really well except for maintenance,
now there you'll have to watch them for they'll lead you on a dance.

Busted TV's stereo's they'll bring them in for repair
so if they do you charge them, after all it's only fair,
well I guess that covers it, for the time being anyway
so now you know the job do you think you'll make it pay?

Mad-Dog: Well it all sounds straight forward so hopefully I can
the maintenance's no problem as I'm quite a handy man,
you mentioned of a backlog, is there much work to be done
and do I have to do it by myself or will I have as help your son.

Arthur: Well I wouldn't hold much hope as my son is never around
but you are welcome to enlist him well if he can be found,
the backlog's only a couple of days but that is pushing hard
there's quite a lot of little jobs so just be on your guard.

Mad-Dog: Not too bad, I expected worse so I can't really complain
but there is this other matter though don't think me a pain,
I've got this job, well not quite but it'll be one day a week
I was hoping I could fit it in, juggle it so to speak

Arthur: That's not really a problem for after all you have to live,
is this one day set in stone or is there a little give?
Wednesday's out you know because that's the day for gas
but any other help yourself, once you've cleared the mass.

Mad-Dog: I'm not sure if it's fixed I'll have to see the man
though he seems decent enough so I'll do just what I can,
I've got to see him later to give a starting date
but I've got lots of time as he doesn't go out till 8.

Arthur: Why not phone him up, it might save you a walk
I mean I guess he must live local so it won't cost much to talk,
phone him now if you like then you'll know the score
and when you've finished that we'll have a guided tour.

Mad-Dog: A very good idea I would have took you up on that
but I haven't got his number so the chance of that is fat
though he did say that he knows you, might get me out of lumber
his name is David Smith, have you got his number?

Arthur: Davy, yes of course, why I know him very well
I've got his number here so you can give him a bell,
he's not an unfair man so I guess he will agree
but the only way to know for sure is to phone him up and see.

Mad-Dog: Yes I think I'll do that, it will save a lot of time
if you're sure that you don't mind, I'll give him a quick chime,
it will save a lot of walking for it was quite a hike
you know when things get moving I might get myself a bike.

Narrator: Mad-Dog phoned up Davy, arrangements then were made,
he was to start in 3 days with plans already laid,
the first job was the painting as it had started to fade
Davy could get it cheaply, he knew someone in the trade,

He said the day didn't matter as long as the work was done
and looked forward to him starting, thought it would be fun.
Mad-Dog put the phone down thinking he was on a run
for the day was looking brighter all the targets had been won.

Arthur: Job done then Peredur and you can go which day you like
so anyway you were saying you might get yourself a bike?
If you're talking about a Motorbike I know where one's for sale
and if you're looking for a bargain with this you cannot fail

Mad-Dog: Well it won't be quite just yet as there's still some sorting out
I wouldn't mind the details though, something to think about.
I'm not looking anything flash just something pretty cheap
and if it's any good, well hopefully it will keep.

Arthur: It's a Honda Low-rider some might say a Chop
it belongs to a friend of mine who used to be a Cop,
a full years taxed and tested, it was only used when dry
so the mileage's pretty low all in all a decent buy.

£700 he wants and believe me it will sell
it's definitely worth a look for from it you'll do well.

Narrator: Mad-Dog was about to answer but the door received a rap
Arthur went to open it to a youth in a baseball cap,
behind him stood another who was a similar sort of chap
and with the attitude they came with they both deserved a slap.

Duane: Arthur you old git is Tristram not about,
you wouldn't do us a favour go and give him a shout,
we've got some stuff for him, it might be to his taste
tell him it's for free otherwise it will go to waste.

Oh and whilst I'm here the Tele's on the blink.
Any chance of a look and tell us what you think,
sort it out for us and then you'll be a star
oh and tell old Tristram we've finished with his car.

Arthur:
Tristram is not about and I don't know where he's gone,
now I don't want you round here for to me you're just a con
as for the TV you know that's your affair
if it's not found in the contract, I'm afraid that I don't care.

If you want it fixing this man might sort it out
and it won't be by your method of just giving it a clout.
And I'll tell you this for nothing it won't be done for free
so you'd better start saving, now go don't bother me

Duane: Well the TV's no big deal I'll go and get another
and I'm going anyway as this atmosphere does smother.
Tell Tristram when you see him we'll meet up at the bar,
now I know you're getting senile but don't forget the car

Arthur: Sod off now you waste of time or I'll clip you around the ear,
get off out I've told you once you'll get no comfort here,
you come to me like you're the man you'll push your luck too far
you don't know what you're talking about he hasn't got a car.

Narrator: The door was slammed and Arthur came back in a foul mood
Mad Dog guessed though to himself that he didn't like the dude,
he had a mind to ask him that but thought it might be rude
so instead he just finished his drink content in being stewed.

Arthur: Oh sorry where's my manners have another can,
right now where was I, I was on about the man,
twenty years he's had the bike took it from brand new
modified it by himself and sprayed it Midnight Blue,

he's always kept it serviced and it's never let him down
it's got to be a bargain the best bike in the town.

Mad-Dog: 20 years old you say so the insurance will be cheap,
fully taxed and tested you know it might be worth a peep,
you know I just might have it with the things the way they are
for luck is not against me so my winnings will go far.

Arthur: Well if you're really interested the deposit it will keep
I know that I can trust you so I won't lose any sleep,
you have to have some transport you need to get around
and bikes run pretty cheaply well that's what I have found.

Mad-Dog: Well that makes all the difference I think I'll have a look,
the bike sounds like a bargain I think I've got the hook,
it will be a couple of days though as the money's not yet here
but yes I'm definitely interested of that you have no fear.

Arthur: Right then glad that's sorted, I'll phone him when you're ready
life's not bad round here, perhaps a little steady,
you seem the restless type do you plan to stay here long
or is it adventure that you seek whilst you're young and strong?

Mad-Dog: I'm not sure to tell the truth I've yet to make a plan
I did once yearn to travel but that's gone down the pan,
I'll definitely be here to Spring of that you can depend
it will give me time to think and old wounds time to mend.

Arthur: Old wounds time to mend now that sounds quite morose,
tell me mind my business but have you lost someone that's close?
Usually that acts as a spur but that's just to get away
so if you take that option it's a heavy price to pay.

Mad-Dog: My mother died not long ago so there's truth in what you say
maybe that's the reason that I want to get away,
I've never really thought it through I suppose it was the grief
but of all the reasons to escape I guess that was the chief.

Arthur: A bad mistake to run away it's just lucky you didn't go
for self doubt would just follow you in a life that's plagued with woe,
if you want to travel go ahead but take this on with care
if you're not happy in your Self you're unhappy everywhere.

Mad-Dog: Yes you're right, I understand I guess I lost the plot
with you and what that Davy said I feel like such a clot,
I would have gone to a life of woe just for pity's sake
thinking through I see it now what a big mistake.

Arthur: No harm done you know that now so put it out to rest
the next step in the logic game is find out what is best
I'd recommend travelling though as you'll be a better man
but do it for a reason and not just because you can,

Believe me I've been around, it's a big old World out there
you'll have some fun, some tragedy and perhaps learn how to care,
test yourself against the odds and find your inner strength
you'll pull through and find your depth a boon at any length.

Mad-Dog: Well Davy said he'd help me if I wanted to go
he'd teach me how to find myself so I could truly grow,
he said he could prepare me so I could make the grade
to hold myself in any walk and know that I was made

Arthur: You'll do well with Davy, he knows what life's about
he's had a lot of experience of that have no doubt,
I could help you too you know I'll gladly give advice
so between us have no fear our knowledge will suffice.

Mad-Dog: Yes that is a good idea, I will take you up on that
I could do with good advice and between you I'll get fat,
I like the idea of learning now I think it will do me well
so if there's anything you think of, please go on and tell.

Arthur: Reality's a state of mind that changes with the season,
education helps you cope and gives your life its reason,
it comes over on three levels ones that you should know
for with that knowledge understood your intellect should grow.

The first level is just vanity for that is all you see,
the Universe turns round the World and that revolves round me,
you see life then for what you get for that's your only mark
and if you don't get anything then life can be real stark.

To break the mould you need a knock to help you look beyond,
it could be the death of someone close and from it you get strong,
you will rebuild your life again though on a different plane
you see life now through joy of living and seem no longer vain.

This does not happen to everyone but use it as a guide
some people will not look beyond and from the Light they'll hide.

Mad-Dog: Davy said about the Light though what I can't recall
something to do with knowledge I think but I guess that's all
maybe I should look at it and see what I can find
for it seems to hold the key for strengthening of mind.

Narrator: Before Arthur could reply there was a knock upon the door
so he got up to answer it and found it was the Law,
a Police Woman stood outside and Mad-Dog dropped his jaw
she was quite a little lady for all he said was 'cor'.

CHAPTER 7

Patience: Hello Arthur it's Patience here, I need to see your son,
I'm afraid the station beckons him to explain what he has done,
he's been a naughty boy again and now it's time to pay
so I could do with finding him to hear what's he's to say.

Arthur: He's not here at the moment Patience but he might be on the site
I'll go and have a look for him before he makes his flight.
Come on in and wait for him I shouldn't be too long.
Kids today, waste of time where did I go wrong?

Narrator: Arthur went to look for him, his temper was now vile
Patience did as she was bid for she had to wait a while,
Mad-Dog saw her elegance and boy he liked her style
mountains climbed and oceans swum he'd have done it for her smile.

The Light brown hair soft sheened in gold that swept across her head,
the foxglove cheeks that stood up high, her lips so proud, so red,
her deep blue eyes, her ivory teeth all to her beauty wed,
she was definitely a looker, he wouldn't kick her out of bed.

Her curvaceous breasts standing proud made his heart strings sing,
her tight pressed waist, the tucked in blouse to emphasise the cling,
her shapely legs all tanned and smooth, a wasp without the sting,
Nature's really got it right isn't Patience a wonderful thing.

Patience: Hello are you new round here, I've not seen you before,
though your face isn't unfamiliar, you're not Peredur?
I think I went to school with you my name is Patience Meek
well that was before I wed, my maiden so to speak.

Mad-Dog: Oh yes I remember now but my how much you've changed,
I don't think I would have ever knew you, now isn't that real strange
so you must be married now, well he's quite a lucky man
it's not that one who was in our class, I think his name was Dan?

Patience: Danny Johnson you must mean, no he's now long gone
bit like the fellow I divorced, turned out to be a con,
no I'm on my own again, well me the cat and dog
moved round here for a quiet life and leave the grime and smog

But what of you then Peredur has someone got your heart
you used to see that Jennifer whose parents had the mart.
I heard she married Nigel Green and moved over to France
did anybody take her place or is your life just chance?

Mad-Dog: No I never married, I never really saw the point,
I've had a few relationships though none I would anoint
so what do you think then Patience, take pity on a sinner
me and you go out one night, who knows you might get dinner.

Narrator: Before Patience could answer the train was thrown of track
they heard the sound of shouting, Arthur had come back,
she left the Caravan quickly for the mood it sounded black
and the situation quickly calmed, she must have had the knack.

When Arthur returned to the van his mood was pretty poor
he muttered angrily under breath as he shut the door,
he got himself another can and offered Mad-Dog more
Mad-Dog gracefully accepted for he knew the score.

Arthur: Curse that bloody son of mine, where was I anyway
with that interruption I've forget what I was going to say,
it probably wasn't important so I guess that it will keep
well unless you can remember as my memory's asleep.

Mad-Dog: You were talking levels of reality if I remember right
you said the first was insular, well until you got a fright,
the death of someone close it seems was usually the scare
after that the door was knocked so we finished there.

Arthur: Well the next level that you come to I'll call it understanding you'll have to pay attention though for now it gets demanding, you perceive things in a different way you want to have some meaning and generally speaking at this point you take a spiritual leaning,

You think now more into life and death and try and look beyond, you see life now as some kind of test and from it you grow strong, you look for hidden knowledge though some might call it Light and from this Light you find your God and a blessing is in sight

Now that's only on one level for it's half the goal for you also have to find yourself to purify your Soul, you might try this by meditation or evaluation of Self either way won't matter as they both improve your health, Now at the culmination of this stage your essence leaves the shell the pure Soul merges with the Spirit and from now on all is well.

Mad-Dog: Your essence leaves your shell you say, now is that in a dream, for if that's the case call me Tom for I'm the cat that's got the cream, it happened this very morning in fact, I do not tell a lie but I left my Solar Plexus and spread out around the sky

From now on all is well, well things have picked up since though nothing too dramatic as life still has its wince.

Arthur: Well I don't know how you managed it but obviously you did you purified your Soul and those Demons you did rid, it also has another boon, a realisation you live on positive proof on an inner level that reality's a con,

You lose all fear of death, the action not the pain, you see it now as rebirth, a chance to start again, from this new beginning you take a Spiritual life you meet the Holy Spirit and love becomes your wife.

Now reality on the third level is when you see your God and after that occurrence your faith becomes your rod, I guess that hasn't happened yet as stage two was this morning I thought I'd tell you anyway then you might have some warning

Mad-Dog: Now that sounds a little frightening I hope that you're a faker it's not a thing I want to do, I'm loath to meet my Maker, this is just a wind up though, I think you're having a laugh what is this, an initiation that you do with all the staff?

Arthur: Got me then, you've found me out, you're more cleverer than I thought, you'll learn quick for mark my words you're very easily taught, anyway that's all for now, I'll have to show you round make sure that you know the score, where everything is found.

The Caravan Site has twenty vans with nine in occupation
so whilst it's slack enjoy yourself have a nice vacation
I'll introduce you round the place and warn you of their ways
so you'll know just where you stand and won't be in a daze

But first of all you'll need a place and I've got one in mind
it's Number Six, it's done out well so life won't be a bind.
The last fellow that lived here I guess he did a bunk,
left his gear and disappeared though you might think it junk

But have a look anyway you might like what you find
and if you do, help yourself for Fate is being kind.

Narrator: They walked across to Number Six and Mad-Dog had a look,
the place was clean and kitted out, he quickly took the hook,
Pots and Pans and Cutlery he had the means to cook
and as for recreation there was the TV or the Book,

For the place was like a Library decked from top to toe
Books were packed in everywhere his mind could quickly grow,
he liked the place, it suited him and so let Arthur know
yes he said I'll take it, wrap it up to go.

Arthur: I thought it would appeal to you he definitely kept it well
I don't know why he did a runner maybe time will tell,
I've left the place just as it was in case he might come back
but six months now has passed in time so I guess he got the sack.

Mad-Dog: I'll tell you what, it's like a Palace, tailored to my taste
I'm sorry about the other man but it's a shame to let it waste,
I could really settle in here as every thing's in place
and you say the fellow disappeared, gone without a trace?

Arthur: Yes it was a mystery, well it surprised me anyway,
he seemed a pretty reliable man not really one to stray,
he always paid his rent in time and trouble not a peep
he spent his time just reading, this fellow was real deep.

If you want it help yourself, just leave your bags in here,
here's the keys, I'll tell you what let's nip back for a beer.
I won't bother with the introductions you'll see then in good time
the only thing they have in common is they live a life of crime.

Mad-Dog: Sure that sounds good to me, I couldn't want for more,
we'll get on back to yours but first I'll lock the door,
a beer sounds pretty good to me it should go down a treat,
you can tell me about those other fellows those I've yet to meet.

Arthur: Right, see that building over there that's where the gas is kept,
the empty bottles leave outside and make sure the place is swept.
I'll give you the key when we get back and with it take a care
but don't get worried if you lose it for I have a spare,

The tools are kept in another shed that's placed behind my hut
I'll let you have a key to it just as soon as one is cut
until then should you need things give my door a knock
and I will come on out and the shed unlock,
The list of jobs is written down so I'll let you have a look
but help yourself to Lager first whilst I hunt the Book.

Narrator: Mad-Dog got himself a can whilst Arthur looked around
it did not seem no time before the elusive Book was found
as Mad-Dog scanned the list of jobs he felt pretty sound
they didn't seem a problem they would quickly go to ground.

Arthur: As you see it's straightforward, you shouldn't come to harm,
a bit of Plumbing, Joinery, just to keep the natives calm,
I'll be around all day tomorrow so I'll help you make a start
and I reckon that between us the jobs should quick depart.

Mad-Dog: Well it all looks pretty easy if you show me who wants what
it hardly looks a day's work as there's not really a lot,
I reckon that between us the jobs will quickly fall
and if I make an early start it should roll just like a ball.

Arthur: Very good, I like your style, we should get on quite well
you have a lot of drive in you as anyone can tell,
I'll tell you about the tenants so you might know the score,
you'll be wise to them when they knock upon your door.
See that Book you're holding, they're listed at the back
we'll take them one by one so the information you won't lack.

Narrator: They went down the list and it seemed quite an affair,
thefts, assaults and burglary, you name it, it was there,
as Mad-Dog heard the stories he thought it prudent to beware
for much to his misfortune he had found an Outlaws' lair.

Every name on the list had found himself some form
and not just petty things for some were quite a storm,
to have a Criminal Record was considered just a norm
so if the site was not quite hell it was getting pretty warm

Arthur: Well there so you have it, it's quite a motley crew
everyone a villain but what else can I do?
I can't afford to lose them as an empty site is not my goal
and I suppose the money's regular as they all sign on the dole,

So anyway, be careful or they'll take you for a fool
always keep a clear head, I find that is the rule.

Mad-Dog: I think I will remember that as they all seem pretty keen
I've been around myself a bit but these seem pretty mean,
it's such a nice secluded place, it fills me full of pity
the site should be a paradise though they'd rather have Dodge City.

Arthur: It's definitely a strange way to want to live your life,
where's the peace of mind when you get in all that strife,
mind you having said that I once would have wore that gown
though with time and better judgement I've learned to settle down.

So anyway leave them to it, let them rot I say,
easy money might sound good but what a price to pay,
prison life and painting Gnomes might be to their taste
but to me it just tastes sour, a life that's gone to waste.

Mad-Dog: So onto life I guess then and hopefully some learning
for ever since I've found the bug it's give me real yearning,
all those Books that fellow left will give me quite a pool
with all that knowledge they contain I'll never be a fool

Arthur: Yes you did alright there as he left a good collection
with Mythologies and the Occult he had a good selection,
all the knowledge they contain you could not ask for more
for with wisdom, Light and understanding you'll never end up poor.

Mad-Dog: The Occult you say, well I'm not sure, I've heard about its power,
raising Demons, devil's work it sounds like quite a shower,
that stuff doesn't appeal to me, I don't want to sound unkind
but from what I know about it, it will drive me out of my mind.

Arthur: Ah the Path of Shadows you must mean, arrogance at its height
that's not the road to travel, you want the Path of Light,
the Occults just hidden knowledge to help your mind expand
use it for your mental growth and it's nothing underhand,

Sure people use it for bad cause and try for personal gain
but that's not the road you want to take it only ends in pain,
self delusion is not the way for that's the path to tears
you end up devoid of purpose and controlled by all your fears.

Mad-Dog: Well that's a weight of my mind I was expecting something worse
from what I've heard about it, it seems to be a curse,
you spoke of hidden knowledge, could you tell me any more
for that sounded pretty interesting I would like to know the score.

Arthur: To actually define it would be the truth behind the truth a higher range of speculative thought, the search for lasting youth. I guess it is the search in life to find its highest meaning an elixir to your suffering for your purpose is its cleaning.

Mad-Dog: Well it all sounds pretty interesting albeit quite a bind for the knowledge that you talk about seems very hard to find, Eternal Youth, I'm not that sure for everyone must die it's just a natural end to things, you kiss your life good bye

But on the meaning side of things I'd like to know some more for a life without direction is a life that's pretty poor.

Arthur: Sure the knowledge is hard to find, it has to be that way constant study and cross reference is the price you have to pay, it's not an easy path to take of that I'll tell no lie but what a great incentive, to know you'll never have to die.

I'll not talking of the physical side, don't make that mistake I'm talking of Enlightenment, the icing on the cake, you know your essence does not die and you are not the shell and believe me with that peace of mind life runs very well.

Mad-Dog: Surely when you die that's it, you're buried in the ground, it's not like you come back again at least that's what I've found, death is just the end of things, it means your time has done, the trials of life are over and the Reaper he has won.

Arthur: How can you say that, after all you left the shell didn't that mean anything or at least have rang a bell? You told me that you left your body and spread around the sky surely that's conclusive proof that you can never die.

Mad-Dog: Maybe there is truth in it but it was just a dream, it wasn't in reality, well the reality I would deem maybe I imagined it and it was nothing more just a flight of fantasy not really Heaven's door.

Arthur: You could put it down to that if it will ease your mind but that is misplaced logic and I'm being kind, dreams are not just flights of fantasy heed these words real well knowing dreams is understanding you'll be surprised at what they tell, If you take the quest for Light they'll have their part to play not just small bare that in mind and work out what they say.

Mad-Dog: I never knew they said things, well that's new to me I guess I'd better look again now that I have the key and they help me to develop, well I never knew knowledge might be all around but I don't have a clue.

Arthur: You know now so don't worry, just try and work them out
come to any difficulty you can always give me a shout,
I'll not promise to know everything but I'll do the best I can
and maybe there are Books on it left inside the van.

Mad-Dog: Well it's certainly an eye opener I'll give it lots of thought,
it will add a new dimension to things that I've been taught.
I'll look to it with interest of that you can rest assured
for if knowledge is like gold I want myself a hoard,

You talked about Enlightenment what was that about
I've definitely heard the term before of that I have no doubt
surely it's an Eastern thing, at least that's what I'm told
shaven monks and meditation, I'm loath to join that fold.

Arthur: The Path of Light shines everywhere so take it where you can
it's not confined to petty dogma that's the domain of Man,
if you take the path to truth don't let yourself get restricted
for although the Light is everywhere it tends to get constricted.

People tend to get deluded by the power that it brings,
they put their own interpretation on the most mundane of things,
now this leads to confusion, an obstacle to your health
so if you take the Path of Light it's best you go yourself,

That's why I said cross reference, it gets rid of all the chaff
and hopefully you won't waste time in devotion of some gaffe.

Mad-Dog: We'll have to talk again sometime though at a later date
as looking at the time now I see it's getting rather late,
I guess I'd better get off home and get a little sleep
as morning does come early and those jobs won't keep.

Arthur: Time flies in enjoyment of that I'll gladly say
but morning brings a lot of work, a price we have to pay
so I bid you have a pleasant dream and leave you to its Fate
and we'll crack on tomorrow morn well try at any rate.

Narrator: Mad-Dog left the Caravan much the worse for wear
and as the place was dark now he should have a care,
he stumbled on a paving stone and this gave him a scare
and although he never fell he was very nearly there.

As he unlocked the Caravan door he had an aching head,
all the drink had took its toll the senses were now dead,
he stumbled in, found the light, then went straight to bed
for tiredness had took him and he and sleep were wed.

CHAPTER 8

Narrator: Peredur next found himself beside a glistening Lake the Sun beat hard upon his neck and his back did bake before him stood a wizened man, a Druid no mistake who talked of purpose and of life and the choices he might make.

Druid: Oh son of thy Spirit if it's the Grail that you seek then in the presence of learning you must always be meek for to learn you must listen so mark these words well never venture opinion from emotional hell,

Never speak out of ignorance for that makes you a fool, always be rational and never lose your cool, never utter a falsehood no matter the cost, never forsake your purpose for then you are lost.

Peredur: I thank you for those learned words and understand the truth you are a man of wisdom that does not stand aloof, I have a little problem though for I am in the dark my purpose is not manifest it has not made its mark.

Druid: Perhaps I might enlighten you and give your life some verve for the purpose that you look for is the purpose that you serve, the purpose that you seek will be the purpose you will find and the purpose you accomplish will be the balancing of mind.

Peredur: That sounds just like a riddle is this some sort of a joke you've left me in confusion as I'm of simple folk, it sounds to me like nonsense now have I got this right am I hard of hearing or just not very bright.

Druid: Sure it's a riddle isn't that what life's about you're here to work things out and take away the doubt, to give away such wisdom it's understanding would betray and you're the understanding so tell me what do you say?

Peredur: I'm the understanding yet I don't understand what's this all about, it sounds a little underhand, I have to work it out, that's what you're trying to say and if I find the answer the purpose goes my way.

Druid: Very good you're catching on, you now can turn a word for the riddle of the Grail is a riddle so absurd so tell me of its answer and you get to get first prize that's right Peredur I'm here to make you wise.

Narrator: Peredur thought awhile and tried to work it out he did not really have a clue as to what it was about, he looked upon the man again but this time with a doubt was this man a lunatic, had his reason took a clout?

Peredur: Just out of interest and please don't think me rude
for you look a man of learning and I hate to be so crude,
I guess you're here to help me that just might be a clue
but something really puzzles me, who the hell are you?

Narrator: With that a blinding flash for he had met a doubt
the smell of brimstone hit the air the Druid fizzled out,
in his place a familiar face though to reason quite a flout
for that figure was Owain, quite a reality clout.

The figure looked at Peredur and gave a little smile
he offered his hand in friendship, said he liked his guile
for Peredur had passed the test and did it with great style
he was now a man of understanding void of any bile.

Owain: You've lost your temper Peredur you've come on very well
the first stage now is over the darkness now has fell,
now that shadows gone away I can truly give you Light
so the Grail is up and running it you care to take the fight.

Peredur: I've come this far in ignorance shall I expect the same
or this Light you talk about will it lift the shame,
the Grail is up and running so I guess I have no choice
it's out of my control now but I've no protest in my voice

For defeating all those Demons has took me out of Hell
and with that peace of mind I can only come on well.

Owain: Very good and well worked out in life you should go far,
Hell has lost its hold on you Heaven's door is now ajar
so let's talk of understanding and from it you might know
that love will be inside of you and from it you will grow.

First of all we'll talk of life so you might know the score
you're here to live to work things out to rectify the flaw,
you're put on Earth to know thy Self so you might find some peace
for with that wisdom understood all fear of death will cease.

Now the quest you have embarked upon it called the Path of Light
Knowledge of the Divine to some to others second sight,
the more you know the more you grow so heed my words of truth
for the knowledge I possess will grant Eternal Youth.

It's not an easy path to take I'm not here to give you flannel
I'm here to guide you Peredur and open up that channel,
the Collective Conscious some would say though others call it Heaven
it's a higher state of grace that's all, a place for Spirits leaven.

Now to truly understand yourself I must tell you what you are
you are an evolving Soul on the path of life, with that you'll go far,
the next rung on the ladder is to give your faith a rod
and the only way to do this is with a firm belief in God.

So tell me Peredur, what's your perceptions on the matter
for if you do not have any all this will be just chatter.

Peredur: Well since I've seen those Demons it's cleared a lot of mist,
I have no doubt in my mind, yes He really must exist
as for my perception of Him well that's another thing
they say that He's unknowable so I'll just say He is king

Owain: It's good that you believe in Him that's a cracking start
and as for being unknowable I'll take that myth apart,
God is just a state of mind for those who have the nerve,
an enlightened Soul whose made the mark, its purpose is to serve,
To truly understand God is to truly know thy Self
so stick around I'll open up and give you Spiritual wealth.
Seven Spirits make the whole so this might seem demanding
but with patience, faith and love you'll get the Understanding,

That's a Spirit by the way along with Wisdom, Love and Life,
now all you needs the other three to help you cope with strife.
Discernment is the first one, with that your faith will grow
and very soon you'll get the next one, the ability to Know,

The last one on the list is the greatest of them all
for without the Spirit of Purpose you're heading for a fall.

Peredur: And that is God, I never knew I'm glad you put me wise
though I'll need time to come to terms, this is quite a surprise
so all my thoughts in that direction were well and truly wrong
He's not an old man stood aloof He was with me all along.

Owain: Don't despair now Peredur for in ignorance Man doth walk,
darkness clouds his very thoughts for his Ego likes to talk,
you see things now for what they are now you have some Light,
the muddied water now is clear you no longer walk in night.

Peredur: I know what you are saying though, it does not null the crime,
all my previous conceptions were just a waste of time,
all my so called learning has fell down to the ground,
I've been taught in ignorance with logic that's unsound

And yet they seemed so sure as they spouted out their lies,
I thought they were so clever yet it was only a disguise,
they know as much as me yet they tried to leave their mark
when it comes to understanding we were truly in the dark.

Owain: Days gone by now Peredur the dead must bury their own
take comfort from the Light and by the fact that you have grown
Perceptions' came from darkness there's bound to be some clashes
take your strength from rebirth, like the Phoenix from the ashes.

Now back to education for the Light still has to shine
and no recriminations for they sound just like a whine
Seven Spirits of God that much you already know
so I'll give you understanding so you might truly grow.

In the beginning was the word now that might be a clue
for knowledge was the mind's life it was just what it knew
without knowledge the mind is dead the Spirit cannot live
like the body need its food for energy to give.

Peredur: The mind is just a spirit, now did I hear that right
for that sounds a little strange has reason took a flight
so what about my body then is that a separate thing
how does that equate for it leaves a nasty sting?

Owain: The body's just a shell to carry you around
when it comes to death it's just buried in the ground,
I thought you already knew that because you left the shell,
so what happened to the rat, the one you were supposed to smell?

Peredur: Yes I should have realised that's something not forgotten
so I leave my shell and the body just goes rotten,
well that's peace of mind, it will mean I'll never die
I just cast off my shell and spread around the sky

So tell me more about the mind so I might truly grow
for you've filled me full of interest, a craving for to know.

Owain: Right so knowledge is its life though other Spirits come to play
they all merge in together after all that is the way,
you see with knowledge on its own it does not give you thought
you have to learn to rationalise if the wisdom's to be caught.

To save us from confusion we'll call this knowledge Light
and once you understand it, that's what makes you bright,
as you grow in understanding that Spirit grows in strength
and along with it grows wisdom, a boon at any length,

Now when you left your shell all these spirits became one
for the Soul was pure to merge, what with all the darkness gone.

Narrator: Now before Owain could continue a strange event occurred
it centred round the Lake where an eerie voice was heard,
Peredur looked to its direction and found himself a gird
though the three words 'It's for you' he found frankly quite absurd.

Owain: Well Peredur pick up that sword you'll not find it a bind
for that sword will do you well and from it you'll grow kind,
you'll need it in your quest for truth, the essence of the Grail
so go and fetch it bring it back and you will never fail.

Narrator: Peredur looked at the Lake wondering how to get it back
for he never learned to swim and a boat did lack
the chances of retrieval were to be honest pretty slack
though the vision must have guessed this after all she had the knack.

The sword drifted in more closer and Owain disappeared
and more to Peredur's confusion a woman's hand appeared,
a woman left the lake and with her beauty he was feared
for she took his breath away which left his Ego cleared.

Lady of the Lake: Take this sword now Peredur a blessing I do bring
for whilst you hold this in your hand it'll give an ample swing,
a balanced mind I'm giving you so you might know the truth
for this sword once set in stone will never prove aloof.

Spiritual understanding is what it is and from it you'll do fine
think of it as an access, a channel to the Divine
so take the sword and feel its weight, it was made for you,
you are now a man of God and to service you'll be true

Narrator: He took the sword and held it out, it was a balanced weight,
He swung it high he swung it low his curiosity for to sate,
he parried forth thrust and plunge the fun would not abate
he felt good, it lifted him into a vibrant state.

Lady of the Lake: Very good, now Peredur I see you like to play,
now that sword is just for good so be careful who you slay,
don't use it for personal gain for that will null its power
use it for the greater good or it will quick grow sour.

Narrator: Peredur returned the sword for he thought it right
he knelt himself before the woman a dubbing was in sight,
he reasoned with her radiance she was in the Light
and so he made a conscious decision he would be her Knight.

Peredur: My lady I humble myself before such grace,
those radiant eyes and that Angelic face,
make me your man and I will not lack the part
for the warmth of that smile is like a furnace to my heart,

Show me your favour and my devotion will be to your health
for the love Light in your eyes will be a gauge to my wealth.

Narrator: With that a golden Halo shone around his head
for Peredur the Ego was now Peredur the dead
in its place was humility for that was where it led
and he got the Ring of Purity, to service he was wed.

Lady of the Lake: A life of Divine service well you certainly passed the test,
you've found your one true purpose and that Spirit is the best,
you'll grow in understanding and wave your fears goodbye
for mark my words now Peredur you will never die.

I dub thee Knight of goodness for now you know your place
a blessing on you Peredur for now you'll grow in grace.

Narrator: Peredur was Knighted, the sacrifice was made
though to him it was no ordeal he thought it a fair trade
he gazed upon her beauty sure she was the fairest maid
well worth a life of service for her tribute must be paid.

He returned back to his feet on her beauty he had dined,
he knew that from now on his life would lose its bind
on retrieval of his sword he had a stronger mind
and a yearning for adventure to see what he could find.

Peredur: Perilous swamps and oceans wide I'll conquer all for you,
dragons slain and giants fought, I'll even do that too,
a life of dedication, for your well being is my concern
so tell me your desire and I will quickly learn.

Lady of the Lake: My desire is fulfilled for your loyalty I have won
so I will give you aid for the journey to be done,
you are now a man of purity devoid of any flaw
so I will enlighten you and tell you of the Law,

Never take more than you need as others go without
that's the best advice I've got and of that have no doubt
for it's all to do with balance so have no truck with greed
your only true desires are the comforts that you need.

It's called the Law of Humility, learn that lesson well
for whilst you walk with this Law you will never go to Hell,
you'll never lose your purpose and direction you will find
and believe me Peredur that is truly peace of mind.

Peredur: I thank you goodly lady for the comfort that does bring,
I understand the wisdom and to that concept I will cling
for a life without direction is no life to me as such
so I wouldn't want to lose it for the sake of taking too much,

If you have any more advice I will gladly listen
for like the Lake behind you I want my life to glisten.

Lady of the Lake: The next Law that I tell you will stop you being vain
for in the eyes of goodness we all account the same,
it's called the Law of Equality and it's a law that you must follow
it will help control your Ego for your Pride you must now swallow,

Everyone is equal for the Light was made for all
keep that in your consciousness and you will never fall.

Peredur: That's something I will bear in mind for it will do me well
for arrogance is not a thing that I would like to sell,
I seem to see it everywhere its really made its mark,
a comfort to the lucky few but to many life is stark,

Thank you Lady for that tip you certainly know the Law
with the wisdom you possess I definitely know the score.

Lady of the Lake: Goodly Peredur you'll do well for knowledge is your yearning
so I'll give you one last Law to help you with your learning,
the Law of Love they call it and it was never meant to deceive
basically its saying that you give in order to receive.

With these Laws inside you, you will never fall from grace,
the Light will shine upon you and brighten up your face
so follow them with fervency and you'll never go off track
a vocation truly blessed from which you'll not turn back.

Peredur: Thank you kindly Lady for the knowledge that you gave,
I can see the logic in it so its wisdom I will save,
with these three Laws to guide me I will always know my place
a comfort to well being in the trials I have to face.

Lady of the Lake: Then Fate will be beside you and things will go your way
you'll see God's work in everything for you'll have a Spiritual sway,
you'll never lack direction for the Light is always there
it will send your senses tingling and take away despair,

Every quest that you take on you will never be unseated
for with that sword I gave you, you will never be defeated.

Peredur: I thank you once again for the sword that you did bring
I will always use it kindly for its purpose is its swing,
it is not for selfish gain and now I know that to be true
I will use it for the greater good in humility I'll win through.

Lady of the Lake: Then you shall always flourish and excel in every fight
for now you are protected you walk in Divine Light,
a comfort to you Peredur for now your life is bliss
now just to seal the bargain what about a kiss?

Peredur: Now that to me is a bargain for it fills me with great joy
to hold to such affection makes me a lucky boy,
a blessing to my senses for I crave to taste your charm
and with that love inside me I will never come to harm.

Narrator: Peredur stepped forward and held the Lady tight
he kissed her tenderly and his Spirit took its flight,
he felt her warming aura and bathed in loving Light
the cat now had the cream so he was a lucky Knight.

The dragon down it's heads dispatched the Knight went on his way,
he journeyed hard and travelled long, the price he had to pay,
the beating Sun sapped his strength and made him want to stay
but Fate had called so he must go, more obstacles to slay.

A dense thicket, a thorny briar stopped his journey dead,
the thought of travelling further filled him full of dread
he must push on, that he knew so with his sword he led
swinging low and hacking through, his body quickly bled.

He passed the thorns and found the Rose, though she was fast asleep,
a Witches potion brewed with hate meant that is was deep,
he kissed her tenderly on the lips and from him life did seep
she awakened to his warming embrace, his love had made the leap.

CHAPTER 9

Narrator: Mad Dog awoke the following morning with a heavy heart,
he had a blinding head ache and the pain would not depart,
his mouth was like tinder as dry as a bankrupt's mart
so he got a drink of water, rehydration to restart.

The cooling water hit his mouth and trickled down his jaw,
he felt quenched his thirst had gone though his head still rattled sore
his thoughts were that of aspirin though thoughts were little more
for before he could pursue them there was a knock upon the door.

“Just a minute” Mad-Dog shouted and got quickly dressed,
I wonder who that could be, he thought as well as pest,
On opening the door though his Fate had come out best
for Patience stood before him so he felt truly blessed..

Patience: Hi ya Peredur, it's only me, I saw the light was on,
I thought I'd come and say I'm sorry, my humble hat to don,
I'd love to go out on a date so tell me I'm a sinner
but that offer of a ready meal means you're on a winner.

Peredur: Come on in, if you've got time we'll have a cup of tea,
excuse the mess, I'm not long up, well anyway that's my plea,
I moved in pretty late last night so I don't quite know the score
I hope he's left some teabags or that drink will never pour.

Patience: Teabags, sugar and some milk, it seems that you're in clover,
Arthur saw the light was on so he sent me over,
sure I've time to stop for tea my day has finished now
so go on put the kettle on from me you'll get no row.

Mad-Dog: Take a seat, it won't be long, have you had a busy day,
upholding law and order so crime will never pay,
not a job I'd do myself of that you can be sure
you were going to be a Doctor now I remember more?

Patience: Well every cloud had a silver lining so we often say,
the medical profession was not for me I couldn't make it pay,
too long hours, all that stress I'd end up in despair
so I joined the Police Force, it gives a lot more chance to care.

Mind sometimes you get those bad days, last night was one for sure,
when you couldn't care what happened just want to slam the door,
ah that son of Arthur's what's his life about
those drugs are going to kill him and of that I have no doubt.

Peredur: Tristram's on hard drugs, well that's news to me,
I've only met him once, I don't know him so you see,
that's a shame for Arthur and he seems a pleasant guy,
what a waste of life and it makes you wonder why.

Patience: True, they must know the consequences, it happens all around,
a life of woe and misery and at the centre smack is found
and all the petty crime as well to satisfy their need
dragging others down with them to satisfy its greed,

It's a shame for Arthur though he is a genuine man
he's a good friend to my family, he'll do anything he can.

Mad-Dog: Oh yes he's a diamond. he's really helped me out,
he's knows just what he's on with, of that I have no doubt,
he's really made me welcome and that's something that I like
he even knows this fellow who might sell me a bike.

Patience: If it's a motorbike you're on about I know which one you mean,
it's a Honda chop decked out in blue with a Wizard as its scene.
It belongs to my father, it was once his Pride and joy
and if you ever buy it you'll be a very lucky boy,

It's not an ounce of trouble as he kept it running well
the engine is eternal and as clear as any bell,
I used to ride myself one time, though never on that bike
for no one else could use it, it was his Pegasus if you like.

Mad-Dog: Well the description fits the bill so I guess it must be true,
it is a Honda Low rider decked out in midnight blue,
it looks like I will buy it for from a bargain I won't hide
so it you're very lucky you might even get that ride.

Patience: Now that would be a Godsend for to me that bike's a pearl,
I've always yearned to ride it, ever since I was a girl,
I will look to that with relish like the cat that's got the cream,
it will be just like my heaven, the fulfilment of a dream.

Mad-Dog: Well I'm glad that you like it for your pleasure is my aim
though it won't be for a while yet, they're still processing my claim,
so be just like your name sake and soon you'll get your wish
thundering down the highways you'll look pretty swish,

You've very early anyway, so what brings you on the site
it's only six o'clock to some people that's still night.

Patience: I thought I'd come and see you, I was hoping you'd be up
have a little chat and who knows share a cup,
I had to drop Tristram back for he only stopped the night
we couldn't hold him longer as the evidence was slight.

Mad-Dog: Been up to no good then, I guessed that from last night
with all the noise and shouting I thought that sounded right
so what was it about then or aren't I allowed to ask
for I guess you work in secrecy and in danger you must bask.

Patience: Well it's not quite like the Sweeney it's pretty quiet here,
a few fights at the weekend but that's mainly down to beer,
I suppose I ought to tell you but I'm loath to raise alarm
for the charge we tried to lay on him was grievous bodily harm,

It appears his car had an accident a case of hit and run
broke some fellow's leg so to him it wasn't fun.

Mad-Dog: Yes I can imagine, it's a very painful thing,
Arthur must be seething at the trouble he must bring
and this fellow was he local that would make it worse,
if Arthur actually knew him he's have thought he'd spawned a curse.

Patience: Well the man was pretty local, David Smith was his name
and Arthur knows him well, so shoulders all the blame,
he's feeling pretty bitter, I'll give that as a warning
and as you work for him it might be a cold and frosty morning.

Mad-Dog: David Smith, I know him, in fact he's my other boss
so when did this all happen for my logic's at a loss,
when I saw him he was limping but his leg was still intact
for the crash could not be recent for a plaster cast he lacked.

Patience: It wasn't really broken, I'm afraid that's just my phrase,
he just had cuts and bruises and a very nasty graze,
no if the leg was broken the penalty's much stronger
it would be A.B.H. he'd go down a little longer

But that will never happen as we didn't make a case
for Davy was a little drunk in fact out his face,
all he saw was a silver car that knocked him to the ground
it might have been a Lancia, his memory's not that sound,

Well Tristram had an alibi so we had to let him go
he probably wasn't the driver, guess now we'll never know.
Anyway enough of work my shift is finished now
I'll get off and take a sleep for to tiredness I must bow

So what's the plan now Peredur are you feeling pretty rich
for I like to have a good time I'm not just some cheap bitch.

Mad-Dog: A woman of taste then is it, well there's nothing wrong with that
though on the resources at my disposal I can't see you getting fat
now I think a meal was mentioned, well the choice is up to you,
here or at a restaurant with the washing up to do.

Patience: Tightness some might call it though I like that in a man,
it shows some self reliance and some knowledge of the pan,
I'll even wash the dishes if your cooking is alright
so you've got yourself a deal, though I've got to work tonight.

Mad-Dog: Well tomorrows fine with me for I'll need to see a shop
and who knows it you're keen I'll have news about the chop
so Patience don't be meek, come here, let's have a kiss
for I have a strong desire to change that name to bliss.

Patience: Well Peredur with charm like that I don't know what to say
but I guess as you are cooking it's a price I have to pay
so hold me tight and treat me right and leave me all aglow
and if your heart beat touches mine then I'll truly know.

Mad-Dog: Well lady now I'm truly blessed now paradise is tasted
tomorrow night you'll be my guest nothing will be wasted
now get some sleep don't work too hard, crime must sometimes pay
and I'll wait around and long for you, guess that's the lovers way.

Narrator: When Patience left it was early though Mad-Dog was awake
so he thought he'd go and see if there was a start to make,
now seven thirty was the time so it was a chance to take
for early starts are well and good but others need a break.

Arthur made them both some tea, he had a thirst to sate
and said there was no hurry as most of them slept late,
Mad-Dog settled down for the work would have to wait
and they talked of law and life and the things you love to hate.

Arthur: I never knew that you knew Patience, small world no mistake,
she said you were at school and I knew you were awake,
I saw the light was on and I thought you'd need a drink
the amount we had last night meant the mornings always stink.

Mad-Dog: Yes I understand that as I've got an aching head,
you wouldn't have an aspirin this pain is better dead,
I was surprised to see her really, especially in that guise
the years have certainly changed her, yes she's definitely got wise.

Arthur: She was going to be a Doctor but instead she chose the law,
well her father was before her so I guess she knew the score,
not a job I'd choose to follow but each towards their own
I'm afraid from childhood memories bitter seeds are sown.

Anyway I'm rambling and we have a busy day,
we'll do the empties first and get them out the way,
leave the lawn till later, it will make a pleasant afternoon
and hopefully by evening we'll play the winning tune,

That's the agenda anyway though first finish your tea
we won't be working too hard, I'm getting on you see.

Mad-Dog: Don't worry about the work as I'll take care of that,
you just take it easy and wear the foreman's hat,
the jobs look pretty easy though for some I'll need a hand
but that's only with the theory so it won't take much demand,

No the law I feel the same way, I've never had much truck
usually by bad judgement though sometimes by bad luck.

Arthur: A necessary evil but that's a price we have to pay
for the society we live in doesn't have an equal sway
don't mistake me for a liberal for that's not what I'm about
but every ones a victim of that I have no doubt,

Now that might sound strange to you but I mean it in good faith
for from the Laws of Karma nobody is safe.

Mad-Dog: Karma now I've heard of that but I'm afraid there's nothing more,
when it comes to understanding I'm afraid I'm a little poor
so what's the concept all about for my learning has a flaw
I don't know much about it, I didn't know it was a law.

Arthur: Natural justice some might say though in a supernatural sense
so vigilantes don't apply for you'll hate the recompense
basically there's three of them, some might call it Fate
follow them in confidence and life becomes you mate.

Mad-Dog: Well Fate seems with me at the moment, things are going my way
but I'd really want to know more for then my luck might stay
so tell me of these laws so I needn't end in strife
for if Fate will stand beside me I'll have a happy life.

Arthur: You could have many happy lifetimes if you play it right,
you have the Law of Consequences to help you with the fight
for life is not a one off you must come back again
to rectify mistakes and to try and null their pain.

Mad-Dog: Well I've heard of reincarnation though I didn't think it true
but I'll keep an open mind so tell me what to do,
what is the Law of Consequences what does it actually say
for with that knowledge deep inside me life will surely pay.

Arthur: Well basically the consequences go from one life to another
so actions taken this time round might come back and smother,
a wealthy lifestyle's well and good but next time you'll be poor,
it's all to do with balance, simple nothing more.

Mad-Dog: So next time round I'll be a Toff well I can cope with that,
financial stress will leave my bed I might even end up fat
but I guess there's more to life than that so tell me of my flaw
for Karma seems much more than that it seems a complex law.

Arthur: Well that was just a guideline to help you balance Fate
always take the middle way and learn to play it straight.
If you lead a balanced life then you'll be free of blame
and chances are your next life will equate the same.

Now Karma in one lifetime is another one you'll keep
basically it's saying what you sow so shall you reap,
it's called the Law of (Poetic)Justice and without it you are blind
you'll just think Fate's against you, hardly peace of mind.

The last one of the trio is called the Law of Regulation
it's all to do with balance and knowing of your station,
action and reaction is really all you need to know
so think before you do things and your luck will surely grow,

I could go on and give you detail if you really want to hear
but that lot should suffice for it satisfies your fear.

Mad-Dog: Well if you wouldn't mind as to me they sound the same,
I would need elaboration for my understanding's lame,
what's the difference between them I would truly like to know
so I might understand it and watch my wisdom grow.

Arthur: Three aspects of the whole so it does lead to confusion,
I guess I better expand on it to save you some delusion,
they are basically the same, you are right in that respect
the only real difference is the time taken to effect,

The first one is a lifetime well two to be quite true
but I've covered that already so onto pastures new
the second ones a season, that means a length of time
so the outcome's not immediate though you still pay for your crime,

You'll probably need an example to fully drive that home
so think of Poetic Justice and you won't have far to roam.

Mad-Dog: Well I think I understand that I've seen it for myself
it's a bit like starting smoking and complaining about your health,
that might sound too simplistic but it's only an example
I can think of other things, in fact there's quite a sample

Malicious gossip getting back to who it started from
people trying to take the biscuit though only getting a crumb,
yes I've definitely seen it, pretty common that's a fact
definitely a case of diplomacy and tact.

Arthur: .Well you know the score though sometimes it's quite lateral,
you have to look more deeply though to you that'll come quite natural
for now you've recognised it you'll learn to look beyond
and see Fate as an ally and work it so it's fond,

The last one on the list, well it's actions straight away
you'll get your retribution on the very same day,
so the only real difference is the time they take to work
but have no fear they'll happen and your penance you'll not shirk
So follow them quite wisely and your life should run alright
you'll have the understanding should you keep them in your sight.

Mad-Dog: Well I certainly see the logic and I'll take it all aboard
for the laws of which you speak of are worse than any sword
and if I follow Karma then my life will never sour
as Fate will be on my side and I'll truly feel her power.

Arthur: It will run a little easier and take away some pain
but sometimes you'll have to suffer, it's the only way to gain
for life's no bed of roses, there's experience to be got
and the only way to earn it, is to get it whilst it's hot,

You have to sample life to know what it's about
that can easily lead to trouble for life can have a clout
so learn to understand it and you will come out best
never call it suffering after all it's just a test.

Mad-Dog: The trials of life some people say so I guess I see your point
so it looks as if my logic was slightly out of joint,
I thought I'd have the good times and life would be in clover
but it seems I'm premature as my suffering's not over

So what's it all about then, why's it such a test
I mean I've had a lot of hardship, what is its request?

Arthur: I guess it gives you character, a sort of inner strength,
you grow in understanding, a boon at any length,
you look at things more deeply and learn the greater plan
and from it you'll grow stronger and become a better man,

No suffering is good for you, well more so when it's done
it purifies the Soul and tells you that you've won.

Mad-Dog: Then maybe mine is over and things will now be well
for according to your logic I've already left my shell,
thinking through it must be right as life is getting better,
sadness now has no hold, it's sort of lost its fetter.

Arthur: You may still have the hardship though it won't seem as such
for with a positive state of mind it will not harm you much,
life may seem a struggle but you'll have the inner knowing
whilst others call it hardship you'll just call it growing.

Mad-Dog: I guess you must be right, I can sort of see it clearly,
I'll keep your good advice and hold onto it quite dearly,
those laws of which you talk about, I will gladly follow
and any torment comes my way then I'll quickly swallow.

Arthur: That's the spirit, take your strength and grow in understanding
for when you know the bigger picture life gets less demanding,
you see life is just a state of mind, learn that lesson well,
look to it as heaven and soon you'll have no hell,

Anyway it's still quite early do you want another drink,
I'm in no hurry but it's up to you, tell me what you think?

Mad-Dog: I suppose I'd best get started as I've sort of got the urge
for now I've seen the list those jobs I want to purge,
I can see some signs of life though I'll still be very quiet
for waking up the neighbours might just start a riot.

CHAPTER 10

Narrator: Mad-Dog took the list for he needed to know the score
and went to the vacant Caravans to rectify each flaw,
they were only minor jobs, they were basic nothing more
and with Arthur there to guide him they soon fell in the war.

The first one was the easiest, it was just a leaking tap,
a brand new washer later and the job became a wrap,
the morning saw good progress and the list got quite a gap,
the vacant vans were finished there no longer was a flap.

Arthur: Very good you're doing well, with your work I cannot chew
but stop awhile, we'll have a break, I'll go and make a brew,
the major work is finished now, you've took out most the bind
so have some tea, a sandwich too, I'll see what I can find.

Narrator: As they got to the Caravan they heard the telephone ring
so Arthur quickly answered it to news that made him sing,
he was about to have new lodgers, now here's the strangest thing
it was going to take four Caravans to bring them under wing.

Arthur: That was quite a windfall you must have brought me luck,
it seems we have new lodgers, four Caravans they have took,
it appears that Sunshine Park has fallen to the ground
and the tenants that they have want new accommodation found,

There might be some more later we'll have to wait and see
but with all the Caravans ready it's a case of lucky me.

Mad-Dog: It seems that Fate is with you so you must be doing right,
things are picking up, you might soon fill the site,
it will mean more work for me but I can cope with that
for all the extra gas money will knock my senses flat

But seriously I'm glad for you, you are a decent man,
you deserve to have good luck so take it whilst you can.

Arthur: Well I certainly need it but thank you anyway,
I appreciate your loyalty and take heart from what you say,
I tell you what, to celebrate, what about this deal
we'll nip off down the village and I'll treat you to a meal.

Mad-Dog: Thank you for the offer but there's work still to be done,
I won't be truly happy before all the battles have been won,
I could do with a lift though, though that will keep till later
for Patience wants some dinner and it looks like I'm the waiter,

I've got to get some shopping in to help me with my plight
but I'm not in any hurry, it's not till tomorrow night.

Arthur: So you've got a date then, well you're the lucky man,
she's definitely a virtue guess I'm her greatest fan,
tell me when you're ready and I'll take you to the shop
and if your money's ready we'll nip and see that chop.

Mad-Dog: Now that's a good idea so I'll get to see her dad
and if I buy the bike then I'm sure to leave him glad,
the money won't be ready though as it was only yesterday
so I hope he's not impatient as things won't go my way.

Arthur: Well if you're really serious I'm sure he'll gladly wait
for if he knows it's coming he won't mind if it is late,
we'll nip and see him later and I'll have a little chat,
you might even get the bike today, what do you think of that?

Mad-Dog: Sounds just like a dream so tell me I'm awake,
things are looking good of that there's no mistake,
if you think that he would go for it, it would be a deal
when it comes to my approval you've definitely got my seal,

I'll sort the work out first though, get it out the way
then we'll nip and see the man, see what he has to say.

Arthur: Well the kettles nearly boiling so we'll have a cup of tea,
the work won't take too long now, just you wait and see,
you can do the lawn and I'll pursue the list
and I reckon that between us nothing will get missed.

Mad-Dog: Well I appreciate your offer it will save a lot of work
and gladly I'll accept it though from toil I hate to shirk,
if the bike was up for grabs I would hate to turn up late
so anyway where were we, I think you mentioned Fate.

Arthur: Ah Fate it is, well to tell the truth it's a complicated matter,
it works beyond reality seen and you logic it could batter,
it's a very tricky concept and it won't be easy to define
for your perceptions of it are different to mine.

I wouldn't call it luck as such for it goes a lot beyond,
it's more to do with destiny helping you grow strong,
now the destiny I'm talking of to most people is unknown
they struggle blindly through their lives, a dog without its bone.

The purpose of life I'll call it, it's what life's all about,
you'll have to understand it first or Fate will always flout.

Mad-Dog: You said purification of the Soul if I remember right
so you may truly know thy Self and head off to the Light,
I think I understand that though could you tell me more
for I need to know its purpose as I don't know what it's for.

Arthur: You have to find your balance so you might learn to serve,
that's the purpose of your being so from it do not swerve,
you're here to tend the Earth, make sure it rotates well
so everyone had heaven and no one's life is hell,

It's all to do with balance, the Universe at one
when you truly understand that your life is not a con.

Mad-Dog: So we're here to serve a purpose, to follow Nature's Law,
sound a bit simplistic, are you sure there's nothing more,
that does not sound like Fate to me how does that fit in,
unless we're talking retribution, payment for a sin?

Arthur: Life is pretty easy, it's only Man that makes it hard,
he over rationalises everything his vanity to guard,
he looks for hidden meanings which seldom can he find
for they don't exist, they're only in his mind,

Now to truly understand Fate you'll have to look beyond
and as it works on many levels this story might be long.

Mad-Dog: Well you've filled me full of interest of that I will admit,
my curiosity now wants sating so I hope that you don't quit,
I'd like to know the story if you think we have the time
for not to know its ending well to me would be a crime.

Arthur: Well I've told you of one aspect, infringement of the law
but it's also there to help you to rectify each flaw,
it throws up situations where you must come out best
so another of its aspects well I guess would be a test,

I'll give you one example so you might know the truth
And know Fate as an ally and not something aloof.

Mad-Dog: That sounds a good idea as confusion's settled in,
Fate sets you up a challenge in the hope that you might win,
that's a concept that is new to me I'll have to read the Book
and curse myself for ignorance I thought it was just luck.

Arthur: Your ignorance is fading, don't take yourself to task,
the Light is coming through now so in it you might bask,
I'm looking for example so I'll need some time to think
just give me a few moments as I've got to make a drink.

Narrator: Arthur poured the tea out with the problem in his mind,
he pondered on the subject a solution for to find,
he thought about his life and when it was a bind
and there he found the answer for Fate was being kind.

Arthur: Right I've got a pearler, this should illustrate the case
it happened in my building days when I had a younger face,
I used to do some roofing which was quite a dicey job
but I had to make a living and it earned us a few bob,

I remember this particular job it turned out quite a bitch,
the roof was leaking everywhere, it only lacked a ditch,
two houses into one and they called it Ivanhoe
quite a job I tell you and it filled me full of woe,

The chimney wanted pointing, slates were missing by the score
the flat roofs wanted fixing from where the felt had tore,
the valley was atrocious there were debris everywhere,
water flooded in from it like it didn't have a care,

We had to point the ridges and do the hips as well
quite a place that Ivanhoe it was a Builder's hell.

Mad-Dog: It certainly sounds like you had your work cut out,
I've done it myself so I know what you're about,
two house knocked together was quite a lengthy stay
though looking on the bright side I guess you made it pay.

Arthur: Four days we were on there and it was just the two of us,
wind and rain it took us as autumn often does,
up and down the ladder carrying red hot bitch
but the job ran pretty smoothly we never had a hitch,
We never had I hitch I said, well that's not strictly true
for when it came to payment things got pretty blue.

Mad-Dog: Oh a tricky customer I've seen them in my time
they think that if they pay you they're committing some dark crime,
so how much are we talking about it sounds like quite a lot
for by the sound of all that work it could be quite a pot.

Arthur: £1,500 well the equivalent today
quite a heavy loss with the materials we had to pay,
I should have realised really as she had a funny way
I think that come to finance she did not have much say,

When first I went for payment I noticed she was meek
said she'd pay by cheque but it wouldn't be for a week,
we said that would be fine though could we make it cash
for by the time it took to clear another week would dash,

We came back in a week and then came out the sting,
she played the ripped off customer, with relish that's the thing,
she said she'd seen a surveyor and paid him fifty Pound
so he'd go up the ladder and have a look around,

She told us he had told her that she had just been done
for the work that was accomplished was only worth a ton.

Mad-Dog: What is this a wind up, now have I got this right
so half of what the job's worth to take it in his sight,
I don't think I am hearing this my logic has gone mad,
what happened to reality was his stupidity that bad

Arthur: Well that's the story anyway, a Fairy Tale most grim
guess on seeing builders she thought that we were dim,
she offered me £240 as if it was a favour,
we told her not to bother as we'd take a legal flavour,
We had to walk away with no chance of recompense
and put it to experience, does that make any sense?

Mad-Dog: Not to me I'm sorry but you've left me in confusion,
you left it as it was now that's a strange conclusion,
you never saw a lawyer, you just let it abate
why is that I wonder and how's it swing with Fate?

Arthur: Court was not an option it was just a waste of time,
we were out of pocket already without paying for her crime,
the lifestyle that we followed meant our chances were too lax
for we never followed society nor paid our income tax.

Mad-Dog: Not wishing to sound funny because I've worked that way as well
but surely I could turn around and say you made your hell,
you broke the Law of Karma when you never paid your dues
so it was just a matter of time when the action hit the news.

Arthur: Logical at first sight though you have to look much deeper,
Karma is a personal thing, Man's law is not its keeper,
to think of it in that Light is a very shallow view
for the society we live in is a state without a clue,

Now my circumstances at the time admittedly were poor,
bills to pay, food to find but I guess you know the score,
it festered anger afterwards when I thought about the scene
with all the struggle yet to come I was feeling pretty mean,

I rethought the play over again with things I should have said,
I knew it was too late by then but it was still inside my head,
I just couldn't seem to let it go until I had a shock,
it was quite an eye opener I would say, a real reality knock.

I found myself in argument but with no one else about,
two different aspects in my head but one was just a doubt,
we fought awhile and argued more but then I scored a goal,
I recognised my anger and then I took control,

It was quite a major breakthrough for I rectified a flaw
so Fate was really with me it was just following its law.

Mad-Dog: What happened with the woman then, did Fate have its say
for she herself transgressed the law, I guess she had to pay,
if Fate was with you that way she must have been without,
I expect she got her just dessert for Karma has a clout.

Arthur: To tell the truth I couldn't say I never saw her again,
I reasoned it was sorted so it took away my pain,
I was not there to judge her for that was not my place,
I was just content to let it lie for now anger had no face

So that is Fate as a test it helps you face your woes
it gives you tricky situations to keep you on your toes.

Mad-Dog: Yes I understand now though it was quite a lateral thing,
I'll have to look more deeply to take it under wing
does it work in other ways so I might truly know
for by reading into situations I could really grow.

Arthur: It takes away the obstacles that try and block your way
though you'll need elaboration to understand my say,
this one's very subtle which sometimes is the case
sometimes you'll look more deeply for Fate to show its face.

Mad-Dog: I suppose it works like that though in ignorance I do plea
but before we get real into it can I have a cup of tea?
I think my head has not recovered my mouth feels pretty dry,
I hope that doesn't sound too rude but I was never one to lie.

Arthur: Sure I'll put the kettle on and quickly it should boil
that's the trouble with a hangover they're pretty hard to foil,
too many morning afters have come and took their toll
for drink although it's pleasurable has a downside to its role,

Sometimes you know I wonder is it really worth the stress
because I've found the night before is prone to leave its mess.

Mad-Dog: Sometimes I feel the same way, I wonder what it's for,
I find the morning after is not worth the night before,
once I got the pleasure but now it's only pain,
I guess I lack direction, the real cause of my bane.

Arthur: There's truth in what you say, you have some understanding
for a life void of direction is apt to prove demanding,
you take small comfort when you can, it could be drugs or beer
but it's just a waste of time with consequences dear,

That brings us back to Fate again your direction it does seek,
it takes down all the barriers that makes your purpose weak,
the tale I have to tell you concerns a friend of mine
who although he was a builder he liked to write a line,

He was the same man from the other tale so that's a bit of luck
for the story of the rip off ended in a Book,
now his purpose was to write as he had to spread the word
although he was no preacher as he found them quite absurd,

He wrote of Higher Truth with the most eloquent of say,
he was certainly a deep one, where was I anyway?
Yes I remember one time a Book was on his mind
things were going pretty well as life was being kind,

In fact things were going too well so he couldn't get the time,
his purpose it was thwarted and Fate thought that a crime,
life was running smoothly and he could afford to take a break
so the jobs just seemed to cancel so more time he could make,

He had time to write the Book and went to it with great zeal
contented by the knowledge that he did not have to steal.

Mad-Dog: So that's another aspect, now not wanting to sound funny
but both those aspects there have caused the loss of money
that was quite a drawback and you said you had to struggle,
that's quite a mixed opinion of the points you have to juggle.

Arthur: It's not the quality of living but the quality of life,
money wasn't the problem he lacked financial strife,
when you look to the big picture you'll know just what I mean
it's to do with inner pleasure, peace of mind that's keen.

Mad-Dog: I think I understand that well I'm heading its direction,
it seems my logic's out of joint and in need of some correction,
the Writer must have liked to write I guess it was his pleasure
so Fate was really being kind and gave him time for leisure.

Arthur: Got it in a nutshell so it was for the greater good,
Fate is there to tell you things if they are understood,
it's quite a complex thing but one that's well worth knowing,
it gives you peace of mind and stops the stress from growing,

Anyway the drink is done so we'll have that instead
and if you want a sandwich I've still got lots of bread,
what about some cheese and ham, they go together well
say the word, it's quickly done, the time it takes to tell.

Mad-Dog: I'm not that hungry to tell the truth the tea will do me fine
thanks for asking anyway but I'm afraid I must decline,
my stomach seems a little rough so my appetite is gone
so I'll quickly have this drink a settlement is on.

Arthur: If you're worried about the job we still have lots of time,
have a meal, take a rest after all it's not a crime,
it'll do you stomach good you know it needs to have its food,
you've got time, the work's quick done, I'm in a hungry mood

Mad-Dog: I thought I'd get a move on as the bike has got my vote,
I might have something later would you give a weather note?
I'll quickly get this work done then we'll be on the way,
I guess it's just impatience but it's the price I have to pay.

CHAPTER 11

Narrator: Mad Dog quickly drank the tea and soon was out the door,
an hour later the lawn was done and so ended the war,
most the jobs on Arthur's list had been done before
for the people tired of waiting had rectified their flaw,

Mad-Dog was ecstatic now they'd put the jobs to flight,
the toil was done he felt relieved his prospects were now bright,
Mad-Dog's lift was given and the shop came into sight,
he and Arthur entered in and things just worked out right.

Cyril: Arthur, Peredur how are things, I've got news for you,
you might have some new lodgers, two before you're through,
a couple came this morning and they had an urge to stay
so I gave them both directions, pointed them your way.

Arthur: Well things are certainly picking up that will make it six,
things are going well today, my luck has got a fix,
thank you Cyril I owe you one you've done a real good turn,
with luck like this I'll need a fire for I'll have money to burn.

Cyril: Ah money yes now Peredur I've gave this matter thought,
I could borrow you some money until the cheque is caught,
£300 the best I've got if you need it in a hurry,
I'll subtract it from the sum that's due you needn't have a worry.

Peredur: £300 sounds good to me you've timed it pretty well,
Arthur knows a fellow with a motorbike to sell,
he wants £700 for it, a bargain at that price,
I could perhaps give him a deposit, this should come in nice.

Cyril: Well I could go one better and write him out a note,
tell him I'll redeem it, that's sure to get his vote,
if that's the case we're evens it comes out to a grand,
here's £300 now, take it in your hand.

Narrator: Mad-Dog took the money thinking things were going well,
all his little problems, one by one had fell,
he didn't buy the groceries he thought what the hell,
he'd take her for a meal instead then quality would tell.

The next task on the agenda was to visit Arthur's mate
before the blinking of an eye they were stood outside his gate,
he gave the bike the once over, it was in a healthy state
so he bought it straight away, his yearning for to sate,

The bike was ridden straight back home with Mad-Dog on the seat
it ran just like a dream, he found it smooth and fleet,
they were soon back on the site with Mad-Dog's final treat,
the meal was just a sandwich but at least he got to eat.

Arthur: Sit on down we'll have a bite it won't take long to make,
you did well there, what a bike, a bargain no mistake,
the works been done and just in time with new blood in the air,
looks like things are going well, here endeth the despair.

Mad-Dog: Well you certainly speak the truth, I see what you are saying,
things are definitely picking up, you know I might start praying,
this luck has no Earthly place it's filled me full of wonder,
there's more to reality than meets the eye so I'd like to steal its thunder.

Arthur: There's wisdom in what you say though slightly out of joint,
I would not pray for material things I'm afraid there is no point,
you want to pray to improve yourself then you'll find your peace,
self development is the answer so then those doubts will cease.

Mad-Dog: I must admit I do have doubt my confidence does lack
and dearly would I say a prayer if I thought it might come back
but the words you say to tell the truth have got me in a lather
I can't see myself with confidence just saying the Our Father.

Arthur: The prayer that I talk about takes another form
some might call it affirmations but a Mantra is the norm,
first I'll tell you how it works so your logic will be safe
and if you truly understand then that will be your faith.

Mad-Dog: Tell me more about this faith for I think I've got it wrong,
the concept that you talk about seems a lot more strong
belief without proof I thought it was but that cannot be right,
you seem to call on logic to help you with the fight.

Arthur: Now the concept that you follow well some would call it blind,
it might help you with your living but it's hardly peace of mind,
you have to look much deeper to get the understanding
for faith without good reason is apt to prove demanding.

Mad-Dog: I think I understand that, I can see the point you make,
you get your faith through reason and not blindness's sake
that still sounds pretty dicey for you'll not know for sure,
your reason might be mislaid your logic might be poor.

Arthur: Well faith to me's an inner knowing from logic that is sound,
it's built from wisdom understood and experience I have found,
it might evolve over time but its truths seldom change
but I keep an open mind as the supernatural can be strange,

So anyway about the Mantra we'll give the matter thought,
it's all to do with repetition and hoping it gets caught,
an example would be two times two with its answer four,
you seem to know it straight away, a reflex nothing more,

Now that might sound simplistic but it illustrates the case,
knowledge learned and understood with memory as its base,
it goes below your conscious level so you might know the score
and reacts itself accordingly when a problem comes to fore.

Mad-Dog: I can sort of understand that well in a simple way,
the answer just comes naturally you don't think before you say,
I can see it working to a point, well with sums and that
but confidence I'm not too sure, it's more to do with chat.

Arthur: First you have to analyse it and bring it to the Light,
find out what it is then it will lose the fright,
it's pretty easy really after all we're all the same,
we have our cross to bear we all shoulder the blame,

When you talk of confidence it's the fear of the unknown
and this saps your self esteem for nervousness is sown.

Mad-Dog: I always thought with confidence it came from circumstance,
haunted childhood memories that lead you on a dance,
people pay good money to try and sort it out,
endless hours of analysing to find out what they're about,

They say the mind is complicated, an expert touch is needed,
you have to dig the garden so all self doubt is weeded,
we're talking major trauma here with problems buried deep,
hidden memories long since gone but the heartache they still keep,
Now I understand the reflex side and from it I won't shirk
but surely from an emotional view it will never work.

Arthur: When I mentioned two times two it was on a mental level,
simplistic as I said but it helps to beat the devil
for the devil works in darkness his fear is the unknown
and so by understanding him his covers quickly blown.

Mad-Dog: Well I don't know about the devil after all he don't exist
unless I'm missing out here as there seems to be a twist,
what has he with confidence that seems a little strange,
I think I'll need elaboration to bring him into range.

Arthur: He's a negative imagination that says that things aren't well,
he's an aspect of your mind that likes to give you hell,
he likes to work in darkness for his essence is self doubt
and though you just imagine him he can leave a nasty clout,

Now when you meet a person for the first time they're unknown
and he'll play upon this ignorance so self doubt can be sown,
the trauma that you talk about we'll deal with that point first,
a Mantra will not fix it that bubble will have to burst,

The Mantra will not work unless the barriers are down
so first defeat those Demons and take away their frown,
you won't need expensive treatment do it by yourself
tap into your dreams and they'll soon unload their wealth,

It's not an easy journey, that's the price you have to pay
understanding through experience, guess that's the only way.

Mad-Dog: So first defeat you problems then the Mantra goes to town
building up your confidence so you'll be no others clown,
I can certainly see the logic, there's truth in what you say
so tell me of this Mantra, teach me how to pray.

Arthur: Seven time each morning and seven times at night
say this little sentence and it will help you in the fight,
you'll find it versatile for anything it will cater
pretend I've known them all my life, we'll catch the details later.

Mad-Dog: You know I see that working and I might give it a try
and it will just click in, I can wave my doubts goodbye,
I can understand your logic and take my comfort there
yes you've done me well, I thank you for your care.

Narrator: A ringing phone brought the conversation to an end
so Arthur answered it and found himself a friend
his dwindling fortunes were just about to end
with fresh new faces on their way, hopefully to blend.

Arthur: Looks like things are moving on, they're coming over now
quite a few by the sound of it, luck has changed and how,
originally there were four of them but now it looks like seven,
carry on the way things are and I'm sure this must be heaven.

Mad-Dog: Seven now and two that's nine, should be quite a pull,
if they all take shelter the site will soon be full,
Lady Luck is on your side, do you need a hand,
show them round and stuff like that, whatever you demand?

Arthur: No, you've done enough today, you've covered all the ground,
you'll need some time just to settle in, make sure that it's sound,
I'll show the people round the site you can get off back
take it easy from now on, we've got rid of all the flack.

Mad-Dog: Thanks that sounds good to me I could use some time myself,
I'll give the Caravan a good clean and bring it back to health,
I've got to do an infantry to make sure that all is there
see if I'm going to need things though the chance of that is rare.

Narrator: Mad-Dog returned back to the van and gave the place a clean,
very soon it all was done as he was pretty keen,
he quickly did an infantry and everything was seen,
he wanted now for nothing, he was a lucky bean,

He next checked through the library and found himself a Book,
it was the cover that attracted him so he thought he'd take a look,
a Fairy floated in the air just above a brook,
she had a finger on her lips, a vow of secrecy took,

He soon became engrossed in it, it was a Fairy Tale,
time passed by very quickly as through the Book he'd sail,
he sometimes liked to have a read though never on this scale,
it's just the Book had truly caught, his interest would not fail,

A knocking door stopped him in his tracks, seems he had a call,
he got straight up to answer it, the Book would have to fall,
outside he found Tristram who was leaning on the wall
and when it came to deviousness the fellow had some gall.

Tristram: Ah Perriwinkle just the man I've got a job to do,
I need a key to get some gas my dad said come to you
so fetch it out and don't be long, I'm in a real hurry
you'll get it back when I am done of that you needn't worry.

Mad-Dog: That's alright Tristram I will do it, just tell me the man,
I'll go around straight away, the quickest that I can,
you need not worry, that's my job, that's the thing I do
so there's a lad, spit it out, I'll be done before you're through.

Tristram: What's the matter, something wrong, I'm here to lend a hand
fetch the key, I will sort it, that's my dad's command
so cut the crap and get a move on, you work for us you know,
I could get you fired, then you'd have to go

Mad-Dog: Now, now Tristram little boy never lose your cool,
stop your threats there's a chap, it makes you look a fool,
daddy sent you, did he now? you haven't got a clue,
coming here with your lies I'll beat you black and blue,

You spend your day fast asleep when all the work gets done
and then expect to reap reward for the benefits I've won,
what a waste, what a joke, stick the needle in
Smack Head now, what a laugh a disgrace to all your kin.

Tristram: What's all this I ain't a junkie who told you that lie,
I just came here to help you out and you dare ask why,
I'll take you head off soon as look at you of that have no fear
coming out with all that crap, you're not welcome here.

Mad-Dog: Go ahead make your play, this should be a laugh,
a little boy shouting threats, oh save me from his wrath,
well come on then, go for it, I'll let you have first punch,
make it good for its your last, then you're out to lunch.

Tristram: No real hurry, it will keep, now I know the score,
cross me now, bad mistake, you're going to end up poor,
I'm well known, wait and see, I'm very well connected
not a man you want to cross, you'll quickly be ejected.

Narrator: Tristram quickly backed away and never left the name
Mad-Dog laughed out to himself not thinking he'd get blame,
he went back in to read his Book, he enjoyed that game
though 5 minutes later the door was knocked and real trouble came,

A large built man with fiery eyes stood outside the door,
tattoos covered all his arms and his mood was raw,
his language was appalling with every word he swore,
I'll cut out all the details as to shock I'm not its whore.

Tommo: What is this some sort of jest, where's the gas I need,
Tristram said he'd fetch it me that was his good deed,
he told me you said no chance, what was that about,
you'd better have good reason or else you'll get a clout.

Mad-Dog: Don't you ever threaten me I'll tell you from the start,
I have a nasty temper and I'll soon rip you apart
perhaps you could enlighten me as to what all this is about
but moderate your language and you don't have to shout.

Tommo: Wise guy eh, a hard man, you should know your place,
you're messing with the big boys, I'll knock you on your face,
think that you could take me, well you have no idea
if you really knew me you'd be quaking out of fear.

Mad-Dog: I'm not a man to cower and I'll never cede to fright
so what is it you're after, have you come round for a fight,
if that's the case you'll rue it for Mad-Dog is my name
so tell me what's your problem, I'm sure I'm not to blame.

Tommo: Gas, I've already told you, what are you a fool?
God knows how I manage I'm not usually this cool.
He said that you refused him, told him go away,
now Tristram's not a liar so tell me what you say.

Mad-Dog: Yes he came round for gas though never left a name
and yes I sent him on his way for I didn't like his game,
if you think he's not a liar then I'm afraid you are the fool
and as for keeping temper you never were that cool.

Tommo: Well bring it round I'm waiting, there's cooking to be done,
I need this gas immediately so get a move on son,
you'll have to learn our ways my friend of that make no mistake,
you'd better show respect it's a bad start that you make.

Mad-Dog: Threats again, what's with you, you'll get no comfort here,
coming around with language blue trying to start my fear,
listen now and understand it's the last time you'll be told,
don't you ever threaten me, you'll never be that bold,

You want some gas then come with me, I will fetch it out
it's no big problem wait and see, you didn't have to shout,
if you need gas in future just you come to me
it's no good asking Tristram, he does not have the key.

Narrator: They went round to the shelter and Mad-Dog opened it,
he pulled out the larger bottle and it weighed quite a bit,
he struggled to the Caravan and made sure that it fit
but when it came to payment the man became a git.

Tommo: Here you go, about time to, now I can get on with my meal,
£20 the going rate at least that is the deal,
next time I need sorting do it straight away,
I don't want to hear excuses, I don't care what you say.

Mad-Dog: £20 you're misinformed I'll need another five,
a pony is the going rate so don't give me that jive,
the deal of which you talk about well that's news to me
for I've been told by Arthur that 25's the fee.

Tommo: £20 enough for you for that is what it cost,
you'll make no money out of me so count that profit lost,
you've got some cheek to ask for more, I don't quite know your game
but I'll tell you this much, you ought to hang your head in shame.

Mad-Dog: Give me the fiver that you owe or I'll take the bottle back,
I'm not here to have an argument or put up with the flack,
you know the price it's your choice, it doesn't bother me,
I'll take it back without a fear just you wait and see.

Tommo: Here have your fiver, you need it more than me
for looking at your clothes you live in poverty,
all this over five pounds what a waste of time,
where's your self respect, you'll argue for a dime

Mad-Dog: Clothes is it, is that your bag, is that what makes you tick,
you judge me by appearance well that must make you thick,
the fiver that you talk of that problem came from you
so as for self respect, you wouldn't have a clue.

Narrator: He thanked the man for the money though thought him real cheap,
he expected some reprisal though that would probably keep,
he went back to his mobile with thoughts wholesome and deep
and he finished off his reading then went to bed and sleep.

CHAPTER 12

TV the voice

Narrator: Peredur next found himself in a darkened cave,
he held on tightly to his sword, the place looked rather grave,
he stumbled forward tripping up to the darkness he was slave
though up ahead he saw light and direction he was gave,

He headed forward to the light and found himself a door,
on entering he found a Book just lying on the floor,
he picked it up and read the words so he might know the score
Know thy Self was what it said so who could ask for more,

He opened it to 11 pages though everyone was blank,
this left him in bewilderment and thoughts of someone's prank,
he looked around the spartan room to find someone to thank
but all he saw was another door so that boat quickly sank,

“Look within” a loud voice said “and understand the Book,
Know thy Self for what you are, the purpose you forsook,
take time out and contemplate the knowledge needs to cook
so find yourself and walk in Light it's the only way to look.”

Peredur: What is this some sort of joke the pages they are bare,
there's nothing here to contemplate now is that really fair,
show yourself reveal your Light so I might understand
for I hate to dwell in secrecy it's just too underhand.

TV Know me now for what I am, I am the voice within,
recognise your other Self after all we are but kin,
where you stand show respect for this is my domain,
I'm the one that gives you warning helps you in your pain,

The Book you hold within those hands is called the Book of Life,
it's there to help you in your quest and keep you out of strife,
as it grows then so do you so take your comfort there,
keep the Book and grow in strength but above all learn to care.

Peredur: The Book is void of knowledge, the pages they are blank,
there's nothing here to work on and no one here to thank,
you've left me in confusion, I have no understanding,
what's it all about and is it prone to be demanding?

TV You're looking for an answer, some meaning in your life,
at the moment it is empty and prone to give you strife,
I'm here to guide you Peredur, to help you look beyond,
let's talk of understanding and from it we might bond,

Reality as you know it, is just what can be seen,
your mind reacts accordingly and from it can grow keen,
anything else is conjecture, now bare that thought in mind
for conjecture is just guessing though that might sound unkind,

Now the understanding that I mean, I guess you'll call it faith,
you believe in this conjecture for your logic's made it safe,
you've rationalised the situation and brought it into range,
though sometimes to explain it, you would sound a little strange

For it works on inner knowing and experience Divine
and wisdom understood so the Light may truly shine.

Peredur: I think I understand that, it sounds like faith with reason
but surely logic changes depending on the season,
the knowledge that you utilise may add towards your glory
but what happens if you rationalise with only half the story,

Another thing I'd like to know, what actually is this Light
For that's the path I'm set upon though my understanding's slight

T.V We'll talk about the Light first and get that out the way.
For all it is, is knowledge to keep darkness at bay.
It works on many levels, right up to the divine.
So when you are enlightened no darkness dulls your shine.

Now Knowledge of the Divine is the quest that you are on,
That's the Light in its purest sense when all self doubt has gone.
You're looking for God's wisdom so you might find your peace
For with its understanding you have the Golden Fleece.

The first part of your question, your logic never chide
For I am here to help you after all I am your guide,
trust your inner knowing and you'll never go astray
For the information utilised will always go your way.

Narrator Something strange occurred then, in Light the Book was gowned,
He took in all its energy as the Light was all around,
He looked upon the Book a new sentence it was found
'Logic is the ultimate in faith' the Light had gone to ground.

T.V The first page now completed, you understand your faith
and from this you will grow for now your logic's safe.
So next we'll talk of direction for life needs to have an aim
you need to have a purpose otherwise you fall to shame

Peredur This purpose that you mention, what's all that about
and do I really need one of that I have a doubt,
I'm just happy drifting; I take life as I find it
so off this purpose that you talk could we quickly flit?

T.V The purpose is important of that have no mistake
it channels your direction and without it life is fake
you'll run around in circles and Fate will be unkind
you'll become a headless chicken, hardly peace of mind.

Peredur: Now that you have said that you might have found the thing,
my life goes round in circles in truth that bell does ring
and Fate is not a friend of mine, in fact she's quite a foe
so maybe with a purpose my bad luck might just go,

As to what this purpose is where would I even start,
I don't know what I want in life, it's buried in my heart,
perhaps you could enlighten me or at least give me a clue
if I was looking for a purpose what do you think I'd do?

TV Your purpose is in writing, I can see your comfort there
bringing down the Light so all might have a share,
follow that vocation and you'll find your inner peace
for the void that is inside you will surely have to cease.

Peredur: Writing I don't know about, it's really not my thing,
I don't think I would like it so no pleasure it would bring,
what about another, what else do you think
for writing is Titanic, that boat will have to sink?

TV Writing it's to be and all protest must abate
for it's your destiny, don't blame me blame Fate,
it's already been decided in the realm devoid of time
so to go against its spirit would be tantamount to crime.

Peredur: Looks like I'll need some paper as I guess I've picked my pen
so writing's my vocation, I'd best get started then
and you're sure this is my destiny, you're not one to lie
for writing doesn't sound right, may I ask the reason why?

TV Sure it is no secret, it's for broadening of mind,
it will help improve your memory for its interest you will find,
it will give you time to contemplate, time to find your Self
and fill you full of confidence to see it on the shelf,

It might sound wrong at present but give the matter thought
you'll see the sense in writing, the idea's quickly caught.

Peredur: I can see the sense in what you say for all of it is true
but writing in particular give us another clue,
surely I'd get comfort from a lot more better things,
what about a Doctor or a Cabaret that sings?

TV I'm afraid you've picked two wrong ones really quite a choice,
you'll never sing for supper have you ever heard your voice,
a Doctor's out the question the decision's long since made,
you're going to be a Writer, that's how you'll be paid,

That's your personal purpose so from it do not swerve,
your actual general purpose is that you were made to serve.

Narrator: The Book lit up once more emitting warming rays
and Peredur was spell bound as he held it in his gaze,
he saw another sentence though at first as just a haze
'**Without direction you are void,**' well that might be just a phrase.

TV Another page completed, looks like you're doing well
you need to have a purpose for it takes you out of hell
now to truly understand that is the next one on the list
so I'll have to take it slowly, make sure that nothing's missed.

Peredur: Hell, that was the Druid, the one that disappeared,
he seemed a strange old fellow though now I guess he's cleared
so what was that about then he had confusion to an art,
I did not understand him, I guess he was too smart.

TV He's put there for a reason, to try and block your path,
he'll tie you up in riddles and jump on every gaffe,
he'll lead you off in circles as direction he does lack
and though he may sound clever his rational is slack.

Peredur: Block me for what purpose, I don't quite understand,
what is it he's after, I mean what's his real demand,
he left me in confusion, I mean what's he all about,
what's his point in being why does he make me doubt.

TV He's the spirit without purpose, a balance to your Self,
a negative God within if that improves your health,
he's there as counteraction to uphold destructive cause
for Creation needs Destruction it's one of Nature's Laws

Now whilst you have no purpose your life is just a void
and he can come to being, he's you when you're annoyed,
you know him now as anger although Satan is his name,
his purpose it is nothing he's there to give you blame.

Peredur: But surely I defeated him in that Cavern dark,
I remember it most clearly for its circumstances stark,
seven Demons altogether though they came to me as one
so did I really beat him or was that just a con?

TV Emotionally you took him with the cleansing of the Soul
but he's still there in Spirit though he takes another role,
it's righteous indignation it's what gets in the way of love
but I wouldn't worry now, he's been reformed from above.

Narrator: The Book lit up once more and to its goodness he was wed,
he felt its healing warmth for his purpose had been fed,
he turned another page to a new sentence that he read,
'A self that has no purpose is the domain of anger' so it said.

TV The next thing on the agenda, we'll talk about frustration,
this usually comes about when the mind goes on vacation
it looks for other things but is generally disappointed
for the purpose that it finds is not the one anointed.

Peredur: I can sort of see your logic, you could say a dead end job,
you'll get no comfort there though it might pay you a few bob,
you're easily frustrated for it saps your self esteem
it kills you on the inside for it takes away your steam.

TV So follow the wrong purpose and you're apt to be frustrated,
anger comes to play and your Spirit's desecrated,
you'll tear yourself apart for you know you could do better
but whilst anger holds your heart it makes for quite a fetter,

You'll resent your life as such though you really won't know why
for to truly understand it the anger has to die.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again and Peredur was smitten,
he felt its healing warming Light and he was truly bitten,
he sought the page for comfort to find out what was written
'Anger is the height of frustration,' guess that was the kitten.

TV Another down you're doing well though you should have a care
for the next point on the agenda is all about despair,
now another word for direction, I guess you'd call it hope
for knowing where you're going tends to help you cope,

You can see the bigger picture so hope is in the air,
your purpose is now set in stone so you'll take your comfort there,
without purpose there is no hope for you have lost direction,
you live life in despair and rarely see the connection.

Peredur: Now that you've explained it well I sort of see the sense,
to a life devoid of hope I guess there's hardly recompense,
materialistic relief, I don't suppose there's comfort there,
it will give no peace of mind, it won't combat despair.

TV Wise words what you say and very ably put
for its only shallow comfort as you'll still be in a rut,
you might have the biggest car and a mansion for a house
but you'll go against your Self and believe me he's a grouse,

Now despair leads to frustration, anger at its height
and this makes you impatient, for a purpose you will fight,
you'll strive around in darkness and take up hapless cause
for your True Self wants direction, it needs to follow laws,

With impatience by your bedstead your problems will not solve
you see the trouble with a purpose is it takes time to evolve.

Narrator: The Book lit up in splendour and he took his comfort there,
it lit up all his senses and gave his purpose flair,
he looked down on the next page and found it was not bare,
it mentioned his '**Impatience**' calling it '**frustration in despair.**'

TV On now to impatience to try and work it out,
it manifests as anger though some might say self doubt,
it's very hard to fathom as it comes from deep within,
to truly understand it, just think of Original Sin.

Peredur: Original Sin's impatience, you know that comes as a surprise,
you've left me in confusion and of that there's no disguise,
I thought it was self consciousness, you know the Mark of Cain
for after he killed Abel, well he got it for his pain.

TV Don't take all that as literal after all it's just a story,
it was there to make a point whilst withholding hidden glory,
if you have the understanding's the treasure's soon revealed
and with that inner knowing well you Fate is truly sealed.

Peredur: Perhaps you can explain then for I'm well and truly lost,
it has some hidden treasure, one that doesn't cost,
I thought I understood it for at school we were well versed,
I thought he killed from envy and from it he was cursed,

He then got paranoid from the situation built
so God came to his aid and introduced a thing called guilt.

TV Very good you read it well, you have some understanding
so hopefully if you're keen this won't prove demanding,
Cain contrary to what he said was his brother's keeper,
to truly understand those words you'll have to go much deeper.

Peredur: Excellent advice for all this is new to me
so maybe you could tell me for you seem to have the key,
what was Genesis about for it left me in confusion,
Adam, Eve and Eden was it just some mad illusion?

TV Genesis was a work of love that comes across two fold,
a handbook to enlightenment and Man's evolution told,
it works on many levels and is apt to prove demanding
for it tells you different things, it depends on understanding,

Now to truly understand it would take a lifetime to explain
so I'll keep to the essentials to try and save the pain,
Seven Spirits make the tale and each one is a symbol,
the haystack needle's still at large though now you have a thimble,

Now Adam as an entity comes across as the Spirit of Life
from him Eve appeared and they say that Love was rife,
the third force was the serpent or Knowing as he's known
and the apple comes as Discernment for a memory has grown,

Abel was God's Purpose and that meant blessed to serve
and Cain was really Wisdom though from it he did swerve,
Seth was Understanding so now you've got the set
put them all together and tell me what you get.

Peredur: Now that sounds really tricky, I don't believe I can
when it comes to things like this I reckon you're the man
put that lot together well I wouldn't have a clue
I'd just go round in circles and turn the air real blue.

TV Well I'll let you have the first one on seeing that you're new
but if it comes to others I'm afraid they're yours to do,
you see you have to test yourself it's the only way for growing
from Life comes Love it's true and Discernment comes from Knowing,
Now from Life and Love together three spirits come to Light
there's Wisdom, Understanding and you have Purpose in your sight.

Peredur: Now I think I understand that amazing though it sounds,
what a special Book, its wisdom knows no bounds
but how does that sit with Abel and what is Original Sin
for I thought I understood it, guess that logic's in the bin.

TV Abel was God's purpose and when that became suppressed
we found Original Sin for God's purpose had been blessed,
Man went against his True Self, his nature so to speak
And from that act of free will things got rather bleak,

Wisdom kept God's purpose but now it had a void,
a Spirit without purpose, one that got annoyed,
now this Spirit caused the guilt, a balance to free Will
and whilst Man defies his purpose that Spirit's never still.

Peredur: I see the sense in what you're saying you've brought it to the fore
but what has that to do with patience, is there something more
for I understand the guilt part and recognise the truth
but as for this impatience thing it's apt to prove aloof.

TV Impatience is frustration brought on by lack of purpose,
it's all to do with thought waves that find themselves as surplus,
when you truly find your purpose patience will return
for all that surplus energy will have a place to burn.

Peredur: So if I have a purpose then my direction it is sorted
and impatience goes away for its no longer courted,
anger leaves my bedstead for it has no place to stay
so just by having direction all that goes away.

Narrator: The Book shone out once again, full of healing Light,
Peredur took his comfort there, its essence was real bright,
he turned the page and saw the words for now they were in sight
'**Anger**' was the first word then '**impatience at its height**'

CHAPTER 13

TV Well that part's nearly sorted just a little word on life,
if you don't know the meaning it will lead you into strife,
so what do you think the purpose is, I know I said to serve
but to get the real answer I'm afraid it'll take more nerve.

Mad-Dog: Purification of the Soul if I remember right
and expansion of the Spirit so it might get the Light,
I understand that part though I guess there's something more
for I might have got the apple but I fear it lacks the core.

TV You have a certain grasp for you seem to have it right
but that is just the journey to get you to the Light,
from the journey comes the purpose the thing you have to find
from that comes the balance, you've found that piece of mind,

So life's purpose is direction to free the God within
a complex inner journey to wipe Original Sin.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again but this time really bright,
its warmth and its intensity gave Peredur a fright,
he looked towards another page in the hope it might shed Light,
'Direction is the purpose in life' was what came into sight.

TV Another down you're doing well the Book is nearly full
soon it'll shine for ever more with a Light that will not dull,
we'll talk of love to guide you on and help you with the task,
now with love to understand you must first remove its mask,
So what is love then Peredur, tell me if you can,
talk to me in vibrant prose, show me you're the man.

Peredur: Love you say tricky that I don't know where to start,
it comes across in many ways though always from the heart,
parental love, family love the friendship of a mate,
it has many different aspects though none of them is hate.

TV Not too bad you did quite well, the subject is demanding
but in its essence what is love if not your understanding,
think it through, you'll see the truth now the mask has lifted,
love through Light is what I mean, reality has shifted,

I could talk about emotional love but you've got it to a tee,
I could also mention mental love but that's just vanity,
physical love is in there too though some might call it lust,
Spiritual love is what you need for without it you are dust.

Peredur: Spiritual love so what is that, it sounds quite new to me,
I don't think I have heard of it unless I've lost the key,
what's it all about then, what meaning has it got,
I don't want to seem obtuse but my memory's got a blot.

TV It's quite a complex matter that takes time to evolve
but with patient understanding the truth will soon be told,
we'll take it step by step so from it you might know
and with the wisdom understood you will surely grow.

Peredur: Sure that sounds a good idea as I am truly lost
all this stuff sounds new to me so patience is my cost,
you spoke of understanding too the essence if I'm right
to all this I'm in darkness so could you spare a Light?

TV Understanding it will be we'll get that out the way
it's all to do with your well being and keeping doubt at bay,
a by product that comes from Light, I guess you'd call it heat,
it lifts your senses, warms the heart and gives the Soul its seat.

Peredur: You know I think I understand that, would this be inner peace,
what you get from strength of mind all self doubt will cease,
I never thought that it was love but now it's shown its face,
I can see it now for what it is, some would call it Grace.

TV Very good, you're doing fine, you've grasped it pretty well,
you need this grace to grow inside and take you out of hell,
when you truly understand you find the Holy Ghost
for that is love in spirit it's what benefits the most,

So Spiritual love back again, you now have half the story,
the rest of it I'll have to tell it's how to get the glory,
it's all to do with the Law of Love, a law that can't deceive
basically all it says is give so you receive,

Now this comes down on the Earthly plain as service to mankind,
I don't mean the concept as a whole but each man that you find,
it doesn't have to be too much perhaps a willing ear,
just you work with good intention and you need not have a fear,

From this act of service you receive that thing called Grace,
it fills you full of comfort and shows a loving face,
your life becomes fulfilling in more ways than just one
for you feel the Spirit in you, self doubt has truly gone.

Narrator: Peredur felt its warmth as the Book lit up once more,
another page had been filled for now he knew the score,
he scanned the page and read the words, content in what he saw,
'Love is the heartbeat of life' it said, with that he found no flaw.

TV Now Peredur you're doing well, three more left to go
soon you'll truly know thy Self and from it you will grow,
we'll dwell upon that topic now so it won't be a bind
for when you truly know thy Self you have that peace of mind,

So Peredur tell me now, do you truly know thy Self
have you found it from the Light and in the best of health?

Peredur: I'm not too sure, I'm confused, what with one thing and another,
I used to think I was myself but that idea you'll smother,
I'm seeing Demons everywhere and aspects that I've got
all my perceptions once held dear now just sound like rot.

TV Don't dishearten Peredur for you'll have the power,
all those thoughts you held so dear were just an ivory tower
but as the Phoenix shook itself you must do the same,
life moves on so go with it, you've cast off all the blame.

Peredur: Easy said but come to it I find it too demanding
every word you've said to me has changed my understanding,
God, the devil, Heaven Hell I hate to think what's next
all this is confusing me, my rational is vexed.

TV Patience Peredur for all things come to Light
bide your time and learn it well the answers in your sight,
when you truly know your Self you find out what you are,
an evolving Soul on the path of life, now with that you'll go far.

Peredur: So that is it, nothing more, now that is a surprise,
I was expecting something more complex another opinion to revise
so I am just an evolving Soul I'll take my comfort there
for now I truly know myself here endeth the despair.

TV That's not quite true now Peredur you have some more to learn
for you only know thy Self, it's half of what you yearn,
now to truly understand thyself that's to be your quest
it's alright knowing what I say but understanding's best.

Peredur: I thought it sounded easy, too easy that's a fact
for knowing it is nothing if understanding's lacked
but how am I to do this, where would I begin
though I have this funny feeling you'll say look within.

TV Well that is the direction, you're right in what you say
it gives true understanding for the logic goes your way,
I'll see if I can enlighten you so you might know the score
for when you understand it you will know for sure.

Peredur: With that I will not argue for I haven't got a clue
enlightenment is needed for darkness will not do,
I don't know how to look within it's well beyond my scope
please send me a lifeline as I haven't got a hope.

TV To look within is easy you just have to use your faith
for with the logic you possess you can make it safe,
we'll talk about the elements and hope that they are kind
for they are just the aspects that go to make your mind,

Now Air is an element that's the Spirit don't you know,
it's made from Fire and Water, the steam that helps you grow,
another one is Fire that's Imagination to your mind
it purifies and cleanses, well that's when it is kind,

Water is the Intellect it will take you anywhere
though it sticks to just one level so with it have a care
finally you come to Earth we call that one the Soul,
so now you have the elements, you can see them by their role.

Peredur: So that's what I am made of, that's what's in my mind
you know when you look within it's surprising what you find
and these must work together at least that's what I presume
though I'll need some more enlightenment to take away the gloom,

You said I was an evolving Soul and I can see the logic there
but how does that fit in with this for I know not where.

TV Expansion of the Spirit now that's where Air fits in
by Knowledge of the Divine in a life that's free from sin,
it works on understanding just as I said before
so I guess I'd better elaborate so you might know it more.

Peredur: That sounds a good idea, that Light I seem to lack,
Knowledge of the Divine, my information's slack
and as for understanding I can't see where that fits,
I'll need some extra knowledge just to clear the bits.

TV Well Knowledge of the Divine is to know what God's about,
the more you know the more you grow, it takes away all doubt,
it's there to feed your Spirit so it might find its place
amongst the Great Collective with love its only face,

Now as for understanding it builds Imagination,
you learn to look beyond and this gives you fortification,
it works on many levels depending on the flame
and to grow in understanding is to free yourself of blame.

Peredur: I can see the sense in what you say so I guess it must be true,
the more you know the more you grow that was the biggest clue
so as you grow you purify, would I be right in saying,
you cleanse yourself with knowledge, a price that's well worth paying.

TV You cleanse yourself with knowledge though of a different kind,
the knowledge that I've talked about will just expand your mind,
the purification you mean works only on the Soul
though when it's pure it turns to Light and takes the Spirit's role,

Then you are enlightened, you truly know thy Self,
you walk in true divinity with all its spiritual wealth.

Peredur: Now I really am confused, I was up with you till then,
the Soul turns into Light, that's more than I can ken
so what actually is the Soul, in essence so to speak
for I'm afraid upon that subject my logic's rather meek.

TV The Soul without impurity is just a ball of Light,
the matter that wants cleansing is the Demons you must fight,
once you've purged those Demons your Soul is free from shame
so in essence it is Spirit for they now are both the same,

The Spirit moves a level for your conscious has now shifted
and from that moment on you end up rather gifted,
you are the understanding your Ego's said goodbye
so thought becomes a memory and a memory does not die,

Fire and Water merged and from it you get steam,
your essence is in balance and they make quite a team.

Peredur: So what actually is the Ego for to me this is demanding,
you left me in confusion I thought I'm the understanding
and the Spirit moves a level, what's all that about
for in the fight to save my logic that seems quite a clout.

TV The Ego is the small self, the reflection of the Soul,
it's the negative emotions, the Demons in the role,
you are the understanding now for they have been scourged
for with negativity long since gone the Soul has now been purged.

Peredur: You mentioned thought now I recall, what was that about,
is that to do with thoughtlessness, removal of all doubt,
when it's gone you seem to know, at least that's what I read
and this is just a natural thing when your Ego's dead.

TV You have a certain knowing for you seem to have that right
though that was just the journey to get you to the Light
then you find your balance to be one with everything
the only way to do it is to join the collective wing,

Heaven some might call it as it's a higher state of Grace,
it's the dwelling of your Spirit for now it has a place,
others say Great Spirit and that answer is just fine
basically it's a channel, an access to the divine,

When you find your balance the access will appear
and with the knowledge that's inside it things get pretty clear,
you seem to know a lot more though you have no reason why
so to really get the answers the questions have to die,
Now you understand that you should come on well
for Heaven's now inside you, you've said goodbye to Hell.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again and turned a shade of red
Peredur now knew the score another point was dead,
he scanned the words and took them in, he had an aching head,
'To know thyself is to look within', well that's what it said.

TV Very good, just mopping up, a couple more to do
just relax and take it in, you'll be done before I'm through
most of it is covered so things might move on quick
the house has been repaired now the paint just wants a lick.

Peredur: With that I will not argue for this Book is too demanding,
I know I'm doing well though, its increased my understanding,
it's taught me hidden knowledge and from it I will grow
so I take my comfort in it for you are just what you know.

TV Well remembered and ably put, in life you should go far,
you have good understanding so reality is no bar,
we'll take the next point as it stands, it shouldn't take too long
for now your logic's hit the Light your faith has turned out strong,

Now when you started on the quest, what was it about?
We'll get that point out the way so you will have no doubt.

Peredur: Well the quest that I started was to find the Holy Grail
though as it's rarely mentioned I guess that I must fail,
the Druid made a point of it though said it was absurd
so I guess that riddle's over as it is seldom heard.

TV Well many men have tried for it only for to fail,
they hunted high and low for it, it made a scary tale,
perilous swamps and dragons slew they made an awful din
surely it would have been easier just to look within,
For the quest that you embarked upon was to find your Self,
the Grail was just a state of mind derived from Spiritual health.

Peredur: So the Grail was never real, it was just a state of mind
but what of my adventure, now life will be a bind,
I had something to search for but now it's gone astray,
all that strife for nothing, what a price to pay.

TV You journeyed well and learned a lot of that you can be proud,
you found your purpose after all so why the big dark cloud,
you have experience for the pen, now that will help you write,
the battle nearly is now done, you put up quite a fight.

Peredur: I know I should be happy but I guess I'm at a loss,
I expected something more than that, some might call it gloss,
I craved for some excitement and it seemed to fit the bill
but now I've found that out I guess every thing's down-hill.

TV Excitement now you'll have your fill of that you needn't worry,
you'll settle in to what you do and turn out quite a flurry,
seriously you'll love your work for that's your purpose met
and all you did was look within, now that's the safest bet.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again so he put his thoughts to bed,
he let the warming, healing Light get inside his head,
he checked the page with interest to find out what it said,
'To look within is to know thy purpose', that is what it read.

TV So Peredur one more left and then this side is done,
you will truly know thy Self for the battle will be won
you can have the Book to keep, to guide you on your way
for you have truly earned its keep so tell me what do you say?

Peredur: Thanks I'm sure, much obliged, that's very kind of you,
I'll keep it as a reminder of all that I've been through,
I see it as a blessing and will often take a look
for to me it is enlightenment and that's a priceless Book.

TV Right before you have it there's one more left to go,
there's not a lot to say really so it should quickly flow,
we'll talk about the Grail once more if you have the nerve
for it's not about the Chalice but the purpose it will serve.

Peredur: Don't worry I'm better now, the dark cloud it has lifted
maybe writing won't be bad now all my doubt has shifted,
the Book will guide me on my path so I need not really fret
besides I'll make no judgement as I haven't tried it yet.

TV Very true and spoken well so a Writer you will be
and you will enjoy it, just you wait and see
for now you have your purpose you have found yourself
for your True Self is your purpose, here's to your good health.

Narrator: With that the voice disappeared for it had told its tale
Peredur looked at the Book and read the final mail,
'To know thy self is to know thy purpose' was the final hail,
then the Book changed its form, he had found the Holy Grail,

He studied it with deep intent, he could not find a flaw,
he knew it was the one for him he had seen it once before,
that was the thing that inspired him, sent him out to war
and now he had it in his hands who could ask for more,

The Grail it glistened like a pool, he took it in his sight,
he studied his reflection there, it made his face look bright,
he felt relieved yet uplifted, he had won the fight
Peredur had found the Grail was he now a Knight?

He took the Grail and held it high now he knew the score,
it was like he won the cup and his cheers did soar,
a little noise distracted him, he was about to go on tour
for the noise it had its source, it was just behind the door.

CHAPTER 14

Narrator: Peredur opened the door and had a look around,
the place was empty, a spartan room, the noise had gone to ground,
he searched the room tip to toe but the source was never found,
this left him in bewilderment, it was an elusive sound,

Peredur turned around to go back through the door,
he had a mind to leave the room and go back to his tour,
confusion really settled in for reality had a flaw,
once there was an opening but now it was no more,

He was trapped what could he do how would he get out,
the door was gone, it was just a wall, of that he had no doubt,
he needed help, that was it, he gave out a loud shout
but it was just a waste of time as no one was about,

He took a seat on the floor and held his hands up in despair,
he cursed himself and then his luck he felt his life unfair,
he should never had entered it, it was a stupid dare,
trapped inside a spartan room with no one there to care,

The Grail turned to a Book once more much to his surprise,
he looked at it, his hope picked up at least he would get wise,
he read the words that graced the cover they had a different guise,
Love thy Self was what it said his interest now did rise.

TV Well Peredur you've got the Grail, you're bathing in its glory
but I fear there's more to come, it's only half the story,
you have a Will that now knows God though reflected in His Light,
now you need His purpose blessed to help you in the fight,

The Book you hold in front of you is called the Book of Love,
cherish it with all your heart for it came from up above,
eleven pages just the same and each one of them is blank,
so point by point we'll tackle them, you'll then know who to thank,

You should get on quite well with these now you know the score,
it should be just like shelling peas you've done it all before
life and love they go together you'll soon see the link,
the first page open we'll crack on so tell me what do you think?

Peredur: So what's all this that's happening what is it about,
I thought that I had found the Grail now you leave me with a doubt,
I'm trapped inside a door less room tell me what it's for
and who are you anyway, I'd like to know the score.

TV I could rattle on about myself but we have work to do
distraction maybe well and good but the task we won't get through,
I could pontificate about myself in a myriad of styles
what's the point at the end of the day you'll just end up with piles,

Sitting on a cold hard floor with curiosity never sated
questioning everything I say the cat has not abated
but what's it for, just look around you're stuck inside a cell,
it's only you that caused this, you went back to hell.

Peredur: But I'll never understand whilst my mind is in confusion,
all the points you give to me will never get inclusion,
My mind will be on other things, like how do I get out,
how am I supposed to comprehend with all this stress about?

TV These are just emotional points to keep you from your purpose,
mental energy gone to waste, you seem to have a surplus,
accept your Fate, you have to do, from it you can't hide,
put your trust in me my friend and I will be your guide,

You say you'll never understand for you have too much stress,
that's a point that's null and void and one I'll now redress,
the stress of which you speak about comes only from within
so take control and let it out, chuck it in the bin,
You're in charge, of that don't doubt, the stress it need not flare
heed the words I say to you, it will take away despair.

Peredur: So all these thoughts that torture me with them I can control,
well I never, fancy that, that's sort of changed the role,
I never knew I had the strength they just take me over
but now I know, I'm thanking you, you've put my life in clover.

TV These thoughts feed on ignorance, they like you in the dark,
it's the only way they can live, they crave conditions stark,
you sit here in a door less room and ponder on your Fate
guided by your ignorance, by thoughts derived from hate,

You think I am an entity that's out to do you harm
but now you really know the score, where was the alarm?

Peredur: So this was just some sort of test to try and drag them out,
you put me deep in hopelessness so I might find the doubt,
now I see, you've done me well, that's a real good turn,
I needed the experience, it's the only way to learn.

TV Good you've finally got it, you know what life's about,
wisdom through experience to take away all doubt
but on another level it's worth another look
for all the negativity was the purpose you forsook,

It's just surplus mental energy that's there to sap your drive
so being void of purpose it what keeps the thing alive.

Narrator: The Book took on a vibrant colour, a stunning shade of red,
Peredur felt its warmth he had put a point to bed,
he eagerly checked the first page so it could sink inside his head
'Emotional thought is surplus mental energy', for that is what it said.

TV Congratulations, you've made a start, that will be one less
so next thing on agenda will be self consciousness
any thoughts in that direction for you are just what you know
I'll need your understanding so from it you might grow.

Peredur: When I talk about self consciousness I see it in two ways,
self obsession would be one for you have a selfish phase,
all thoughts in that direction are centred on yourself,
you seek self gratification forsaking Spiritual health,

Now obsession has a downside, sometimes you lack self worth,
you see others that's around you and envy them their mirth,
if you're looking for a label an inferiority complex would tag
for as it works in turmoil all confidence will sag.

TV Very good, you've grasped it well, that saves a lot of trouble,
you have good understanding so we'll easily burst this bubble,
self consciousness in essence is just ignorance of the Soul,
you don't know about the God within though you'll take his role,

You see yourself as God but with perceptions truly clouded
for this one's up in Heaven and in glory He is shrouded,
He's just there to be worshipped and if not He will chide
basically in essence I guess you'd call it Pride.

Peredur: So you recognise the God within though only in yourself
yes I understand that for your logic's in good health
so I guess the downside envy as balance must take place,
you put all life on levels in the eyes of God disgrace.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again another point was dead,
Peredur felt its warmth as it rose inside his head,
he scanned the pages, saw the words for this is what it said
'Self consciousness is the domain of Pride' he took it to his bed.

TV Very good you understand and with that you'll go far,
we'll stick with Pride a little longer, its presence for to bar
some people say that Pride is good and you need to have an Ego
any thoughts about that point, what do you say Amigo?(sick)

Peredur: Pride in your work I understand and see it has a place,
Pride in appearance maybe too you need to clean your face,
Pride in self I'm not too sure, that turns to arrogance
definitely a hurdle if you are planning to advance,

I guess it is a mixed emotion for it goes either way
so maybe I need enlightenment, tell me what you say?

TV Pride in work is the thing for it's really Pride in purpose
all the rest I would not have for that is Pride in surplus,
appearance going to the extreme you could call it vanity
and as for the last point that you made some might say insanity,

Delusions of grandeur some might say though that is quite extreme,
mental vanity's another one, you're the cat that's got the cream.

Peredur: So Pride can be acceptable if you have good reason
otherwise just chuck it out as vanity's in season,
I think I understood that for it made a lot of sense
though looking at the work I do that's hardly recompense.

TV Well when I say Pride in work that's not strictly true
for never have too high an opinion of anything you do,
humility should be the thing so don't ever get deluded
or the power that comes from high will quickly be denuded

For Pride comes from the Ego and through it, it will grow
and whilst you have an Ego you'll never get to know.

Peredur: So Pride in purpose in that sense you would not call it Pride,
it works upon a different level so from the Ego it will hide,
the Pride you means humility though that might sound a little odd
but to bring it down to Earth you'll call it Pride in God.

TV Well it seems you understood it, it's not quite Pride as such
for it does not hit the Ego, it doesn't even touch
now that you're Soul conscious you understand your God
for He's to act as service not some old uncaring bod.

Narrator: The Book radiated once again and Peredur was fed,
he felt its swirling energies rise up inside his head,
another objective taken so he read the words it said
'Pride is the height of vanity' you could take that point as read.

TV A downside to self consciousness has been mentioned before,
it's called a victim complex, paranoia to the fore,
your imagination turns against you and leads you on a dance,
you think everyone's against you for it is a sharpened lance,

It goes right through your system, it takes a pessimistic role,
in the game of life you play, you've scored an own goal.

Peredur: I think I can equate with that for I've been that way before,
life has turned against you and Fate's your friend no more,
everything you seem to do falls flat on its face
sometimes I would stay in bed for it's the safest place.

TV Ah wisdom through experience you truly know the score,
you felt life was against you, self pity was your whore,
look a little deeper though and Fate was on your side,
hardly compensation for in ignorance it will chide,
Now back to paranoia look a little deeper
you see it comes from Pride in fact it is its keeper.

Peredur: This sounds like Cain and Abel or am I being fair
for according to my logic I can see connection there
I thought that was with purpose though so maybe I am wrong
I'll need to look more deeply for my logic to grow strong.

TV If you think of Cain as Pride, well he did get paranoid,
he thought Abel had some friends ones he should avoid,
when he went against his purpose the thing he found was guilt,
it affects your paranoia so your logic need not wilt.

Peredur: So guilt causes paranoia, well that's news to me
but I think upon reflection that yes it has to be
for guilt at its most basic is a fear of getting caught
so I hold my head in wonder, it's surprising what I'm taught.

Narrator: Light shone around the Book and it turned a deeper red,
another objective hit the floor another point was dead,
the blank page once in front of him now had words instead
'Pride is paranoia at its height' these words he loudly read.

TV Very good one less to do, you're moving on real fast,
the way these point are burning up you'll soon be on your last,
we'll talk some more of paranoia so you might know its face
see it as it really is and you'll put it in its place.

Peredur: How does that quantify, I'm sorry I'm abrupt,
I know that it is bad manners and I shouldn't interrupt
but how does recognition put it in its place,
I could do with some enlightenment to help me with this case.

TV Paranoia works in darkness, it's perceptions nothing more
so situations understood will drive it out the door,
just like any Demon it hates to live in Light
so when you understand that you have it in your sight,

It can only feed in darkness for that is how it lives
recognition is its downfall and it very quickly gives.

Peredur: You know I understand that, I've heard it once before
but the way that you've explained it has helped my logic more
so basically it feeds of fear, that's its staple diet,
I guess he's not a man to know, especially in a riot.

TV I'm glad that that is sorted and your understandings grew
for now we're on expansion to reinforce the things you knew
as we get more deeper things will just make sense
so heed these words of wisdom for they're ample recompense,
You're about to taste enlightenment in fact you're on the verge
so a lot of what I'm saying will just make sense and merge.

Peredur: Now Owain mentioned cross reference, is that what this is about,
to strengthen understanding and take away all doubt,
he said it's there to help you for faith is no good blind
by reinforcing strands of thought and broadening the mind,

I can see some logic there so I guess it must be true
Unless I've got it wrong, well I'll leave that up to you.

TV No that is correct, your logic's not at fault,
cross reference information and all self doubt will halt,
it helps your understanding and gives you inner knowing
and from that moment on you never will stop growing
So onto paranoia then the greatest threat to sanity
basically in essence well I guess you'd call it vanity.

Peredur: Vanity you say, well how would that equate,
that does not seem quite right are you sure there's no mistake
vanity is paranoia with that you've got me beat,
I can't see any connection, that statement has no meat.

TV Think it through, you'll see I'm right I only speak the truth
vanity and paranoia the connections not aloof,
looking into paranoia it's surprising what you find
you think they're out to get you, that's going through your mind.

Peredur: I can understand that part for the statement it is true
but connecting it with vanity well I haven't got a clue,
I thought vanity was preening, well on a physical level
paranoia's not the same, I thought it was a devil.

TV So why should they do you harm, what makes you so good,
you don't think that is vanity, well if not then you should,
you're just the same as everyone, you don't stand out in a crowd
so what makes you so special that you crave to wear a shroud,

Look at it with logic and you'll see I've got a point,
paranoia is just vanity you can't even see the joint.

Peredur: Now that you have said that I'll take my comfort there,
no one's out to get me, I mean it's not like they should care,
you're right in what you're saying, I must have been a fool,
it's just surplus mental energy that makes me lose my cool.

TV Now that's a good example, when me and you first met,
you thought I was out to harm you, that was your safest bet,
fear of the unknown they say, it fills you full of dread,
then paranoia comes to play for it gets inside your head

So what makes you so special that I would rub you out,
I have no quarrel with you, your only foe is doubt.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again and Light shone around his head,
he felt its healing ways and it took away his dread,
the blank page was now full and he read out what it said
'Paranoia is the height of vanity' another level fed.

TV Very good one more down, your paranoia's finished
with that gone life picks up for now your fears diminished,
we'll talk of vanity once again and see it if will budge,
you never know, it might just go, given the right nudge.

Peredur: Sure I could go for that though I've never thought me vain
guess it must be somewhere though so take away my pain
maybe it's a mental thing it's on the other level
so go ahead and make my day, take away that devil.

TV First of all let's think it through, what is it about
it's no good being ignorant just saying it's a doubt,
you'll have to go in further to really find the truth
take it out from where it is, it's not a God aloof.

Peredur: Self conscious Pride you said it was so that might be a start
though I guess it's something more, I haven't got its heart,
is it Pride in extreme, is that the answer to my quest
for thinking through my understanding says that is the best?

TV You're getting close so carry on you'll put it on its back
when you finally know its cause all vanity will lack,
what is it in essence, that's what you need to know
for when you finally understand your vanity will go.

Peredur: I'm not too sure so help me out, what about a clue
can you throw a lifeline, anything will do,
Pride is what I've reasoned but that is all I've found
so how about enlightenment to put this thought to ground.

TV So what is Pride, that's a clue what's it all about
find the answer, hey presto, vanity gets a clout,
I mentioned God now that might help so take it as a guide
look for inner knowing and it will never lose your side.

Peredur: Well God is love of that I'm sure, He's your Spiritual wealth
and so is Pride though slightly different, it's love for yourself,
now vanity is also love so I think I'm getting there
vanity is love of self, well would you say that's fair?

TV Just about, you've done enough so I can help you out,
vanity is self conscious love there's a lot of it about
so now you truly know the score it should go away,
recognition is its death, it's the price it has to pay.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again and vanity was dead,
Peredur felt the warming glow and from it he was fed,
he looked down at the new filled page and took it in his head
'**Vanity is self conscious love**' well that is what he read.

CHAPTER 15

TV Now Peredur we'll carry on, we'll talk a bit about love,
the essence of your being, the strength that's from above,
so tell me of its nature and then we'll take a look,
you have no excuse for ignorance, after all you have the Book.

Peredur: Understanding I once heard, well being to your mind,
I suppose if I was flippant I would say a state of kind,
it's the lifting of the barriers, outside and within,
it covers many aspects so where would I begin.

TV Not too bad, I like your style, it's just a state of kind,
very clever I'll admit, you have a Poetic mind,
it's a very tricky concept but you've covered it quite well
except you missed out purpose, what takes you out of hell.

Peredur: Purpose of course, how stupid, how could I forget
for a life without direction is a life that knows regret,
love is a many splendoured thing I'm sure someone once said
so to actually define it is going to hurt my head.

TV Well it works on many levels as you might have guessed
we'll have to take it bit by bit to understand it best,
at the lowest level we have the sexual act,
the union of two bodies though that's more a point of fact,

Sometimes it's not an emotional thing, just ask any whore
but that's not really love as such, it's lechery nothing more,
now the actual sexual act is there for procreation
so in that sense it's love, Creation from elation.

Peredur: So that's the sexual side of things but with no emotional bond,
I guess the next step would be with someone that you're fond
so what is love on an emotional level for it's tricky to define,
I can understand the bonding side but then I'm in decline.

TV There are many different types of it so your logic it might smother,
you best friend, wife even dog your brother or your mother,
it comes in many forms so we'd best get to the core,
it's seeing your Self in others, I'm afraid there's nothing more.

Peredur: Seeing yourself in others, now that sounds a selfish thing
how does that fit in for I can't take it under wing,
if you see yourself in others then all you see is you
I'm sure that can't be right, have I missed some sort of clue?

TV You're still on the Ego stage so you think that is your Self,
I'm afraid that's not the case though so lose it for your health,
your Self is just your Soul so underneath we're all the same
so seeing it in others will Light loves eternal flame,

Family tie is well and good but not at the expense of others
for in the eyes of the Great Light we're all perceived as brothers,
it might sound Spiritual but I'm afraid that is the core,
try putting it in little boxes and you'll be forever more,

Now when you see your Self in others you recognise this Light,
you've removed the mental barriers, took away the fright,
to put it in another way you've found that peace of mind,
your life's turned into love and that state is always kind,

To truly understand that is to recognise divinity
for love and Light and power are three aspects of this trinity,
now God's love is your Light and His power understanding
keep that in your consciousness and life gets less demanding,

You have a will of Light then for all darkness will depart
and then you'll truly know that love's the beating of the heart.

Narrator: The Book lit up once more, another point was dead,
Peredur took its energy and felt it warm his head,
he checked the page for words and these he quickly read
'Love is the beating of a heart' and with that he was wed.

TV You're coming on with speed, another point is dead
we'll stick with love a little longer as the themes not said,
I've talked about the trinity so now you'll know some more
so by the time that this is over you'll truly know the score,

To define the trinity in whole just think of the three Graces
three aspects of Mythology that's really loves three faces,
Euphrosyne we'll cover first for she's the understanding
you could also call her Seth but that might prove demanding,

To understand her properly just decode her right
'by love the spiritual word knows, seeing understanding blessed by Light.'

Peredur: Really that's amazing and you say that equates with Seth
that sound to me quite complex else my logic's going deaf
so he was understanding too though thinking about it more
that's already been mentioned for I've heard it once before.

TV We're still expanding knowledge and tying up the loose end
so some of it you'll recognise whilst others I'll amend,
we'll strengthen through cross reference that will build your faith,
you'll have the understanding to truly make it safe.

Peredur: Sure though in a moment, let's see if this is right,
understanding is the power and the level is the might,
it builds up your intelligence by strengthening of mind,
you learn to look more deeply and that's the Grace you find.

TV Very good, you understand, you've got it to a tee,
that's the first one covered so the next one we will see,
we'll talk of Spiritual wisdom for that's another Grace,
Light would be another name and Cain might show his face,

Now Thalia is the name of this, though her meaning might sound odd
for it's 'spiritual wisdom - God, (God's purpose) blessed by God,'
Knowledge of the Divine with purpose that's been blessed,
think of it as the Path of Light for that what describes it best.

Peredur: So that's wisdom on one hand understanding on the other
and both of these are Graces that just leaves us with one other,
I think I might just know this one, the Holy Spirit if I'm right,
the Spirit of Love's another name if that will help in the fight,

It's when love comes down in spirit to reward all service done,
it evolves your understanding, that's the purpose that you've won

T.V Very good, well understood now Aglaia is her name,
love you know all ready and Abel is her claim,
now on your highest level this will be your rod,
it means God's will. God's purpose, God now blesses God.

Narrator: The Book lit up another time and lifted Peredur 's head,
he was getting closer all the time another point was dead,
he checked the page in earnest to find out what it said,
'**God is love**' it stated and from this he was fed.

TV Another down, we'll carry on, you'll soon be out of strife
and with the Book I give to you a blessing for your life,
so the next thing on the agenda is to give this love direction
for its purpose is its life, the voids in need of correction,

You learned that in the Book of Life so just equate the two,
then you'll find divinity you'll know God before you're through.

Peredur: The other Book is knowledge and balance to your mind
though it did gloss over service so the answer I might find,
to equate these Books together well I probably would fail
for the closest thing I've come to it would be the Holy Grail.

TV Very good, you're very close, it does concern the Grail,
find the answer Peredur and soon you'll leave this jail,
to understand it properly now that will be the quest
and I am here to guide you, to show you what's the best.

Peredur: And you are here to guide me, I'll take my strength from you
for looking at the equation I'm afraid I've got no clue,
the Book of Life the Book of Love, I can't quite see connection
so what about some guidance, my logic needs correction,

I know the Grail turned into them but then I'm at a loss,
I could do with understanding to take away that cross.

TV I'll tell you what it stands for and that should help a load
for on its highest level it's actually a code,
each letter has a meaning and its outcome is a phrase
that will be the rope that will guide you out this Maze.

Peredur: I remember you said that when we were talking about the Graces
each word is just a phrase so they have no real faces,
perhaps you could enlighten me for I am in the dark,
It's a level I've not seen before so I will gladly hark.

TV It's from the Hebrew Alphabet, each letter has a meaning,
it works through all Mythologies and gives them Spiritual leaning,
I won't go into details for time you have no surplus
basically the will knows God and is blessed to do His purpose,

Now divide the phrase into two for each one has a part,
I know it's not the answer but it gives a cracking start.

Peredur: Well one would be the Book of Life and the other would be Love,
you know I think I understand now my logics had that shove,
Will knowing God would be one Book, the rest would be the other
so all I do is work them out, how they marry one another.

TV Very good, that's correct, you've picked it up quite well now put them both together and tell me what they tell, you'll truly know your God then and why He must exist then we'll finish with His purpose so you'll have got the gist.

Peredur: Well Will knowing God is Know thy Self so that is half the fight, the title on the Book of Life if I remember right, so life is there for wisdom, the Spirit's evolution, I think I understand it, that's half of the solution.

TV That's the left side sorted half the Grail is done, understand the other Book and you have truly won put them both together and you'll soon be devoid of strife and if you're really lucky you'll have meaning in your life.

Peredur: Blessed with God's purpose was the rest, that's the Book of Love, to Love thy Self is what it said so I guess that's from above, understanding I would say the evolution of your Soul, two different aspects of yourself and each one has their role,

I can understand the meaning now, though what about the Grail for although I can equate them both after that I seem to fail.

TV Maybe I could guide you more and tell you of the Grail, you see it was a little test, unknowing you would fail, it brought about two questions, ones that test your nerve, the first one was its nature then the purpose it would serve,

Now hopefully that would help you, I've left quite a clue work that out with confidence, you'll be surprised at what you knew.

Peredur: Well nature would be Know thy Self so that's the Book of Life, Love would be the other one though its meaning gives me strife, the nearest thing I got to it though I doubt if it's the score was love thy Self was purpose and of service nothing more.

TV Getting closer all the time, what's the purpose of the Grail that will be the next clue and with it you won't fail, find its purpose then you'll know its essence once again and don't dishearten Peredur you've nearly lost the pain.

Peredur: Its purpose was for service well at least that's what I think, it was there to keep your hands dry should you want a drink but to fit that in the equation there's something I'm not seeing, Love thy Self the Book said now that would take some keying.

TV We'll try another angle and come back a little later so if the Grail was human I guess he would be a Waiter maybe that will help you, another line to take what was the Grail all about, what was actually at stake?

Peredur: The Grail was there to serve out wine, that's why it was made
so, hang on for a moment my logic's took a raid,
now correct me if I'm wrong there's something I'm not seeing
was the essence of its purpose the essence of its being.

Narrator: The Book lit up another time for another point was bled
Peredur felt its healing Light and from it he was fed,
he looked at the fresh filled page to find out what it said
'**God exists to serve a purpose**', which he quickly read.

Peredur: I'm still a bit confused even though I must have got it
for the way the Book reacted, well it took off like a rocket
but the connection with the Book is still beyond my reach
so could I get enlightenment if that's not too much a beseech.

TV Well love is understanding, that will aid you to your wealth,
they are just two different aspects of the thing that you call Self,
I thought I'd try another way to get you past the post
sometimes you change direction, make the point that means the most.

Peredur: Yes I think I understand that though now we've lost direction
the point that we're perusing has need of some correction,
I haven't married them yet so I still don't know the Grail
for to understand it totally I'll need a fuller pale.

TV To truly understand the Grail you would not have a hope,
it works on many levels you mind just would not cope,
you'll be in here for hours, you'll not get peace of mind
for the more that you uncover the more there is to find,

I could try and take you through it I guess that's up to you
but I'm giving you fair warning the air could turn out blue.

Peredur: I'd like to understand it otherwise it'd be a bind,
I would always be just guessing and that's hardly peace of mind,
I don't mind this for discomfort so I will gladly tarry,
tie up all the loose ends for this point has to marry.

TV To explain it to you fully would cause you to erupt
but if you want to know the answer then please don't interrupt,
listen with attention and maybe it will sink in
that's the only way to do it, know that and we'll begin.

Peredur: Silence then it must be for I'd like to know the score
so till I've heard the answer you'll hear from me no more,
you're tying them together well this I've got to see
for I've gave it lots of thought and it beats the hell out me.

Narrator: With that a flash the room was changed for now it had a door,
Peredur still had the Book though it lay now on the floor,
he picked it up to read the page but his logic had a flaw
the page it was still empty, could there be there's something more,

He waited for the voice again but it never did appear,
this left him in confusion and a certain amount of fear,
the appearance of a friendly face though gave him back his cheer
for with Owain's understanding things just might get clear.

Peredur: So what has just happened is there something I have missed,
what was that flash about, that's another on the list,
now I am confused and I mean that from the heart,
I could do with some enlightenment so where do you want to start?

Owain: Right, well you asked for it, you'd best get settled in,
if you are truly comfortable then I will just begin,
to really understand the Grail is to understand the Self,
it was the journey not the answer that really made his wealth.

In one part understanding from the experience he found
and the other was his wisdom that kept his judgement sound,
the Grail was more its purpose though its essence was the Books
so to marry them together was much easier than it looks,

Now as to your other points we'll take them both as read
for you don't want minor details going through your head,
you're here for understanding so heed the words I say
for to actually enlighten you Genesis has its way,

Now the part that concerns you revolves around a name
God's self through God's purpose though Abel was his fame,
compare him to the Grail and that should put you wise
for both of them say the same thing of that there's no disguise,

Now God's purpose is His being as I'm sure that you must know
so let's talk of it much deeper and from it you will grow.

Peredur: That sounds a good idea, the other things will keep
for now I guess it's over I can put all thoughts to sleep,
well God's purpose is to serve so that sounds more like an act
though I don't know where to take it I know it for a fact.

Owain: Keep off minor detail or you'll end up well of track
still keep up the interest for the Grail has just come back,
if you take the Grail as God you have an enlightened Soul
its purpose is to serve so that must be its role,

Just to clear confusion about an earlier fact
God's the one who serves, He is not the act,
serving is an act of God for it upholds its purpose
just think it as a job and that should clear all surplus.

Narrator: The Book lit up once again and another point was dead,
Peredur took in all its warmth and put all doubt to bed,
he checked the page, read the words, found out where they led
'The purpose of God is the purpose to serve' ended up in his head.

Owain: One more to accomplish and then the Book is done,
you can keep the Grail after all it was well won,
there's nothing much to tell now just a little understanding
so hopefully you'll see the Light and this won't prove demanding.

Peredur: Hopefully, you've got that right, I'm glad it's nearly done,
I found it very difficult, I'm sure confusion won,
the more you know the more you grow well that I understand
but the stress that seems to come with it makes a huge demand.

Owain: The door's now open Peredur, we're just mopping up,
don't forget you've won the game, in fact you hold the cup,
just one last point to cover then you'll know the score
the battle will be over, the final of the war,

The Book tells you to Love thy Self for that is understanding,
we'll talk about the Spiritual side so that won't be demanding,
the purpose is to **'Love thy self'** that's **'the purpose that you serve'**
for then you'll grow in understanding, confidence and nerve.

Peredur: I think I understand that because evolution is the aim
so with every act of service you grow closer to the flame,
now the flame is a Spirit whose symbol is a dove
that's what keeps you going, affection from above.

Narrator: With that the Book became a Grail and everything was clear,
it glistened freely in his hand and took away his fear,
it radiated healing Light and from it he took cheer
he now had truly got the Grail he could have shed a tear.

CHAPTER 16

Owain: You have some understanding, you've truly come on well
and now you'll get some more Light with this tale I have to tell,
it concerns the Path of Light so take this to your heart
when you think you've finished you're just about to start,

Now the Path of Light in essence is evolution of the mind,
it's just to find your purpose, to recognise your kind,
think of it as theory and you've just past the test
so now here comes the practical for this evolves you best.

Peredur: Well I'm here to be a Writer, that's what the first voice said
and I can see the logic so I've took that thought to bed,
I think that I might like it so I'll say wait and see
for if it is my purpose then my purpose it will be.

Owain: Very good you're learning well, just accept your Fate
for now you understand it you can see that it's not hate,
it's there to help your purpose and keep the stress at bay
I'm offering you Divine protection so tell me what you say?

Peredur: Divine protection, what is that, I'd like to know some more
for it sounds well worth having well once I know the score
so what actually is it, don't mind me being bold
for when it comes to logic with this I'm rather cold.

Owain: Fate is now behind you, your purpose it will serve
follow all its laws and its loyalty will not swerve,
it will sort out any problems that try and block your way
so you'll have straight direction and from it you won't sway,
Take Divine protection and its power you will wield,
let this be your comfort, let it be your shield.

Narrator: With that a great shield appeared, all glistening and gold,
Owain passed it to Peredur who quickly took a hold,
a strange sensation took him over, he felt pretty bold,
he gripped the shield with all his might and it just seemed to mould.

Owain: Lucky you oh Peredur for it fits you like a glove
now you'll walk in safety protected by God's love,
you need not fear the danger for that will make you strong
just follow your direction and you can do no wrong.

Peredur: Now you come to mention it, it has gave me some strength,
I seem to feel its power, a boon at any length,
I'm glad I've got it with me for it gives a sense of peace
so all those petty problems will hopefully now cease.

Owain: Take your comfort from it, that is why it's there
always keep it polished and treat it with great care
for now you have the knowing, things will be alright,
imagine all that confidence you'll have no fear of slight

So now you have three blessings, the sword, the shield and Grail,
you just need to have the final one and through life you will sail.

Peredur: Another blessing still to come, aren't I the lucky guy,
truly Fate is bountiful I can kiss bad luck goodbye
so what's the final blessing then, please enlighten me
and please don't be elusive, don't say wait and see.

Owain: I'm afraid you must be patient to truly understand
I'm sorry Peredur for that's a great demand,
I have to tie a few things up so you might truly know
I'm afraid true understanding is the only way to grow,
First we'll take the treasures 13 of them in all
I'll do them one by one so impatience has to fall.

Peredur: 13 treasures you did say, I've not heard this before
I thought I understood this Light but now I'm not so sure,
all this stuff is new to me I don't see how it fits
I thought I knew the bigger picture but I guess it's only bits.

Owain: The more you know the more you find, I'm afraid that's the way
but listen very carefully you'll like the words I say,
these treasures that I speak about should appeal to you
for they are yours to utilize but only if you're true,

Never use them for your gain or their power you will lose,
they are there for the Greater Good so be careful how you choose,
the blessings that you carry with them they have a link
you also have the 7 Spirits so that should make you think.

Peredur: That's quite a little puzzle of that I have no doubt
all that linking up, there's a lot of it about,
you going to link all three of them well rather you than me
for if water is confusion I've drowned in all that sea.

Owain: First thing the last blessing I had better make it clear
for the last thing in your armoury has got to be a spear,
you can fight at any distance for this gives you the chance,
you'll never be defeated while you hold onto this lance,

So there you have the blessings, now to find their niche
with the treasures that they give you, you'll end up nouveaux-riche,
the first one is called Dyrnwyn now this might strike a chord,
it belonged to Rhydderch the Generous and was actually a Sword,
When used to noble purpose it would flare from hilt to tip
now that might sound familiar for reality can blip.

Peredur: You mean that sword can do that, well I never knew
so what does all that signify for I haven't got a clue
and it just bursts into flames, sounds a dangerous thing,
I guess I'd best be careful otherwise I'd lose a wing.

Owain: Well the sword is just symbolic, it means balanced mind
don't worry about its danger to you it will be kind,
use it to good purpose for that's the purpose it was meant,
it can never work for wrong as it needs your good intent,

The fire stands for purity for it has cleansed itself of doubt
it now has all its strength so it can leave a nasty clout.

Peredur: You had me really worried then, I was expecting to get burned
so it's just a symbol, it's surprising what I've learned,
the sword is just a balanced mind, I'll take my comfort there,
I'll put it to good purpose and treat it with great care,

You mentioned other treasures any chance of an advance
for I've pitched my tent in darkness so its outcome's ignorance.

Owain: Well the next one on the list makes you a happy Camper
it belonged to Gwyddno Garanhir and was actually his Hamper
whatever food inserted would return a hundred fold
so it gave a good return, what an asset to behold.

Peredur: That sounds to me like goodness, now would I have that right,
you have to put something in before you can have a bite,
could this be the Holy Spirit or does my logic deceive
for I'm told you have to give in order to receive.

Owain: Very close, you're nearly right, your logic's come on fine
but I'm afraid the actual answer is access to the divine,
first you have to give yourself, the Ego's what I mean
and from that act of selflessness you have a change of scene,

Your life becomes more Spiritual, you work for the Greater Good
and from this shift in consciousness you open up the bud,
that's an access to the Divine and your Spirit that is there
and he will come and guide you, to show you how to care,

A balanced mind will give you this, symbolic of the sword,
you bow down to your Spirit for it is now your Lord.

Peredur: Now that sounds familiar though I'm not sure about a Lord
for I bowed before that Lady when she dubbed me with the sword,
does that have a bearing, does my suspicion have a base
for it does seem pretty reasonable though she had a female face.

Owain: Yes that was your Spirit though she's really Mother Earth,
she's actually your Soul for you'd undergone rebirth,
now when you bowed before her, that meant your Ego died,
you gave yourself to service so from it you can't hide,

Now your Father up in Heaven, he's your Spirit too,
they're both of the same essence because she's pure because of you,
now you have your guidance, underneath and up above,
they're both of the same substance, a thing that we call love.

Peredur: You know I should have known, when I took her in my sight
I had this funny feeling that she was with the Light,
I'm glad I bowed before her she's worth more than life
such a thing of inner beauty, her value transcends strife.

Owain: Well you made the right decision and from it you'll grow strong
so we'll thank God for His purpose and swiftly move along,
the next treasure that we'll talk about is called the Horn of Bran
it dispenses every type of beverage so you'll be a drunken man.

Peredur: I'm not too sure about that one, I can't seem to make it fit,
I'm sorry if I'm stupid, could you elaborate a bit,
the drink that it dispenses, does that stand for anything
for I'll need some more enlightenment if I'm going to make this sing.

Owain: Well Bran was Bran the Blessed he was a Guardian of the Grail,
he had the Cauldron of Rebirth though that's another tale,
the horn does also parallel for the Grail served food like best
I'm not sure if it helps but use it be my guest.

Peredur: Well it's not quite what I wanted but it will have to do
for I definitely need a lifeline to get me out this stew,
now the food that could be wisdom for it feeds the mind
would the drink be understanding or is the puzzle not that kind?

Owain: Understanding is correct so you've got that bit right
but the horn is what you're after so keep that fact in sight
from where does understanding come that might help you out
for if you knew the answer then the problem you will rout.

Peredur: Understanding through experience, well I think that's true
though this is more a mental thing so I'm sure that will not do,
the more you know the more you grow my logic now is flowing
this horn of Bran of which you speak, would I be right in Knowing?

Owain: Well that's the Spirit Peredur, you've got it to a tee
yes it is the Spirit of Knowing guess it had to be,
when your Ego hits the dust you are a thought no more,
your conscious shifts to memory, you truly know the score,

Now this shift in consciousness is your just reward
yes it's truly bountiful that Lady's glistening sword,
I could have made it easier but I had to test your mettle
and the only way to do that was for you to grasp the nettle,

The Cauldron of Rebirth was the shift in conscious living
and if I said what Bran meant then the answer I'd be giving
for on its highest level it has the answer in its sight
as when it is decoded it says the 'self that knows God's Light'.

Peredur: You know I should have guessed it with the clue about rebirth
for we've covered it before guess my memory hit a dearth
so that's the Spirit of Knowing only six more left to go
and when I understand them that should leave me all aglow,

So what next on the agenda as I quite like this game,
I find it very interesting for its certainly lit a flame.

Owain: I'm glad you like it Peredur that's the quickest way to learn
in the pursuit of infinite wisdom your pace is what you yearn,
we'll move onto the next one then and this should keep it healthy
I'm offering the Chariot that belonged to Morgan the Wealthy,

Now this Chariot is special for it had the greatest speed,
it could take you anywhere you just had to take the lead.

Peredur: A Chariot you say well I'm afraid you've got me lost
for I have no understanding, I wouldn't know the cost
maybe you could guide me as I think I need a hand,
this is well above me it's just too much to demand.

Owain: Well it's a tricky one for its logic's not that clear,
you haven't covered it as it's a treasure from the spear,
once you know the spear though it might just be a clue
give me your perceptions and I'll try and guide you through.

Peredur: The meaning of the spear, I wouldn't know where to start
you said to fight at distance so I guess that plays a part,
this fighting that you speak of is it a mental thing?
I don't know if it's relevant but to my logic that's the king.

Owain: Very good and well worked out, you're definitely on track
so maybe I can help you out with the knowledge that you lack,
the sword is just a sharpened mind, used to fight close quarter
but to really with the argument the spear is there to slaughter,

Imagination is the name so bear that fact in mind
it reaches well past intellect it's a handy thing to find.

Peredur: So imagination is the key though I'll get no comfort there
for I fail to see connection with a horse drawn chair,
I must be missing something though I know not what
perhaps I need more info so tell me what you got?

Owain: Maybe if I connected them that might give a lift
so instead of thinking treasure why not think a gift
if you have a good imagination what gift does it bring
maybe it is travelling could that be the thing?

Peredur: Are we talking astral travelling is that what it's about
I know little of the subject and it fills me full of doubt,
I did not think it possible, I thought it just a dream
No that can't be right, it's too impossible to deem.

Owain: Just a dream you said, a figment of imagination,
why not think it through, it would make a good vacation
you could travel anywhere and at the speed of thought
so don't dismiss it lightly for its logic's quickly caught.

Peredur: So it actually can happen, well I never knew
and I can travel anywhere I guess my logic's grew
so how does it equate then for the answers not yet clear
I'll need some fresh enlightenment to take away my fear.

Owain: Well the Chariot's the spirit whose speed is your thought,
it's the fastest thing around so its eagerly sought,
Count yourself well blessed for this gift is just the thing
with a good imagination on the astral waves you're king.

Peredur: Looks like I'll be travelling then into worlds unknown
should be good adventure so I'll never moan,
I craved for some excitement and that should fit the bill
it will give my life new meaning for that void will quickly fill.

Owain: Good, I thought you'd like it, it has great appeal,
a life of new adventure you could take to with great zeal,
it might just come in handy in the stories that you write
imagine all those new plots, those dimensions in your sight.

Peredur: A world of opportunity I see the sense in what you're saying,
all that new experience those dragons I'll be slaying,
it's definitely gave my interest a whole new lease of life
so what's next on the agenda my curiosity's rife.

Owain: The next thing that I give you, with this you'll never falter
it belonged to Clymo Eiddyn, in fact it was his Halter,
attach it to your bed foot a staple would do sound
and the horse that you desire would be very quickly found.

Peredur: That sounds a tricky puzzle, where would I begin
catching horses in your bedroom stretches reality pretty thin,
I know it must mean something though I haven't got a clue
so what about a lifeline, anything will do?

Owain: Well the gift I'm talking about comes from the golden spear,
I hope that will encourage you making things a little clear,
it comes from imagination a ray of hope and not a beam
for the closest that you get to it is it has to be a dream.

Peredur: So you saddle up a dream horse that must be the case,
things are getting clearer the answer has a face,
astral travelling comes to mind though that's just been done
so I guess I'll have to let it go for the points already won,

It has to do with dreams though of that I can be sure
unless it's just interpretation I couldn't say no more.

Owain: You have the right answer though I'll argue over just
for in the evolution of your purpose I'm afraid this gifts a must,
if you understand your dreams it's surprising what they tell,
you'll grow in self awareness for they're there to guide as well,

They'll tell you of your future, the things you have to sort
so give them total credence they're all that they purport.

Peredur: I apologise for ignorance now you've told me that
I can understand their purpose so now I'll don their hat
but how does all this tally with the halter that you said
for the connection is aloof to me, I can't take it to bed.

Owain: To aid you out of ignorance the horse I'll first define,
pretty easy really it's a channel to the divine,
if you think that that's confusing then take your logic thus
look to Greek Mythology and think of Pegasus.

Peredur: Well now that that is mentioned things are getting clearer
catch it is to understand that will take me nearer,
when you understand dreams you catch them in the halter
yes I see the point now so my logic will not falter.

Owain: Very good you've got it though there's still some more to learn
for the gift comes on two levels, it helps you to discern,
that's the second Spirit so you're growing pretty well,
rationalise your dreams and your Discernment they should sell.

Peredur: Well I thought I understood it but now I'm not so sure,
the level that you mentioned I'd like to know some more,
you learn discernment from a dream, I don't see how it fits,
I'm going to need some answers to clear up any bits.

Owain: Not a tricky problem you just have to think it through
think of it as insight and that will be your clue,
the dream will give you guidance to clear away the chaff
by warning you of obstacles that are there to block your path.

Narrator: With that a spear appeared all glistening and gold
Owain passed it over and Peredur was sold,
he tested it for balance and found it made him bold
yes he liked the spear even though the thing was cold.

CHAPTER 17

Owain: So that's the final blessing, you now possess the spear
just a few more things to do then everything is clear,
the reason why you got the spear just to pacify your mind
is you now have all the attributes so now you are its kind,
Your Imagination's come on strong so now we will not tarry
for I see by your equipment you have a lot to carry.

Peredur: With that I will not argue for these things have some weight
though do not spare the details for I want to vindicate,
you now have caught my interest so I await with eager breath
if my breath can stand the weight that is for it might just be its death,

Owain: Very good, I like the style and quickly take your point
we'll move on to the next one then and hope it will anoint,
this gift comes from the sword for that's what gives it life
it's just a smaller version, you see it is a Knife,
It belonged to Llawfronedd the Horseman, came from his stable,
it could carve for 24 men who sat around his table.

Peredur: Is that number special or will any number do
though looking through my logic I haven't got a clue,
I'm clutching after straws I know but that's the best I've got
and even then it's no help so I guess it matters not.

Owain: The number is significant you picked that up quite well
just divide it into two then hopefully it might tell,
work out what the number means then that's a cracking start,
it gives a firm foundation to take the thing apart.

Peredur: Well 12 would be the total though I don't see how it fits
I can't see any significance so I guess my logic sits,
I think some help is needed for I seem to lack the gist
so what about a lifeline for the point is greatly missed.

Owain: Stages of development, the levels that you climb,
the evolution of your purpose if that will help you chime
on one hand you have wisdom to aid your mental growth
and the other understanding for you need them both.

Peredur: Now I know I'm getting on a bit and maybe I'm a fool
and it's been a couple of decades since I was last at school
but according to your logic my Teacher had no clue
for I thought eleven and eleven came up to twenty two.

Owain: Your learning was not wasted for it gave a good defence
for 22's the answer but that's hardly recompense,
the eleven stages mentioned are the stages that you grow,
the twelfth one is enlightenment, when you truly know,

It's wisdom through experience for conjecture is no more
your faith now has been justified, you truly know the score,
you've seen your Self in all its glory and from it you get peace,
all guessing disappears and all the doubt will cease,

The reason it's divided if it will help you with the flow
it works on different levels, as above then so below.

Peredur: I think I understand that though the task is still immense
but thank you for your guidance for it makes a little sense,
so the men the knife will carve for are stages to the Light
perhaps I need another clue to help me win this fight.

Owain: You're closer than you think so don't ever lose your nerve
what's the knife's purpose, surely it's to serve,
take that a little further and tell me what you find
when you can equate it you'll find your peace of mind.

Peredur: Well meat would be the wisdom, that's been previously said
and to serve the man with wisdom is to put it in his head
by the fact there's 24 of them that would ring out loud
are we talking of the ability to speak before a crowd,

No, hang on for a moment I think I've found the devil
would this be known as many tongues though each one is a level.

Owain: Very good you took it well that's six already done
we'll move on to the next point so quickly it'll be won,
now this one was a Cauldron though its aim was not rebirth
it belonged to Diwrnach the Giant so it must have had some girth,

It would only boil a brave man's food so a coward had no chance
so what do you think it stands for, have you sharpened up that lance?

Peredur: You know I might just know that one or at least have a clue,
I think it's understanding for at last it's sinking through,
that would be a Spirit too so that would be one less
yes it's understanding and that's more than just a guess.

Owain: Well you're right in what you're saying but the task will not abate
for the next part of the topic is you must elaborate,
it's the journey to the answer and that you must explain
for to truly understand it you must take away the pain.

Peredur: Well the food would be the wisdom so that point I must foil
and you said it took a brave man for the food to boil
so going through experience that's what takes away the fear
then comes understanding for everything is clear,

The gift comes from the Grail so I guess that ties it up
a treasure well worth having, it's a very versatile cup.

Owain: Guess you cleared the point up, you've covered it quite well
there's nothing you have left out so there's no more to tell,
we'll move onto the next one and see what that does bring
it's the Whetstone of Tudwal Tudghyd, now this should make you sing,

If a brave man hones his sword on it, it will take away all strife
for he'll only have to wound you and it will take out all your life.

Peredur: That sounds a right humdinger, where would I begin,
the chances of an outcome I guess are pretty slim,
is there no chance of a lifeline for I haven't got a clue
I think I'll need some guidance or I'll never see it through.

Owain: Well it's a gift from the Grail if that will help your cause,
it's another spirit too so you might just take a pause,
if you can equate the spirit then you're halfway there,
it's called the Spirit of Life so let's see how you fare.

Peredur: That makes it more confusing for it actually draws out life
so I don't know about guidance, you've led me into strife,
maybe I could get this though through my own accord
for I think that the answer lies around the sword,

Now if the sword was the mind as mentioned before
you would sharpen it with knowledge, would that be the score?

Owain: Well you're making progress, so far you have the truth
so take the point some further and you'll find it's not aloof,
what knowledge draws out life that will be your guide
once you have the outcome the answer will not chide.

Peredur: Now I've thought about it, it's quite easy to define
for the knowledge that I'm seeking is Knowledge of the Divine,
it replaces life with Light, am I correct in what I'm saying
for if the guess is wrong for answers I'll be praying.

Owain: Well worked out, you took it well, the answer came out fine,
yes you have it in your grasp, it's Knowledge of the Divine,
the life drew out is replaced by Light, food that feeds the mind
the Spirit of Life is a spiritual life, your conscious shifts to kind,
Now from this shift in consciousness your Will becomes of Light
you find your Self and know your purpose, heaven is in sight.

Peredur: I guess I should have got it when you said the Grail,
my mind must be on holiday, my memory seems to fail,
I think it's getting sharper now so it should see me through
so what about the next one, there's not many more to do.

Owain: Well the next ones from the shield so that should get your vote it belonged to Padarn Red Coat in fact it was his Coat, it would only fit a noble man but not the hereditary bent for the nobility I talk about is actually noble intent.

Peredur: Well the coat could be protection, have I got it right and that would fit in with the shield so that helps me in the fight, protection though from what, I'm afraid I'm at a loss any chance of some more info to give this thing some gloss.

Owain: Protection from the elements though we're talking in the mind for I'm afraid that there are dark forces, ones that try to bind, we're talking Divine protection so take that to your heart when you wear this coat you're protected from the start.

Peredur: Yes I understand that for the answers pretty clear when I have this coat on I need never walk in fear, that one was quickly covered the point just seemed to smother I'm feeling pretty good now so how about another?

Owain: Well the next one is two so we'll do them both together get these out the way and we'll move to fairer weather, they both belonged to Rhygeny, they were his Crock and Dish and inside you would find food, the best that you could wish.

Peredur: Food would still be knowledge so I guess that makes a start though being two utensils would they come apart, I mean are they separate gifts, does each one have a role or are they two together that both make it a whole.

Owain: They both are separate gift though both come from the Grail and by saying they're two Spirits there's a chance that you won't fail, I won't say which ones though, that's too much of a clue for the Spirits are the answer so that might help you through.

Peredur: Well one of them is Wisdom of that I have no doubt the other I'm not sure yet though it won't take long to rout, so Wisdom is a Spirit but that leaves a little hitch I have to look at the utensils and try to guess to which.

Owain: Oh yes but that's no problem just you think it through, the utensils are both different just find out what they do, wisdom is the food stuff so let that be your guide soon you'll have the answer for from it you can't hide.

Peredur: Well wisdom is the dish then for that is what it serves crock is more for water so from it logic swerves, that leaves me with a problem for water's understanding I thought I had the answer but this question's too demanding.

Owain: Take good heart now Peredur for the first part has been done
yes the dish is Wisdom that's another gift you've won,
you're not in a dilemma, just stay and think awhile
what is understanding, you must have it in your file?

Peredur: So Wisdom is correct then, that's certainly a relief
and as for understanding well this is my belief,
it is the Holy Spirit that comes down from above
and I know the Spirit, it's the Spirit we call Love.

Owain: Very good, you got it right that's two points hit the floor
take your comfort in the thought there only is two more,
then you'll have the treasure sorted, this side will be done
all that's left is congratulations for you'll have truly won.

Peredur: So two left and I've finished, I'll truly know the score,
yes you've done me well, I couldn't have asked for more
and all these gifts you mentioned, are they mine to keep
for if they are I'm happy, I'll be truly deep,

Now the last two points to cover, one of them is surplus
for looking at it logically its Spirit must be Purpose.

Owain: The gifts are yours to borrow to help you in your work,
you'll have them for eternity unless responsibility you shirk,
remember that point well for they're easily took away
so don't ever get deluded as that's the price you have to pay,

Now the last two gifts aren't easy, they're tricky to define
but you should overcome them if you take a different line,
you're right that one is Purpose though you haven't seen it through
for that's not actually the answer just a very good clue.

Peredur: Perhaps I was too hasty forgive me for my rush
but the way these gifts are falling well there seemed to be a gush,
I'll heed your words of caution for these gifts I'd hate to lose
so tell me of the next one and take away my blues.

Owain: The next one was a Chessboard that could play just by itself,
it belonged to Gwenddolan, who must have had some wealth
for half the pieces were silver and the rest were gold
so what do you think it stands for, don't leave me in the cold.

Peredur: A chessboard that can play itself that sounds a marvellous thing,
I guess it must be magical but it leaves a nasty sting
for I can't see a lifeline that would help me work this out
though I don't think this is Purpose for that is not about.

Owain: I'm afraid it is from Purpose so your logic has to fail
it's also from the Grail if that will help this point to nail
so what actually is the chess board what is it about
if you can find the answer you're in with a good shout.

Peredur: You know I might be getting there I nearly know the score
for the chessboard is a battleground, the game revolves round war,
the game of life you could say so it's added to my wealth
but then I think I've lost it for the game plays by itself.

Owain: You're not too far from glory so take your comfort there
think it through with reason and you'll find it with great care,
a game that plays itself all decisions have been made
you have no need for planning as all the plots are laid,

You virtually know the answer from what I have just said
so take time out and think awhile, you'll put this point to bed.

Peredur: Are we talking Divine guidance here has my logic found its clover
for if it had it's left a fear, do you mean I'll be took over,
that game played by itself it needed not a hand
to me that sounds like loss of identity, is that a prime demand?

Owain: Don't worry Peredur for your fretting is in haste
it's not put there to take your life for that would be a waste,
you are your conscious level and that you'll always be
so don't you have a worry, just you wait and see.

Peredur: I'm afraid you've left me in a muddle I don't quite see your point
you said I was my conscious level my logic has no joint,
what does that actually mean, it's left me in despair
if confusion is the place to be you've definitely took me there.

Owain: It's not a tricky concept, bare with me, I'll explain
you just need a little enlightenment to take away the pain,
just think of all those Demons and that will aid my case
for it's only when you're envious that envy shows its face,

You're still the same person as you haven't changed as such
so when you take your purpose you won't have altered much.

Peredur: You know I understand that, now that's a great relief
I thought I'd lose my life, isn't that a strange belief
so it's like I'm just took over, it's not like it's a bind
yes I will accept that, that's truly peace of mind.

Owain: Not that I want to frighten you but put this thought to bed
you can never lose your life for you're already dead,
I'm here to resurrect you, that's what this is about
for your Ego in its essence was in fact self doubt.

Peredur: From what you've already told me I'll take the point with mirth
for now I truly understand that death is just rebirth
maybe it was the whetstone that helped me with the case
but now I have no fear as death has shown its face.

Owain: Very good you've come on strong so one more left to do
listen carefully take it in and soon we will be through,
the last gift is a Mantle, call it Arthur's Cloak
whoever wears it disappears, believe me that's no joke.

Peredur: This seems a little tricky but you can help me out.
I'll need some information to give this guess some clout,
you mentioned a top level and called it a spiritual lean
so perhaps you could enlighten me what does Arthur mean?

Owain: Sure I'll quickly do that but in confusion you'd be growing
it means 'God's knowing spiritual wisdom' in brackets 'loving knowing',
as you might have gathered he's a very versatile man
for you've seen him once already just think of him as Bran,

A self that knows the Light of God, remember what I said
so to try and get your comfort there might leave an aching head.

Peredur: So that's the final clue in place, the jigsaw's now complete
I think I know the answer for the pail is now replete,
Arthur maybe knowing but that's not what I'm after
it's the mantle that he wears, that's what brings the laughter.

Owain: Sounds like you are well on track so tell me what you think
I have a funny feeling that this point's about to sink
so it is the mantle then and what do you think that is
get this last one on your own and you're definitely the bizz.

Peredur: The mantle is your aura but only when you're pure
your Ego disappears, it's not needed any more,
when the Ego goes all thoughts just turn to know
so when you wear the cloak into Arthur you will grow.

Owain: Very good you've took it out and did it with great style
yes you've certainly come on well you're now a man of guile,
just to finish off the point what blessing gives you this
and when you've finally worked that out then you will get bliss.

Peredur: You know that's music to my ears, it's definitely struck a chord
judging by experience I would say it was the sword,
the Lady left me with a ring and this just said I'm pure
so with that thought inside my head who could ask for more.

Owain: Excellent you've passed the test and did it with good grade
see that mirror over there it will gauge the progress made,
you're now a man of purity embossed in Spiritual wealth
so here's to you now Peredur I wish you the best of health.

Narrator: With that Owain disappeared for his wisdom now had took
and all the blessings went within, Peredur felt them hook,
he walked towards the mirror his intention was to look
his reflection now was Owain, his reality was shook.

CHAPTER 18

Narrator: Mad Dog woke next morning and he had the weirdest feeling
he felt so strangely lifted he was almost on the ceiling,
it was not a bad sensation, in fact he found it healing
so he hung around in bed awhile till his head stopped reeling,

His concentration was hijacked by the slamming of a door
looking out the window he saw it was the law
they knocked on Arthur's Caravan and Mad-Dog guessed the score
Tristram was in strife again so Arthur would be sore,

Curiosity took him so he got up and took a look
he saw that one was Patience and his heart was truly took,
he looked forward to the evening and the fact he needn't cook
for the thought of him in Pinnies was a thought that's best forsook,

After getting dressed he made himself a cup of tea
with thoughts of Patience Meek paralleled with ecstasy,
as he poured it out those thoughts were still with glee
though a sharp knock on the door might just change that plea,

He opened up the door and found Patience standing there
he took in all her beauty and she definitely was fair,
his thoughts turned to that evening though he should have a care
for the news she had to tell him could lead him to despair.

Patience: Peredur I'm back again I just can't keep away
though you might not let me in when you hear what I've to stay,
I'm afraid I've got bad news for you tonight I'm back at work
I tried to get out of it but there's too much on to shirk,

Can we leave it till tomorrow night for then I will be free
and if you're not too mad with me can I have a cup of tea?

Mad-Dog: Sure come on in, the kettle's boiled, you must have timed it right
I suppose these things happen with the crime you have to fight,
make yourself real comfortable and tell me of your day
and then I'll tell you my surprise and see what you've to say.

Patience: A surprise is it well tell me more, my attention you have caught
my day will keep, it's just finished, in fact it was too fraught,
I need a little cheering up so this might be the thing
so come on boy, out with it, that canary has to sing.

Mad-Dog: Your day is done, well is that right, then this might just appeal,
I've got something to put to you, then tell me how you feel
out of interest first of all how are you getting back,
you might like my alternative for transport you won't lack.

Patience: Well Jack normally drops me off that's the fellow in the car
though that is not a problem as I don't live far,
just a mo. you've got the bike, is that what it's about
you've picked it up, you must have done, now tell me or I'll clout.

Mad-Dog: That's assault if I remember right see I know the law
threatening behaviour too, the charges will just pour,
picked it up last night I did parked it round the back
so if you want to borrow it no transport you will lack.

Patience: Too right, you've got a deal, I'll nip over and tell Jack
he'll be pleased I know he will, he's in a hurry to get back,
I won't be long so don't you worry for I'm duty bound
if I go and tell him now, he need not hang around.

Narrator: Patience quickly left the van and rushed over to see Jack
it did not seem to be that long before she was coming back,
the car went off and left the site and drove right down the track
it made up speed, it was in a hurry for Patience it did lack.

Patience: So you got the bike then, that's really made my day
and I can ride it back too, I don't know what to say,
after the night I have had this should pick me up
you're definitely a winner so now you get the cup.

Narrator: Mad-Dog took the cup from her and loved her for her cheek
it was definitely a misnomer, you could not call her meek,
he put the cup by the sink and revenge he thought he'd seek
he thought he'd try a fresh approach with news that sounded bleak.

Mad-Dog: You said you don't live far well I guess that's not so bad
but I've thought some more about the bike, it might just leave you sad,
judging by the uniform you might turn that shade of blue
for the bike although it is insured, it's not insured for you,

Sorry Patience I forgot, so the bike you won't be getting
I'd like to let you use the bike but that would be abetting.

Patience: Not to worry Peredur my insurance covers it
I can ride that bike of yours for my policy will fit,
I thank you for your worry even though it's just a wind up
I don't think you've forgiven me for giving you that cup.

Mad-Dog: Very clever I'll admit, I guess you found me out
one has to be so careful, there's a lot of crime about
so anyway about your day, I see Tristram was in trouble
not a way to spend the day trying to burst his bubble.

Patience: Well Tristram was not culpable I came over with bad news,
a couple of Arthur's residences, well I'm afraid he's had to lose,
I was looking for some details, you know, the next of kin
but as they were nomadic, well where would you begin?

Mad-Dog: Did I hear you right, are you saying they have died
so what's this all about, my curiosity can't hide,
who were these people anyway though I guess it doesn't matter
I probably wouldn't know them but I'd like to hear the chatter.

Patience: Well one was Roger Irvine, he had a job working the door,
he came up here from London but I'm afraid there's nothing more,
the other was a Richard Plant, he was no more than a boy,
we tried to find the next of kin but I'm afraid we had no joy,

They crashed a car into a wall it was a bad affair
I was there when they cut them out, they made an ugly pair,
both their heads were crushed to bits, they were laid out pretty thick
to tell the truth it was pretty gruesome, it nearly made me sick.

Mad-Dog: I bet it did, it must have done, I'd have been the same
so what was the circumstances who was there to blame,
I didn't really know them well except what Arthur said
but from what he has been saying it's better that they're dead.

Patience: Never slate the dead they say but with you I'll agree
yes I knew them pretty well they were not my cup of tea,
no other vehicle was involved the car just lost control
careered across the motorway and death soon took its toll,

We thought there might be drugs involved, that's their usual game
unfortunately we drew a blank so drugs were not to blame.

Mad-Dog: Drugs you say, it must be rife there's a lot of it about
I seem to see them everywhere its definitely made a clout,
you can't seem to get away from them, it's everywhere you look
and I'll tell you what surprised me, the speed in which they took.

Patience: Well you picked the place to be, this is the lion's den
we've had our eyes upon this site since I don't know when,
they even put a fellow in albeit undercover
disappeared without a trace, there's a feeling death's his lover.

Mad-Dog: This fellow that you mentioned, did you know his name,
it doesn't really matter but I think I know his fame,
the fellow that was here before, it seems he's disappeared,
I just wondered if it's the same one so that point might be cleared.

Patience: I shouldn't really tell you as even Arthur doesn't know
yes it was the same one so it came as quite a blow,
the body could be anywhere and with it goes the truth
these fellows are professionals, they always keep aloof.

Mad-Dog: Was that why you pulled Tristram then, really on a hunch
thinking you could break him, the weakest of the bunch,
it's started to make a little sense, things are getting clear
well except for one last puzzle what am I doing here?

Patience: Tristram was too ignorant, he did not know the score
I think he's just a Joey though he thinks he's something more,
you should join the Police Force, you're mind works things out well
but all this that I've told you, you must promise not to tell.

Mad-Dog: Your secrets safe with me Patience of that have no worry,
I keep things like that to myself and for your favour I will curry,
you take this job quite serious, that's one thing I will say
it seems more like a calling I'll be surprised if you don't pray.

Patience: I guess it gives me purpose, from that I get my strength
yes I do enjoy it, it's fulfilling at any length,
so what about you Peredur have you made your plan
for they say without direction you become a restless man?

Mad-Dog: To tell the truth now Patience I'm looking for direction
it's like my life has died and needs a Resurrection,
I was hoping just to drift one time but torment will not cease
I do need something in my life to give me inner peace,

I had a mind to travel just to see what I could find
but meeting up with you again has changed my mind.

Patience: Why Peredur I'm flattered, my Ego stands erect
I guess I cannot help it, you see I have this strange effect,
men rush to give me flowers, on impulse so they say
I'm cursed with all this beauty, it's a heavy price to pay.

Mad-Dog: Well don't you get big headed even though I crave your love
it wasn't just your beauty that gave my mind its shove,
no it was something more than that, it was how you took control
on the night that we first met, when you took the lawful role,

It was the way you handled things, you knew what you were about
yes you really impressed me, it was like you had no doubt.

Patience: So it wasn't my good looks then, well that's a crying shame
looks like I failed the audition, guess now I'll never be vain,
no seriously I understand it's like something has took over
guess it is the uniform, it puts me into clover.

Mad-Dog: That is your direction, it's what makes you self assured
that's the thing I'm lacking, the reason I get bored,
when I find my purpose my life won't be a flop
though before you even say it I will never be a cop.

Patience: Police work's not for everyone though I know what you are saying
you do need something in your life if it's just to keep you staying,
you see now I've met with you again, well you're someone that I like
besides if you should go away I'll miss that motorbike.

Mad-Dog: Oh the bike is it, now I see, I thought it too good to last
don't worry though I'll wave goodbye as I'm riding past,
joke apart, I see the truth, I'm getting education
but I need something more, I want to feel elation,
I don't quite know what it is but I hope to find it soon
for staying here with you about must be the greatest boon.

Patience: You have a way with words though knowing you, you know it
maybe that could be the thing, ever thought of being a Poet,
something along artistic lines, that might have appeal
why not try and write a verse, you might just have a feel.

Mad-Dog: Sure I could try it out find out what it's about
who knows I might like it, it would take away my doubt,
it won't be for a little while as there's still more work to do
but Arthur's there to guide me, he said he'll see me through.

Patience: Now Arthur, there's a good one, he certainly knows the score,
he could definitely tell a tale or two of that you can be sure,
you'll learn a lot of Arthur of that rest assured
and one more thing about him, you'll never end up bored.

Mad-Dog: Well that's something to think about, that should keep me going
and with Arthur there to guide me I'll never stop growing
so anyway my manners for a Gentleman I'll be
so what do you say oh Patience would you like a cup of tea?

Patience: Sounds a good idea, you know what's on my mind,
I would love a cup of tea so your offers very kind,
you sit down I'll make it, how many sugars do you like
don't take this as a weakness I just want your motorbike.

Mad-Dog: Right, I see, like that then, two sugars if you please
and if I want more tea then I just hide the keys,
oh about that dinner I thought we could go out instead
I'll even wash the dishes for you'll have long since fled.

Patience: Don't worry about dinner, what about a quiet night in,
away from all the bustle sometimes I hate the din,
a quiet night by the T.V to me that sounds just fine
and if you're feeling affluent we could have a glass of wine.

Mad-Dog: That appeals to my cheap nature but I would like to take you out,
proof of my commitment, I want to leave you in no doubt,
we could ride down on the bike it should make a pleasant night,
I think you will enjoy it and that would be a wondrous sight.

Patience: You must be a romantic, well you've certainly got my heart,
alright I think you've sold it, you've definitely got the part,
I could ride the bike if you want a drink, really I don't mind
yes as it's a Summer night it will not be a bind.

Mad-Dog: Not at all, I wouldn't hear it, I will take the lead
beer does not appeal to me, I'm just out for a feed,
I'll take you to this pub I've seen, it looks very nice
just think of it as recompense for all that good advice.

Patience: Certainly, you've got my vote, it will make a pleasant change
but please don't worry about the cost, it's more within my range,
I don't want to put a dampener but your circumstances are dire
or if not I'll pay my way if it will get you out the mire.

Mad-Dog: Money's not a problem, besides this is my treat,
I'm afraid it won't be regular it's just to celebrate our meet,
I too like a quiet night but I thought this would be good
so no more protests about the cost enjoy because you should.

Patience: Well I'll wait with baited breath for this is a nice surprise
so anyway about these Books are you planning to get wise
for looking round there's quite a few, you must like a read
at least it shows intelligence, that point I will cede.

Mad-Dog: The Books were already here but I've took them to my heart
I've had a look at that one there and made a cracking start,
they must belong to that man before, the one who was a spy
he must have read prolifically of that I won't deny.

Patience: Fairy Tales and Mythologies he had unusual taste
but if that thing appeals to you then they won't go to waste,
the Kabbalah now there's a Book and what about the name
I have vague recollections as it has a certain fame,

Wasn't it in Horror Films, something about the Occult,
I'm sure this was for devil worship, I hope I don't insult.

Mad-Dog: Well the Book was here already so it's not down to me,
I'll have to read it first so I'll say wait and see,
I thought it was just hidden knowledge, that's what Davy said,
Knowledge of the Divine it was, well at least that's in my head.

Patience: It might make for interesting reading, I quite like a Book,
reading is a pleasure that it seems I've long forsook
maybe I could borrow one if there's something I can find,
they say it helps you contemplate, gives you peace of mind.

Mad-Dog: Sure help yourself at any time, they're here for your perusal
take you pick of anyone, from me there'll be no refusal,
did this man have relatives for now I know the score
I'll have to give his possessions back of that you can be sure.

Patience: No he was a loner so there's no one to redress
so for all this stuff of his, no one could care less,
keep the Books they belong to you, call them salvage rights
no one would be interested they all have higher sights.

Mad-Dog: Well you'll get no arguments for these will do me fine
but help yourself to anything for to you I'll not decline,
I won't think of them as my own for they came from sorrow
so they are not mine to keep only mine to borrow,

Well anyway what else do you like, hobby's what I mean
tell me all about yourself, what gives your life its sheen?

Patience: Well I like the Countryside so I often like to walk,
catch me on a real good day and you'll find I like to talk,
Crosswords I'll do occasionally, well when I have the time
though there's not that much about, I'm dedicated to crime.

Mad-Dog: Well I like to walk as well as it helps me clear my head
maybe we could leave the bike and have a walk instead,
you know that sounds a good idea, well if you think it right
for if nothing else the exercise will build an appetite.

Patience Sure why not, it will make a change, I'm usually in the car
and if this pub is local, we'll not walk very far,
yes it is a good idea, we could both then have a drink
I'd better leave my number for to home I've got to slink.

Mad-Dog: Sorry I was forgetting that you worked through the night,
it must have been quite gruelling what with that horrific sight,
I'll call tomorrow evening, around 5 o'clock
that should give you ample time for the dream boat needs to dock,

Anyway my keys and you will find my helmet too
I'll think you'll recognise them for they once belonged to you,
now just you take it careful I don't want to see you crash
for you see that pure perfection doesn't mix with gravel rash.

Patience: Well tomorrow night is it but I'm giving you due warning
that if I'm over this way it might be in the morning
so have the kettle ready I'll be gasping for a drink
and make sure that you're up or I'll quickly raise a stink.

Mad-Dog: The key ring has a spare key so you needn't knock
just you come on in, it will be quicker to unlock,
now before you go is there something that you missed
because it's come to my attention that today I've not been kissed.

CHAPTER 19

Narrator: Mad Dog waved goodbye to Patience as she rode the bike away
she could definitely handle it so that kept his fear at bay,
he thought he'd call on Arthur to see what he'd to say
for he had a feeling there would be a lot of work that day.

Mad-Dog: Hello Arthur it's only me is there any work to do
or failing that is the kettle on I could really use a brew,
Patience told me of the crash, what a terrible thing
what a way to end a life it's surprising what Fate can fling.

Arthur: You don't know the half of it there's more bad news to come
something strange is happening, it's almost struck me dumb,
just ten minutes after they left I had this strange phone call
It seems David Simpson lost his life he had a real bad fall.

Mad-Dog: David Simpson, you mentioned him, wasn't he that Army fellow
you said he came from Cornwall and was always one to bellow,
Sergeant Major wasn't he, well that's what I recall
and he also lost his life, died through a real bad fall.

Arthur: Yes it was a strange affair, it makes an interesting story
he seemed he thought he was a God and protected in his glory,
I always said that he was mad so that's the reason why
he just took off, jumped he did, thought that he could fly.

Mad-Dog: What really, that is strange, do you think he'd been on drugs
for I've heard that one before, it's caught a fair few mugs,
Magic Mushrooms if I recall they make you hallucinate
but what a way to end the day, a victim of cruel Fate.

Arthur: I don't think that he used them though I couldn't say for sure
I didn't really know him well so I do not know the score,
there's a little more to this, it might leave you cold
it seems the reason he was God is that's what he was told.

Mad-Dog: Sorry did I hear you right, that's what he was told
I'm afraid I'll have to stop you there or at least put you on hold,
told by whom, what is this who would tell him that
and he actually believed him, he must have been a prat.

Arthur: Well it is a strange affair it seems reality's lost
delusions of grandeur was on sale but what a price it cost,
he seemed he heard some voices that told him he was King
they said he was invincible, he could do anything,

They told him climb a roof for that would be a test
he only had to jump and he would come out best,
he told that to the Manager when he tried to talk him down
seems he was no Acrobat he was just their Clown.

Mad-Dog: And he just got totalled isn't that a strange affair
thought that he was God so Fate just stripped him bare
so what's to happen now then what about his stuff
has he any next of kin, I know that sounds a little rough.

Arthur: Well not to my knowledge as drifting was his game
you know I'm not too sure if it really was his name,
the van will just be emptied and all possessions stored
doubtful to be claimed, should make for quite a hoard.

Mad-Dog: Guess I'd better make a start for three vans want a clean
shouldn't be too much in them, well from what I've seen,
there won't be any furniture that should be a boon
if I make a start right now it should be over soon.

Arthur: There isn't any hurry unless you've something else to do
have a cup of tea first, won't be long before we're through,
new blood comes this after, they left me all the detail
they even paid up front, here's your share of the retail.

Mad-Dog: Forty five beer tokens now that's a welcome break
definitely a good surprise, the icing on the cake,
I'll set them up before they come, it shouldn't take too long
with all this money in my pocket I'm feeling pretty strong.

Arthur: More good news is on the way for Fate is on your side
enjoy the blessing while it's here it makes an easy ride,
we'll empty out those Caravans, we'll do it all en masse
and when we have completed that you can have the gas.

Mad-Dog: Right, well that's all sorted then, I guess I'm on a roll
the way my luck is picking up I'll shun the begging bowl
so tell me of these other two, the ones that had the crash
from what I heard about the car they were in a real dash,

Arthur: Well the lad was just a Needler he really was quite sad
and the other was a Doorman, now he really was a lad,
I could tell you of his glory, festoon you full of tales
the man was just a lunatic and he was hard as nails,

I don't know where they were going but I guess it doesn't matter
because they never even got there, they ended up as batter.

Mad-Dog: It wasn't a real problem so I'll lose it from my head
it doesn't really matter as now both of them are dead,
here's something that might worry, well bring you to your knees
they say with things like this they usually come in threes.

Arthur: Now that you said that the thought had crossed my mind
I'm looking around the Caravan site to see who's been unkind,
you know that Law of Justice well I think its reared its head
for things are really moving, it seems the law has fed.

Mad-Dog: Are we talking retribution here, that comes from way up high
sounds a little far-fetched but you know more than I,
what you sow so shall you reap, well that's what you said
I can see a certain logic but it won't set inside my head.

Arthur: Maybe at first thought but look a little deeper
it's actually poetic justice for irony is its keeper,
take the cases one by one and you'll see the law at play
I'll give you all my details then tell me what you say.

Mad-Dog: Well I'll hear you out but I think I won't be sold
to me it's just coincidence that thoughts took a hold,
it's going to take some shifting of that you'll have no doubt
for you to prove that concept would be the ultimate reality clout.

Arthur: Bare with me and then we'll see, just listen to this case
it could give your understanding a completely different face,
first we'll take the car crash, now this should leave you cold
for the case I put before you should put reality on hold,

Dick Plant was just a Smack Head now that's a well known fact,
Roger Irvine was a Doorman and a man devoid of tact
now for Roger to show mercy well to him it was a sin
he was noted for his ruthlessness and the heads that he kicked in.

Mad-Dog: I don't like the way it's going, it's starting to make sense
the thought of mere coincidence is sitting on the fence,
does this go any deeper for that will aid your case
but I'll say my view is changing, it's falling at the base.

Arthur: With the knowledge that I have well that's the best I'll do
but other things might come to Light once I've thought it through,
I didn't get much detail so there's not much to process
though the next case that I mention will be a good redress.

Mad-Dog: That would be the Doorman that thought that he was God
this should be quite interesting he sounds a nutty sod
so where's poetic justice then for I'll need to question why
though I'll be pretty careful about things falling out the sky,

Now I don't know much about this man, he's someone I've not met
but if you prove the case to me my attention you will get.

Arthur: Well I didn't really know the bloke but this is what I've heard,
he already had a God complex that bordered on the absurd
maybe it was the job he had that gave this lofty seat
but everywhere around him women fell upon his feet,

The stories I could tell you, you would not believe,
he thought the world revolved round him, reality does deceive
the man was self obsessed he wanted waiting hand and foot
so look at it from my eyes coincidence won't cut.

Mad-Dog: So he thought he was a God though on a different level
it sounds to me he was more inclined to be worshipped as a devil,
lechery I'm guessing though there's a hell of a lot of Pride
do you think they were the voices for they're often known the chide?

Arthur: You got it Peredur, so you finally understand
the voices that were calling him were sating his demand,
that's only on one level and it lacks the reason why
so tell me Peredur, what made him think he'd fly?

Mad-Dog: I can understand the first part, you certainly made a case
so perceptions of reality are an ever changing face,
the reason for him flying, I'm afraid it's lost on me
but as it's caught my interest any chance of some more tea?

Arthur: Sure I'll put the kettle on, it should very quickly boil
then we'll look again so the problem we can foil,
you see the answer to the puzzle though it might sound absurd
is the fellow in his madness thought he was a bird.

Mad-Dog: What is this some sort of joke, what's really going on
you had me there believing you, this sounds like just a con,
he thought he was a bird you say, that has to be a jest
unless you're actually serious then go on be my guest.

Arthur: It works on many levels but I'll try and give the cream
a bird is just symbolic you might find it in a dream,
on one hand sexual freedom, the Spirit on the other
so put them both together and your logic I will smother,

Lechery's the first one though that fell upon the ground
along with it the God complex it's surprising what is found.

Mad-Dog: You know I think I'm going mad that actually makes sense
you truly opened up my world is madness recompense,
so Pride is telling him to fly saying that he's God
and Lechery was on its heels for he was a randy sod.

Arthur: Now if you accept my reasoning there's one more left to come,
stick around, see what turns up it might just make you dumb,
one more tragic scene to do according to my reason
then you'll truly know the score, madness is in season.

Mad-Dog: That sounds a little frightening if retribution is in sight
I think I'd better watch myself, you never know it might,
it also has a downside though its effects come down on you
you've lost yourself three clients that must make you blue.

Arthur: Seriously it could take them all and I wouldn't care
I've got replacements coming in I won't be in despair,
I can get by on only nine for it doesn't leave me needy,
I don't know if you've sussed it yet, it don't pay to be greedy,

The people I've already got are just a pack of trouble,
I'm very glad they're thinning out and Fate has burst their bubble,
that may sound pretty heartless but I'm afraid that that's the way
they led my son to Heroin and he easily went astray.

Mad-Dog: I'm sorry that I've heard this for I know what it can do
it's not a thing I'd want to see anyone go through,
its victims are too numerous, very quickly they have grew
I admit I had suspicions but I didn't think you knew.

Arthur: I've known for quite a while now, he's very badly hooked,
yes I've seen the symptoms for nothing's overlooked,
idleness was not his way, all this is only recent
until he met that vicious drug his life was pretty decent,

There's nothing I can do with him I guess he's now a man
anything I say to him it just goes down the pan.

Mad-Dog: It's definitely a tragedy, it must have ripped your world apart
what a thing to have to see, what a broken heart,
the shoes in which you walk in are not the ones I like
my heart truly goes out to you, yours has a nasty spike.

Arthur: The things you have to tolerate when you are a dad
I hate to see him suffer, sometimes it drives me mad,
it's just a lack of purpose that's what brings him down
so he looks for comfort but why the Golden Brown,

I've tried to understand him in the thought that I might help
but when it comes to reason the man becomes a whelp.

Mad-Dog: There's nothing I can tell you as my purpose's not yet found
but to take refuge in the Heroin is a logic that's unsound,
he's really not a man yet, you could still take him in hand
though with the scum that he looks out for that is big demand,

Maybe help from Fate too as they're definitely thinning out
it could knock him of his pedestal, it has a nasty clout.

Arthur: I can see it by its work and it's definitely in a hurry
that leaves me with a problem, a very nasty worry,
it might take him as well you see, he could be number three
and if that was to happen the man to blame is me,
You see he's not a bad lad, it's just he's easily led
but the crime remains unpunished and Karma must be fed.

Mad-Dog: Maybe it won't come to that as Fate knows its own mind
or at least I hope it does otherwise it won't be kind,
it will see it's not his fault it was just that he was led
so perhaps it's just the Leaders, maybe they'll be dead.

Arthur: I appreciate your comfort though I fear it's not the truth
for to really understand Fate is not a God aloof,
it's just a set of Laws that everyone must follow
there's no mitigation, indiscriminately it will swallow.

I pray to God for guidance to take away this fright
and if he's spared as victim then I would gladly fight,
you're right in what you're saying he's really not a man
he's only just a boy, it's just he thinks he can.

Mad-Dog: You've got your work cut out, I've seen what it can do
I feel sorry for the lad for the hell that he'll go through,
hopefully he'll crack it and get rid of all the pain
but first we'll trust in Fate for removal of his bane.

Arthur: Ah well we'll change the subject, it fills me with despair
it's in the hands of Fate now I hope it has a care
so how are things with Patience, she's a girl that you must like
for I saw her leave this morning and she had your motorbike.

Mad-Dog: I thought I'd let her borrow it so she might have a lift
she had a heavy night last night, it was an arduous shift,
yes things are going well in fact every thing's alright
she even got me thinking that maybe I should write.

Arthur: That's not a bad idea I know this man who writes,
it's the best thing for intelligence, you really scale the heights
so what do you think about it, does the idea hold no fear
you could do it pretty cheaply as equipment's not that dear.

Mad Dog Well it only was this morning so I've not give it much thought
but I see it has appeal so its logic might get caught,
it's too early to tell though, we'll have to wait and see
I'll need more education to help me with the plea.

Arthur: Yes I think you're right for only time will tell,
you'll need some more idea of the thing you're going to sell,
you'll need to find your market for that will be your fame
give it lots of thought though for to drop it is a shame.

Mad-Dog: This friend of your, the Writer, what was his selection
for if I was to do it right I would need to have direction,
I know it's early days yet but that could be my spur
it will take off my rough edges get rid of all my burr.

Arthur: Pretty Spiritual really and the fellow did go deep
he used to write some Fairy Tales, he got them in his sleep,
surprising what dreams tell you if you let them be your guide
for see this thing called reality with dreams it opens wide.

Mad-Dog: Fairy Tales you say, now that might be worth a look
I'm reading one this moment, a very interesting Book,
I think I might have fun with that, it could be to my taste
beside with all the Books I've got it's a shame to let them waste,

I'll just study them first of all, see what they're about
yes I think I like that you've left me in no doubt.

Arthur: Good I like to hear that for it makes for peace of mind
surprising too when you get going, the pleasure that you find
my mate really liked it and from it he took strength
for that was his direction, a boon at any length.

Mad-Dog: Well anyway work to do, I'm not one for slacking
I'll sort the gas out first of all so they won't be lacking,
the Caravans on further thought should they be forsook
just in case, you never know, the Police might want a look.

Arthur: Leave them for a couple of days, there really is no hurry
they will keep a little while, of that have no worry,
if anyone wants a place to stay they won't take long to clear
the few belongings will soon be out of that have no fear.

Mad-Dog: I see you're expecting nine of them, should be quite a boon
the site should be real busy, that's a pleasant afternoon,
don't worry they'll be sorted and if they need a hand
you just knock the window, I'm there at your command.

Arthur: Not at all leave them to it after all it's not our job
well unless they want to pay, for you'll earn an extra bob,
you did well yesterday so just you take it easy
I wouldn't take advantage, after all that would be sleazy.

Mad-Dog: Well I'll see you later then, I'll get sorted then I'll read
that Book's got my interest, my Imagination needs to feed,
I appreciate this money it will come in very handy
I'm taking Patience for a meal, that would knock finances bandy.

Narrator: Mad-Dog took the list and went to the jobs with zeal
soon the work was done and he brought the jobs to heel,
he went back to the Caravan for that had been the deal
and feeling rather hungry he made himself a meal.

CHAPTER 20

DA David(Policeman)

Narrator: Mad Dog had his meal then settled down to read his Book
but thoughts went back to writing one as it had truly took,
he thought he'd go to Cyril's and around the village look
for he was going to need some paper and provisions for to cook,

He set off on his journey and it was a pleasant day
though thoughts of buying paper were soon to go away
something caught his attention and the journey went astray
he saw a hanging body and was spellbound by its sway,

He walked over to the body and was appalled by what he saw
it was like a horror movie though diminished in its gore,
the face was blue in colour and the tongue swelled out the jaw
he recognised the face, he had seen the youth before,

He had turned up once with Duane so he must have been his mate
though looking at him now that friendship must abate,
was this the final victim when Arthur had said Fate
it certainly would fit in as he was a man of hate,

He saw a piece of paper in the pocket at the back
so he took it out and read it which was a little slack,
curiosity had got him though for I guess it had the knack
though reading what it said the news was rather black.

THE LETTER

So what is life all about, there's a question to despair
for by the time you've found the answer you're already there,
you're looking for some meaning, there's nothing wrong with that
but don't look in too deeply as you might not get it back,

Reality I'm talking, could you really take the shame
to find that your perceptions were only made to blame,
by the time I found all that lot out it was a little late
I had somehow got involved in a world chock full of hate,

Heroin was my meaning and deeply did it take
I ended up a runner just to feed the habits sake,
self respect, I lost it all to that vindictive drug
I thought everyone around me was just a useless mug,

Though now my life is over for that gulf has opened wide
the only thing that's left to me I guess is suicide,
Dicko's death has spurred me on for at last he's found his peace
maybe if I join him these voices all will cease

But before I make this journey my conscious must be clear
so this is my confession for anyone who'll hear,
somewhere in the forest you'll find an unmarked grave
and in it lies a man who I perceive as brave,

It was us who were the cowards for we needed four
and just some lame excuse that he was spying for the Law,
the grave can be located by a shovel that's been broke
lying to the left hand side of the largest twisted Oak,

I left it as a pointer so at last I might get peace
in the vain hope of redemption and the voices may now cease,
now before I give these names out there's something more to tell
in the Caravan is evidence that will send these men to hell,

Details in a Diary that will put the Police in pink
you'll find it in the saucepan underneath the sink,
days and dates and figures and location of the sites
I've left you all the details in the hope that justice bites,

My life it may be nothing but to me it's all I got
but because of these 3 *@&*\$% I've gone and lost the lot,
Anthony Thompson was the leader, he plunged in the first knife
followed quickly by Clive Hicks who added to the strife,

The last one was Steve Gavin though he didn't figure least
for out of all these animals he was the grimmest beast,
I go on now to who knows what but hopefully to peace
please forgive me Jesus and make these voices cease.

Narrator: Mad-Dog put the note back and rushed to Arthur's place
he told him of his finding and Arthur saw it as God's Grace,
Fate had been appeased now, that was its triple face
he phoned the Police immediately and got them on the case.

Arthur: They shouldn't be too long they said, I'd best sort out a key
they'll want to look around his van for evidence you see,
we'll meet them on the track, near where the bodies found
make sure the stuff don't get touched you never know who's around.

Mad-Dog: He left a note that fellow did and I'm afraid I had a read
thinking through I shouldn't have it was a foolish deed,
he named some names and laid out guilt with a heavy coat
the Police should find it useful it's a helpful note.

Arthur: We'd better get there quickly then so it might still be there
you can tell me what the note said, it might ease my despair,
I can see a ray of Light now, the darkness might just clear
then when Tristram shows his face I'll instil in him some fear.

Narrator: They went back to the body and kept a watchful eye
Mad-Dog told the details saying 3 of them would fry,
it wasn't very long before a Police Car wandered by
but they stopped it going further as Mad-Dog was real spry.

Arthur: Alright David I've got to say this is more than suicide
the fellows left a note that could blow the whole thing wide,
it seems there was a murder and quite a nasty affair
proceed with up most caution for this might take some care,

One of the named killers is actually still on sight
though I think he's still asleep so there shouldn't be a fight.

DA Okay Arthur where's the note for we'll take over now thanks for your assistance but on now we shall plough, I'll put a call for back up, it will soon be on its way so tell me who this fellow is and a visit we will pay.

Arthur: Clive Hicks is his name, you might have heard of him before he works at a place called Tramps, usually on the Door, he lives at Number Seven, the third one on the right as I said he's still asleep, he works a very long night.

DA Yes I've heard his name before, he shouldn't be much trouble we'll just rush him have no fear, we'll get him on the double, I'll come round later for the story, make sure you stick around we'd like to get the details before the others go to ground.

Narrator: The Police got on with their job, an arrest was quickly made life in prison on the way, the price that must be paid, Arthur went back to the van for his part was played with Mad-Dog there for company future plans were made.

Arthur: Things are moving quickly now Fate is on my side another Villain bites the dust the site is opened wide, Tommo should be back at 6 I hope that he's not late for justice is an ardent lover and it's keen to make a date.

Mad-Dog: What about the other one, what time does he get back for looking from the Police's view that charge sheet shouldn't lack, it seems the site is emptying it will soon lose is shame speaking of those miscreants what happened to that Duane?

Arthur: He went off with Tristram last night though I don't know where he gave me some lame excuse he was going down the fair, I don't know what they're up to but it's going to have to stop for the next time that I see them I'm going to blow my top,

Steve gets back at any time, his attendance seems to vary he's the one they'll have to watch, he can be pretty lary, guess they'll get it sorted, they know what they're about they'll leave somebody in the van and he should quickly rout.

Mad-Dog: An eventful day and no mistake I should write it in a Book for inspiration is the thing and this won't overlook, it seems the plot is coming on so you'll lose all your woe for with every Pirate off the site your trouble will just go.

Arthur: I hope they get it sorted quick before the others come seeing all those Police Cars there might just make them dumb, it might just put them off the place seeing all that stress but hopefully before they arrive the Police will clear this mess.

Narrator: As if on cue the door knocked and David stood outside
Arthur let him in and let the conversation bide
there came a lot of questions for the truth it could not hide
he needed information so ignorance was defied.

DA Things are looking good now the Diary said it all
I'm afraid that most your clients are going to have to fall,
we've picked up Stephen Gavin, collared him at work
but as for Anthony Thompson our attention he did shirk.

Arthur: I don't know what he usually does but I guess it is a mix
but he normally comes back here a little after six,
I'll give you a spare van key if you want to wait
it's always at the same time as he's very rarely late.

DA Sounds a good idea, we don't want to lose this guy
it's time he paid the price so his freedom has to die,
we've had him on our files but never nothing solid
but guessing from this Diary his conditions now are squalid,

Now a couple of names are mentioned, I'd like to clear them up
get them all together and we've definitely won the cup,
the first one is John Redman, now he seems to be home grown
but as for any details not a lot is known,

We've had him for drink driving but I guess that's it
I was wondering if you'd fill us in so the face might fit.

Arthur: There's not a lot to say really he was a bit aloof
I think he had some trouble but mainly in his youth,
I'm afraid I cannot help you as I never saw him much
I didn't think him one of them, well a not thug as such.

DA We'll pick him up when we can and see what we can find
though the Diary it did mention him it wasn't that unkind,
it seems he had a part although not a major role
he must have been content just to live upon the dole.

Arthur: I think he has a job though only cash in hand
for he leaves the place each morning as it would demand,
I'm guessing he's a builder or at least he's in the trade
for he looks the type of fellow that's apt to use the spade,
He'll be back around 5.30 well that's his usual time
I never really thought he was involved in any crime.

DA Thanks Arthur I'll make a note, we'll bring this man to heel
we've got something against him though it's no big deal,
it's just to clear this mess up and put things in their place
for when it comes to law and order justice spares no face,

Now the last name on the list we've come across before
it's mainly petty details but the Diary says lots more,
Duane Smith's the man we're after, we know him by his face
would you know his whereabouts so we can close this case?

Arthur: I'm afraid he went with our lad though I know not where
though if it's any help they said to see a fair,
is Tristram involved in this for that would break my heart
he isn't really that bad, it's just he's come apart?

DA The Diary doesn't mention him so from it he is safe
but if this is his company then crime would be his faith,
if you want to hear the truth though this is what I've heard
unless he changes attitude he'll do a lot of bird.

Arthur: Changes will be taking place of that you needn't worry
I'm going to take the boy in hand and do it in a hurry,
his wayward days will soon be gone off that have no doubt
for when I see his face again I'll give him such a clout,

Now not wanting to sound funny but what about the mess
I've new blood coming over so could we make it less.

DA Don't you worry Arthur for soon it would be over
most the things are clearing fast so you'll soon be in clover,
the suicide is cleared for there is nothing underhand
seeking attention's not our way it's secrecy's demand,

We'll have a car on standby very closely parked
but don't you worry Arthur for it won't be marked,
there's not much more to do now then we'll be on our way
content in our experience that crime will never pay.

Narrator: David said goodbye and gave Arthur back the key
very soon the site was clear no Police Cars there to see,
Arthur bid that Mad-Dog stay he wanted company
he even had a good incentive, a nice hot cup of tea.

Arthur: Well that was a strange day and it isn't over yet
most of them are gone now only three more left to get,
where were you going anyway if you don't mind me being bold
if you think I'm being nose-y I will tell my tongue to hold.

Mad-Dog: No it was no secret I was just out to shop
get some pens and paper and who knows a Lamb Chop,
I got thinking about writing and took it to my heart
I thought I'd nip to Cyril's and who knows make a start.

Arthur: Pens and paper not to fret for I have quite a store,
paper there is pads of it you could not ask for more
and as for those provisions don't think I'm being crude
there's now four empty Caravans, imagine all that food.

Mad-Dog: Now that is a good idea, the best you've ever said
the food will be no good to them, not now they are dead,
one more Caravan needs a clear though I've a feeling there'll be more
I can see another three now we know the score.

Arthur: The note said he was a Copper, that should make it life
I guess there must be other things to add to all there strife,
think of the advantage though for now they've left en masse,
Winter might come bitter but you'll never want for gas.

Mad-Dog: Well I see the good side so I will not complain
besides it won't be hard work, you wouldn't call it pain,
their clouds my silver lining of that I have no doubt
and I'll probably be your age by the time they let them out.

Arthur: I'm really not that old you know it's just the undue stress
but that's one thing I'll rectify and be happy to redress,
yes things are looking good now, life won't be a strain
with every thorn that's left so goes a little pain,

Now onto education, I think we mentioned Fate
if you want your life ran smoothly make sure that it's your mate,
never get too idle nor take more than you need
always find your balance for anything more is greed.

Mad-Dog: You mentioned Poetic Justice and gave out a good case
and I know it comes in threes so I'll use that as my base,
you said to look more deeply to truly understand
so what about this hanging is that too much to demand.

Arthur: You know that might be interesting we ought to take a look
if you find connection you could put it in the Book
because it's not long happened I've not give it a thought
but now that you have said it my interest is well caught.

Mad-Dog: Well the note did mention voices, that's what made me think
and talk of his redemption that sounds a Spiritual link,
I wondered if these voices had caused the car to crash
I don't know how it works so I'm probably being rash.

Arthur: With no one there to witness it would be just a guess,
there probably was a chance for they seemed to crave redress,
I don't know how it works myself, it's well beyond my scope
but it works, of that I'm sure for that's what gives me hope,

The hanging would be interesting we'll take that point first
then maybe do the note if you still have the thirst.

Mad-Dog: Well they used to call it Lynching if I remember right,
a common form of execution if that helps with the fight,
I don't know if it's any good I just thought I'd throw it in
after all you need a point from where you can begin.

Arthur: There maybe something in that, it has a certain hook
but I was thinking more the suicide may be worth a look,
he took his life to run away he could not face his fear
which in itself is a crime, one that will cost dear,

In recompense to save his Soul he owned up to his deeds
and condemned the others to their Fate, well he left the seeds.

Mad-Dog: I think I understand that part it has a certain chime
though it's hard to find a link, it does not fit the crime,
I don't know much about the lad so I'm going blind
maybe you could help me, take away the bind.

Arthur: I guess his life was like his death he used to hang around
he never used to say a lot, he rarely made a sound,
Heroin was his lifeline you could say his rope
but eventually it killed him, he could not seem to cope.

Mad-Dog: So his lifeline was his death line, maybe that's the case
it can be pretty lateral then, it has a varied face,
yes I think I'll go with that I can see the logic there
it certainly was a sad life, here endeth the despair,
What about the note then, that could be a bind
though I'll give the lad his due he had a clever mind?

Arthur: Yes but it was wasted that made the matter worse
it fell down to the needle, what a tragic curse,
I'm not sure about the note though I know that he could write
that would have cleared the Demons, gave him strength to fight
Maybe that's the thing for he did it in the end
he cleared away the devils though they drove him round the bend.

Mad-Dog: You know I see the logic there I think you've made the score
there might be other reasons we'll never know for sure,
I think that that should swing it, it's put my mind at peace
yes I think I'll take that, my doubts will finally cease.

Arthur: Tragic when you think it through he was only just a boy
hanging onto others who just saw him as their toy,
I guess he was life's victim, he could not hold his own
he reminds me now of Tristram, those thoughts are truly sown

So anyway we'll stop now, we've satisfied your plea
so I guess another question is, would you like a cup of tea?

CHAPTER 21

Narrator: Arthur put the kettle on and soon the tea was made
he noticed that it'd just turned noon and hunger must be paid,
Mad-Dog was offered a sandwich which he quick okayed
though Mad-Dog said he make it, that was the fairest trade,

The food was duly eaten and they talked a little more
I'll spare you of the details so you won't think me a bore,
it was nothing in particular, I guess you know the score
and quickly came to silence with a knock upon the door,

Arthur went and opened it and he had a big surprise
for outside there stood Davy and he had a sheepish guise,
he was looking for Peredur for he had to put him wise
his son had just moved back so employment hope now dies.

Davy I'm sorry Peredur but I've bad news I must tell
I've been trying to cope just recently and not been doing well,
my son has come to live with me so he can help me out
so I'm afraid your hope of steady work has just received a clout.

Mad-Dog: Not to worry Davy for you must look towards yourself
I'll quickly get another job and I'm not devoid of wealth,
I hope you manage better and good luck is quickly found
I was wondering if there was any chance I still might pop around.

Davy Sure you're welcome any time as you're a decent lad
you'll make for cracking company for your talk is never bad,
you're welcome, you should know that, come round for a drink
for I like the way you look at life, I like the way you think.

Arthur: Now that you are here would you like a cup of tea
your journey must have took its toll with that dodgy knee,
it seems I must apologise my lad might be at fault,
it might be he was driving it could be his assault,

I never knew he could drive, he's never past his test
but don't you worry Davy he'll get six of the best.

Davy Sure I'll have a cup of tea, you're very kind to proffer
I'll never turn a drink down, it's too good of an offer,
the leg makes for a bad trip and that's in every sense
though I don't think it was Tristram if that's any recompense,

I vaguely saw the driver who caused all this mishap
he did not look like Tristram and he had a baseball cap.

Arthur: Really now you've said that, things are looking better
for I could not understand it and that makes quite a fetter,
now Tristram keeps his secrets and very much alive
but I'm sure with all my knowledge that he could never drive.

Davy Well anyway it's done now there's nothing I can do
it does not help to dwell on it as it will only stew
so tell me Peredur have you decided on your Fate
though I know it's not till Spring time curiosity won't abate.

Mad-Dog: Yes I've found some meaning, I have direction in my sight
I'm going to get artistic, I've decided that I'll write,
I think I'll stick around here for life is being kind
you know it might sound daft but I've found my peace of mind.

Davy Good well that's the main thing for travelling will keep
they say the grass is greener but you don't want to be a sheep,
looking for life's nourishment on someone else's say
you want to find your True Self then things will go your way,

If writing's what you want to do that is your direction
and may I say you came out well for that's a good selection.

Arthur: I was telling him the same thing, remember my mate Andy
he became a Writer and turned out pretty handy,
it gave him real comfort so what else did he need
for he had imagination and that thing needs to feed.

Davy Well I guess I'd better get off now, I'm sorry it's not long
but I've got to see this fellow for a drink a bit more strong,
you know just where I'm living so don't become a stranger
you're welcome any time you know, of that there is no danger.

Arthur: I tell you what I'll do Davy I will take you back
for to leave you with this struggle would be a little slack,
it won't be any problem I'm off that way myself
so take up my kind offer, it's in the best of health.

Narrator: Arthur dropped off Davy and Mad-Dog went to the van
he picked the Book up once again for reading was his plan
his thoughts went back to Tommo so that went down the pan
now speak about the devil and the devil was that man,

He saw him out the window and that was a big surprise
the Police were not about yet, not even in disguise,
he thought that he would collar him, try him out for size
maybe that was foolish but Mad-Dog was pretty wise.

Mad-Dog: Well if it isn't Tommo the man who's really cheap
he sacrifices self respect for a Fiver he must keep
they say that you're a hard man or was it that you're tight
to get money out your pocket it seems you have to fight.

Tommo: Don't waste my time you Wannabee for I am in a hurry
you'll get yours have no doubt of that you needn't worry,
poverty seems to be your thing that's how it has to key
so go away, back to Church for a mouse you'll always be.

Mad-Dog: A mouse is it and don't tell me you must be a rat
giving drugs to little kids on misery you'll get fat,
look down on me, what a laugh you're the real loser
you think you're good, what a joke, you're just a little user.

Tommo: Drugs you say, what is this, I don't know what you mean
now kindly take yourself away before I cause a scene,
I'll swat you like the fly you are of that you needn't fret
for when it comes to winners, I'm the safest bet.

Mad-Dog: Well if you think you're good enough better make your play
you see I am your nightmare, I will not go away,
call me down and knock my clothes if that makes you better
but you are going nowhere for I'm going to be your fetter.

Tommo: I don't know what your game is but you will have to learn
don't ever disrespect me, that's a privilege you won't earn,
well looks like you have asked for it so now you'll have to pay
I hope you are Religious for now it's time to pray.

Narrator: A Police car pulled on site at that but Tommo was unknowing
if he'd have thought they'd come for him he'd be quickly going,
he stood around a little while his temper quickly growing
waiting for the Police to go so punches he'd be throwing,

The Police came in closer and the blue light it did flash
Tommo got suspicious although did nothing rash,
2 Policemen came towards him it looked like they would clash
Mad-Dog saw it in his eyes he was about to make a dash,

Mad-Dog quickly rushed him and they fell upon the floor
Tommo met his match and quickly met two more,
his arrest was quickly made so now there's just two more
Mad-Dog was quite happy, he'd evened up the score.

DA Looks like we have timed that right he looked a little burly
we didn't expect him back yet, he must have got off early,
I know it might sound strange but it was a voice inside my head
it said nip back to Arthur's so I guess you'd say it led.

Narrator: Tommo was drove away and justice made its date
he'd be gone for quite awhile, I guess that was his Fate
maybe he would regret his ways albeit a little late
time would tell and one things sure he had time to contemplate,

Arthur arrived just by chance as he was drove away
he saw him huddled in the back and this fair made his day,
he came to Mad-Dog with keen intent to hear what he'd to say
now he knew one Demon less and two more left to slay.

Arthur: Looks like I missed a party, what has happened here
I see that they got Tommo, I guess that's one less fear,
he's back a little early it's only just gone noon
not that it matters, you know I see that as a boon.

Mad-Dog: Something strange has happened I don't know what to say
but I'm starting to get worried, it might be time to pray,
that Policeman friend of yours, he said he heard a voice
that's what brought him here, sort of made his choice.

Arthur: Praying's not a bad thing so maybe you should try
it will give your life new meaning and that is not a lie,
you needn't worry Peredur for you lead a wholesome life
badness now has had its day for it only leads to strife.

Mad-Dog: Anyway my manners it must be my turn for the tea
I think I've drunk enough of yours so this one's down to me
mind you having said that my logic's not that sound
for I'll be using teabags that you sent around.

Arthur: Well lead the way then Peredur I want to hear the story
tell me all the details, I don't mind if they're gory,
he was quite a major fish to catch of that I have no doubt
I've seen the man in action and he packed quite a clout.

Mad-Dog: Nothing much to tell really the Police came just in time
he didn't really struggle much guess he must have hated crime,
I wonder what food he left, I bet there's quite a meal
I think we ought to share it out for that's a better deal.

Arthur: We'll see if he's got coffee then I'm getting bored with tea
in fact we'll have a drink at his, save electricity,
I don't expect he'll pay for it though I'll still send the bill
maybe just to rub it in for to his woe I'll fill.

Narrator: They went over to his Caravan and opened up the door
the stuff he had inside the place they would not want for more,
tobacco there was stacks of it in a corner on the floor
it made good conversation for it was quite a score.

Mad-Dog: Looks like the fellow likes a smoke, it's a pity I've gave up if I'd seen this a week ago I would have won the cup, now Davy likes himself a smoke if I remember rightly it might lessen the pain a bit but I'm guessing only slightly.

Arthur: I'll sort him out a box or two that should make him happy, we'd better move this stuff I think before the Police go whappy maybe we could sell it on, you're going to need some wages I might just know this fellow though he's not in Yellow Pages.

Mad-Dog: I wonder what else he has, it might be worth a look salvage rites all well and good especially from a crook, all the electric gear they have we ought to have some parity why not put them to good use, what about a charity?

Arthur: That really is a smart idea for Karma is appeased, let others take some benefit from their actions sleazed, you should do pretty well with Fate, you know what it's about, don't get greedy that's the thing of that have no doubt, I'll take them down the local shop, then they're out the way they'll come in handy don't you worry, what about the Y.M.C.A.?

Mad-Dog: Sure it sounds quite good to me as they are centred right tomorrow sounds alright as well, we'll get them out of sight, well if you're not busy as you might have made a plan tell me when you're ready and I'll load up the van.

Arthur: I tell you what, why not now, we'll get them out the way clear the deck and chuck it out, tell me what you say, electric goods, you know the score, that sides taken care Oxfam then can have the clothes as it's only fair,

Kitchen utensils, stuff like that, we'll put them into store reckon that should cover it, unless you know some more.

Mad-Dog: Sounds alright, the job's quick done, get ready for new blood then maybe they'd never know their neighbour was a hood, what about the Police though, they might want a look I suppose we have to follow law, play it by the Book.

Arthur: Anything too expensive, we'll put it to one side let them look it over, we've got nothing to hide, there is a little matter that I'd better let you know I saw that fellow Redman and told him he should go,

He's not really a bad fellow but keep that to yourself the Police might see it differently, sort of loss of wealth.

Mad-Dog: I guess you know the fellow and your judgements sound
it's not really my problem so to honour I'm not bound,
besides it has a good side, you're a very caring man
you've saved me all that trouble of clearing out his van.

Arthur: Well it was done in your interests of that I will admit,
I told him get back quickly if he wants to do a flit,
I wouldn't see him come to grief, he's really not that bad
his mother was a friend of mine, in fact I am his dad.

Mad-Dog: Arthur you surprise me, I never took you for a tyke
putting yourself about a bit you must have had a bike
so when you told them Coppers that him you hardly knew
I should have checked your nose for I guess it must have grew.

Arthur: Well we've all got history so you should have a care
you never know what happens from the casualist affair,
I used to be a wild one and oats were often sown
I could have been round your way, I guess that's my cover blown.

Mad-Dog: Now that you've said that, there might be something there
because I've often had this feeling and it leads me to despair,
I thought I was a grudge baby, it used to drive me mad
imagine my misfortune, someone had it in for my dad,

Anyway joke apart for we still have one more pain
what about the Caravan that's rented out to Duane.

Arthur: For him there's something special for he's the biggest pain
he was the lad's great downfall, he was a constant bane,
Tristram sees him as a hero, thinks all he says is true
sad really but there it goes a rebel without a clue.

Mad-Dog: Well he must have undue power of that I will admit
though I hope I'm not being too rude when I call Tristram a git,
it was not a good idea to put the car out in his name
for any act of offence would quickly get his blame.

Arthur: You are right in what you're saying the lad has got no clue
when it comes to brightness he's that cold he is blue,
I can't quite see the logic but it's heading for a clout
and the first thing we'll be doing is emptying Duane out.

Mad-Dog: That should be a nice surprise I'll make sure I am there
you can't have all the fun, I mean it isn't fair,
coming back to an empty place and literally I mean
I can't wait for his language, I bet it is obscene.

Arthur: We'll take a look at his then and find out what's his game
you know I'm really tempted to put it to the flame,
I wish that he was in it, that's a thing I shouldn't say
but for what he's done to my lad I want to make him pay,

Revenge is best served cold so I'll leave that to the Law
but one thing I will promise, he will end up on the floor.

Narrator: Coffee drank they went to Duane's and looked around the van,
one thing that surprised them, the cleanliness of the man,
everything in order, no dirty pot nor pan
he was definitely house proud, hygiene was his fan.

Mad-Dog: He keeps his place really tidy, you'll have to give him that
he should get on with his cell mate in his impending flat,
he's even got some Books here of the manipulating kind
when you enter others houses it's surprising what you find.

Arthur: Yes you have surprised me, in fact it's quite a shock
a place as clean as this he must run it like a clock,
looks like the boys a pedant for every thing's in place
I'm really overwhelmed this must be his other face

And the biggest shock of all is he's an avid reader
mind he is quite sharp for he is a cheeky bleeder.

Mad-Dog: So what's to happen now then, have you come up with a plan
for when it comes to payback I guess you are the man
The Books from what I've seen, he looks to with great care
so it might be a good idea to start the ball of there.

Arthur: You know you have a wicked mind, I like that in a man
for when it comes to irony I'm its biggest fan,
try this for a concept and see if you can learn
put them on his driveway and watch the *@&*\$% burn.

Mad-Dog: I think you might have got it for he would surely choke
to watch his understanding just go up in smoke
I could see another level, he should be real blue
for his ashes were his Ego yet he wouldn't have a clue.

Arthur: Yes you know I like that, you've hit it on the nail
for when he goes to prison his cocksure ways will fail,
now we're thinking deeply his clothes should go the same
especially all those caps, I'd love to see those flame.

Mad-Dog: Got him on both levels as above then so below
amazing what can happen when the mind can find its flow,
I'll take the Books and clothes out, put them in a pile
and you can light the fire, it should leave the broadest smile.

Narrator: The things were brought outside and piled up on the floor
and on the heap of items some petrol they did pour,
the pile quickly ignited and the flames made quite a roar
they took warmth in its being and delight in what they saw,

The job was quickly over for they took to it with glee
then they cleaned the van out and returned back with the key,
then the site was empty, clear for all to see
so they went back down to Arthur's and had a cup of tea.

CHAPTER 22

Narrator: They talked more on the subject that we know as Fate
Mad-Dog until recently had thought the voices only hate
the incident with the Policeman made that thought abate
for he saw it had advantage though it nearly was too late.

Mad-Dog: Well the voices worked for me so I guess that's changed my mind
for up until just recently I thought they were unkind,
I guess it is confusing though I suppose it has to be
for although it's not a blind thing, it's very hard to see.

Arthur: Confusion has a big part, of that have no doubt
look into things more deeply and there's a lot of it about,
now when I tell you this your confusion will be growing
the actual voice that David heard was his inner knowing.

Mad-Dog: I think you've hit the bull's eye, well closest to the wire
it sounds to me to look within is to find yourself a choir
devil's on the one hand an inner knowing on the other
logic flying round like that reality will smother.

Arthur: Well intuition is the inner knowing if that helps with the case
the rest is just a negative imagination if you want to know its face,
they are not Fate as such if that helps your understanding
Fate is more the situation now don't find this demanding

Sometimes they work for Fate but not always I'll admit
so keep those thought trains separate, it might just help a bit.

Mad-Dog: Guess Fate is too complicated, I think I see you point
though I don't think I'll pursue it, it's a very tenuous joint,
I think I'll just be happy to have it on my side
for it sounds an ardent foe if it ever was to chide.

Arthur: Well look whose just pulled onto site, the Lancia is back
now the fun can really start for humour has been slack,
I'd better phone the Police I suppose, tell them not to hurry
the situation's in control so they needn't worry.

Narrator: Arthur phoned the Police station and told them of the score
he told them not to worry, he wanted ten minutes more,
it was not a very long time before a knock came at the door
Duane was on the other side and that fellow swore.

Duane: What the hell is going on, what's happened to my gear
you're going to have to pay for it, of that have no fear,
I don't know what is in your mind you nutty senile git
but I'm wanting compensation and I mean quite a bit.

Arthur: The chance of that, well I don't know, I guess it's up in smoke
so I wouldn't hold your breath it could be a nasty choke,
I think you'd better come inside, we'll discuss the matter
it's a long time since I've seen you, I miss your little chatter.

Duane: What is this, what's going on, I want to hear some more
I think you've lost your mind old man, I'm not going through that door,
you'll be sorted don't you worry for I'll have revenge
I've got some friends who know the score, they will soon avenge.

Narrator: Arthur grabbed him by the shirt and quickly pulled him in
he threw him down, he hit the ground, it made an awful din,
the thing that happened afterwards it just might be a sin
I'll leave that to discretion, now where will I begin.

Arthur: You've got some friends did you say, well just you look around
four are dead, three arrests, the other gone to ground,
you're on your own so if I were you I'd be very worried
for I have got an appetite and I want you liver curried.

Duane: What do you mean four are dead, have you lost your reason
let me go, you're just a fool insanity's in season,
help me Tristram pull him off this guy is really mad
what a bad affliction to happen to your dad.

Arthur: Tristram's doing nothing, with him I'm mighty vexed
and he's going nowhere for he's the one that's next,
look at him now Tristram, is this fool your hero
sometimes I think your I.Q. well it must be close to zero.

Tristram: What do you mean, he's doing well, at least he has a life
all you do it struggle through, you want to live in strife
at least he's going places, now can you say the same,
I'm looking at this life of mine and see that you're to blame.

Arthur: Yes he's going places, straight to a prison cell
what happens when he gets there, they're going to give him hell,
if you want to go the same way the Police are on their way
I'm sure they'll fit you in, so tell me what you say?

Duane: Don't listen to him Tristram, he's talking out his arse
the Police are never coming, that is just a farce,
he's only trying to scare you, that is just his way
he's playing with your mind but don't worry he will pay.

Arthur: Oh the Police are definitely coming of that you needn't fret
but I told them not to hurry as I want to repay a debt,
your influence on Tristram I'm here to now destroy
so he can see you as you are, the saddest little boy.

Duane: The Police could never charge me, no evidence they've got
this is just a lie from a drunken aged sot,
I'm too well covered, don't you worry about that
prison is for losers and I'll never wear that hat.

Arthur: You put your car in Tristram's name to cover that sly back
but you see I know the score, there's something that you lack,
Andy went and hanged himself leaving evidence by the score
so you'd better get that hat on, you're wanted by the law.

Tristram: What do you mean hung himself, what is this about
is this just a cruel joke are you trying to throw in doubt
and that car is mine you know Duane gave it to me
just wait till I learn to drive then you'll truly see.

Arthur: Just wait till you learn to drive what will happen then
I'll tell you what, I know for sure you won't see that again,
all those nights in the cells to cover this man's back
what is it with you boy, is it intelligence that you lack,

He's been feeding you with powder to make himself 'Big D'
that's what gives him power, are you too blind to see?

Tristram: No he's been good to me, he's gave my life direction
without him I'd be just like you, a very poor selection,
that car's mine, I know for sure, it says it on the ticket
I know he wouldn't do me wrong, he's not one to nick it,

That stuff he gives me is alright, it makes me feel much better
it took away the stress and strain that became my fetter.

Arthur: Andy must have felt the same, well at one time anyway
but I read the note he left, his life was in decay,
Heroin will kill you boy, just look how he went
it rots your mind and takes your verve that is quickly spent.

Tristram: Heroin won't kill you Duane has told me that
it's a lot less harm than smoking so don't give me that chat,
it gives me something that I want, I like to feel its high
so don't give me your bullshit, I'm not going to die.

Arthur: You stupid fool, just hear yourself, reason too aloof,
use that crap and mark my words you'll not get past your youth,
Duane said this, Duane said that, what are you his tool,
you ever seen him take it, he's not that big a fool,

It kills you mentally you div, takes your self esteem
that's not just a tragedy, no it's more obscene.

Tristram: Duane help me out here tell them what you said
according to his logic I'm going to end up dead,
now you know that's not the case so go on tell the truth
explain them facts you told me, you know Eternal Youth.

Arthur: Eternal Youth did you just say, now this I've got to hear
so come on Duane, spit it out, I've got a willing ear,
I'd love to hear your findings, I'd love to know the score
to think my son would fall for that, no brains that's for sure.

Duane: Look it's true I tell you, I read it in this Book
it's a pity that you burned it you could have had a look,
it stops your body clock see, you never fall to age
I could have shown you where it was, I even knew the page.

Arthur: You want Eternal Youth do you and you know the score
Tristram get that powder and in his mouth I'll pour,
you can live forever then, addicted to that drug
I think you will enjoy it, you'll be truly smug.

Duane: No you wouldn't do it, you haven't got the nerve
I don't want that crap inside me, what purpose would it serve,
you'll get in trouble by the Police, just you wait and see
for I will quickly tell them you tried to poison me,
Don't listen to him Tristram or you'll be party to his crime
they'll lock you up as well then, you'll get lots of time.

Arthur: Get the powder Tristram, go on fetch the drug
it will give me lots of pleasure to shove it down his mug,
go on that's an order, you'll do as you are told
then we'll see your hero and what makes him so bold.

Duane: Tristram don't you listen get out on the double
listen to this madman and you'll end up in deep trouble,
listen carefully Tristram heed these words I tell
do yourself a favour, get off and run like hell.

Tristram: What's your worry Duane, it will only do you good
you said it yourself, all who use it should,
is there something you're not saying, what is happening here
why all the frenzied panic, what have you to fear?

Arthur: See this is your hero, now go and fetch the drug
when he gets to taste it see if he's so smug,
now go on like I told you, fetch the powder out
I'll show you something special of that have no doubt.

Narrator: At that moment the Police arrived and took Duane away
Tristram went along as well, he had something to say,
with all the things that happened it was an eventful day
justice had its purpose served but what a price to pay,

After they departed Arthur quickly found him calm
everything was over, no cause for alarm,
he put the kettle on to boil, I guess he needed balm
Mad-Dog asked the question would he have done him harm.

Arthur: It's lucky that the Police arrived for now we'll never know,
I thought I might have lost it then, my temper seemed to grow,
it could have cost me dearly, if I'd succumbed to hate
for then I'd have the Karma, I'd be at war with Fate.

Mad-Dog: Eternal Youth though, what a story, it beats the hell out me
and Tristram must have swallowed it, what a way to be,
he said he read it in a Book that cannot be true
didn't Tristram want to check, I'm sure I'd want to do.

Arthur: I'm afraid with all our travelling he did not learn to read,
he was never around long enough for it to truly seed,
it's all my fault, I know it is but what else can I do
we never laid foundations, we were always passing through.

Mad-Dog: Well you've settled down now so he can make it up
at his age it should come quickly, he'll soon have the cup,
that Duane sounds a right one, a real heartless sod
what is it with people, some perceive themselves as God?

Arthur: I see the truth in what you say there's a lot of it about
power goes to people's heads of that I have no doubt,
all the wisdom they pick up they think it gives them glory
but with understanding lacked it's only half the story.

Mad-Dog: Well this one went a little far, I mean Eternal Youth
my heart goes out to Tristram, his struggle's not aloof,
they say cold turkey's hell, that 's something I won't do
why Eternal Youth though, what's his mind been through?

Arthur: Could be the Mythologies, I've seen them in his van
Celtic, Greece and even Norse, he must be quite a fan,
I think you might have some yourself, let's go and have a look
besides if I remember right it's now your turn to cook.

Mad-Dog: Well I made the sandwiches but that point is taken besides it would be pretty good to use up Tommo's bacon, yes that sounds a good idea, the food won't keep forever unless that had Eternal Youth but then I'd call it leather.

Narrator: They ended up at Mad-Dog's van and he became a cook Arthur checked the library for it was worth a look, the bacon quickly fried and soon the fat was shook and whilst all this was happening Arthur found the Book.

Arthur: I think this one should do it, we'll have our sandwiches first looking at the amount you made we'll soon be fit to burst mind with 8 Caravans it makes for quite a feast I hope you've got some appetite, you need to be a hungry beast.

Mad-Dog: That's why I wanted to share it, it will only go to waste, I hate to chuck food out, that's never to my taste most of it will keep though so it won't come to that the milk might be a problem, well unless you've got a cat.

Arthur: Don't worry about the milk, we'll quickly use it up looks like we're on coffee and with a milky cup, speaking about coffee I could really use a drink but first here's a Book I've found, tell me what you think.

Mad-Dog: I'll sort the saucepan out so tell me what it said I should have made it earlier and had it with our bread, Eternal Youth is new to me, I don't think it was Greek theirs was immortality, what the Hero's used to seek.

Arthur: Well this is a Celtic Book but most of them would do they all do have connection when you read them through, Tir Na Nog's the place to be, the Land of the Ever Young I don't know if you've heard of it though it's in your mother's tongue.

Mad-Dog: Well my mother came from Ireland however did you know tell me about this bike of yours suspicions seem to grow, I guess the surname gave it away or perhaps a heavy clue though a few times it's been said I look Irish through and through.

Arthur: You have the look of an Irishman so it was just a guess but anyway Tir Na Nog a place we'll now address, it was actually a state of mind, not really a place the days of old when gods were men and had a happy face.

Mad-Dog: Are we talking of the Man God, is that what it's about I've heard of them I must admit but I'm afraid I have a doubt, I can't really see it happening it's logic don't impress though I'll keep an open mind if you care to make redress.

Arthur: Think of it as a man of God, a servant to his kind
an enlightened Soul that came to be by expansion of the mind,
they were pretty well documented of that have no doubt
most Mythologies mention them, a lot of them about.

Mad-Dog: But Eternal Youth we're talking that's one thing you can't shirk
let's look at it with logic, how could it ever work,
why has no one ever found it with all the brains we've got
everybody has to age, their bodies have to rot.

Arthur: Understanding's long since gone, it's been lost to foolish Pride,
Man's Ego got too big for him so the secret had to hide,
imagine Man's destructive ways the Earth would quickly bleed
call it damage limitation to try and cull his greed.

Mad-Dog: Sorry I'm confused, it's well beyond my understanding
what has Pride to do with this I find it too demanding,
they might be found in Mythologies but that was just a tale
to me that's just a story, my logic will not fail.

Arthur: Sure it was a story but it held onto the truth
it takes some understanding as it's apt to prove aloof,
they're from a Spiritual mind and come over many ways
look into them more deeply, you'll find it quickly pays,

And what has Pride to do with this just you look at Cain
understand that story and it will take away your pain.

Mad-Dog: Well I know the story for we covered it at school
but that was down to Envy Cain just lost his cool,
he envied Abel didn't he that's why he took his life
he got the Mark of Cain and with it lots of strife.

Arthur: Sure he killed from envy but can't you see the join
what are Pride and Envy but two sides of a coin,
the tale was just symbolic, the Ego and True Self
Abel had God's blessing and with it spiritual health.

Mad-Dog: I think I'll need elaboration to understand that story
I've never heard it struck like that I'd like to know its glory,
so Cain must be the Ego then, symbolic of your Pride
and Abel's understanding, the thing that went and died.

Arthur: Well there's more to it but you've got it pretty close
Seth's the understanding so now you'll get a dose,
now every letter in the alphabet has a hidden meaning
the Hebrew one I'm talking, it has a spiritual leaning,

Cain means 'will of God's blessed Light', the knowledge that you know, Seth's 'understanding through spiritual wisdom' this is how you grow Abel is 'God's self through God's purpose' and this you try and attain so as you see with Mythologies they take some mental pain.

Mad-Dog: You know that is amazing and I didn't have a clue all that hidden knowledge, all the times that I've been through, I'll tell you one thing Arthur you've certainly made me think just for that I'll pay you back, my turn for the drink.

CHAPTER 23

Narrator: As Mad-Dog made the coffee he thought on what was said all the information was spinning round his head, he saw the logic in the words his interest was fed so thoughts about Eternal Youth were quickly put to bed.

Mad-Dog: So Seth and Cain are actually two aspects of the mind you know when you look deeper it's surprising what you find, so what was Abel anyway, I know you said True Self but could you quantify it as I yearn to have more wealth.

Arthur: Well Abel was the God within the ability to create, think of imagination, though forsook it turned to hate, that's why you need a purpose to truly know thy Self I'm afraid without direction imagination culls your health.

Mad-Dog: So Cain when he killed Abel Man went against his purpose leaving him a void inside and a lot of thoughts as surplus and this gave him guilt for that truly was his mark for imagination is a dog, abused and it will bark.

Arthur: Very good you've got it, you've really grasped it well when Man forsook his purpose he ended up in hell, tortured by his Demons for he had no purpose now to serve and a spirit without purpose is wont to try your nerve.

Mad-Dog: I think I'll read with interest after hearing what you've said you've gave me new ideas to spin around my head, I think that these Mythologies might be to my taste looks like the Books I've come across won't be going to waste.

Arthur: You'll get a lot of pleasure and quickly laughter falls take Cuchulainn's gae-bolg it was just a knee in the balls so humour is well catered for if you know just how to look you've made a cracking start, this is a real good Book,

Maybe you should write one, now how would that appeal for I have a funny feeling you'll take to it with zeal

Mad-Dog: Well I've thought about a Fairy Tale so I guess I'm right on track
it sounds a little complicated for my rational is slack,
it works on many levels how would I tie it in
with all the twists and turns, where would I begin?

Arthur: There's only three levels so you should quickly pick it up
emotional, mental, Spiritual, there you've got the cup,
you'll have to tie it in yourself I'm afraid I cannot aid
for that is not my strength so no progress can be made,

Just read through some of the Books and well you never know
it might become easier as your understanding will grow.

Mad-Dog: Looks like it's back to reading but I guess it will be fun
for now I have this interest the battle can be won
so tell me more about it so your wisdom I can glean
you've caught my Imagination and believe me it is keen.

Arthur: Well they say that life's an open Book so you must be a story
so what about your namesake then, we'll share in his glory,
the journey that he set upon could be done by any man
for that's the truth in fable it says that anyone can.

Mad-Dog: My namesake did you say, well I'm afraid I can't recall
so the glory that he bathed in, on me it cannot fall,
I can't remember a Peredur although I'm short on learning
so perhaps you could enlighten me and satisfy my yearning.

Arthur: Well Peredur of legend was the basis of the Grail
that should give you something some wind for your sail
think of him as Perceival if that will help your case
for time is like a digital clock it has to change its face.

Mad-Dog: I've heard about the Holy Grail but my knowledge is just slight
the quest was undertaken by the purest Knight,
there's not much I can tell you for I've never studied it
but it might be worth a closer look to see if it will fit.

Arthur: Well originally the Grail was actually a stone
now that's symbolic of destiny so the story kept its tone,
the Grail is but its purpose and from it, it won't swerve
and as you might have gathered its purpose was to serve.

Mad-Dog: That sounds a bit like Abel, now would I have that right
for to tie those two together would help me in this fight
that would be the God within if I was to give the Grail a face
I hope my logic's sound as you've gave a cracking case.

Arthur: You'll be very pleased to hear your judgements not at fault
so now I'll bring another tale and your ears it will assault,
you see by cross referencing your knowledge will increase
so let's move on to Jason and his elusive Golden Fleece.

Mad-Dog: I actually know that story, know it pretty well
so I look to you with interest at the tale you have to tell,
to hear it in a new Light would really make my day
I will wait with baited breath on what you have to say.

Arthur: The story was a journey to attain his Spiritual wealth
the people who accompanied him were aspects of his Self,
Hercules, inner strength if that will be your pleasure
the rest I'll let you work out, you can do it at your leisure,
now the story follows guidelines that you can easily trace
for now with understanding it shows another face.

Mad-Dog: I'll look at that with interest as ignorance will cease
but one thing I would like to know what was the Golden Fleece,
I guess if it does parallel it will be the Grail
but tell me if I'm wrong though it's not like me to fail.

Arthur: Ah now so it's sinking in, I'm witnessing a new dawning
but I'd better shed a little Light as the tale contains a warning,
the story finished tragically for Jason found old age
tortured by what might have been and tormented by rage.

Mad-Dog: I don't think I remember that, no this is new to me
you said it was a warning, I'll have to wait and see,
to find old age was normal so what was wrong with that
tortured by what might have been now that's worth a chat.

Arthur: The part concerns Medea, the woman he brought back
you see after a little while he gave the girl the sack,
he married someone else, the daughter of a King
you see he went materialistic, a very bad thing.

Mad-Dog: I'm sorry I'm a bit confused so don't think me a pain
any chance of a recap, can I hear that one again,
I can't quite see connection, my understanding's not that strong
perhaps you could elaborate and help me move along.

Arthur: While Jason had the Fleece he could never fall to age
but along with it came Medea, he should have been her page,
for 'life through transformation (through God)' that was what she meant
so to actually serve her would mean a Spiritual bent,

Now Jason had a meaning if it will help you with this fight
it was blessed with God's understanding upon seeing his own Light
that was his state of evolution for he had the Fleece
now if you understand that your ignorance will cease.

Mad-Dog: You know I think I've got that, you've took away the pain
I'm glad I understand that though it's hard to really explain,
he wasn't actually a character he was a state of mind
yes it all fits in, it's amazing what you find.

Arthur: I'm glad you understand it and Light has shown its face
you've had three different stories to illustrate the case,
one more point to cover and then we'll all be through
concerning our friend Genesis chap3 verse 22,

I won't ask you to quote it you needn't be that clever
but if man ate of the Tree of Life he would live forever,
three different strands of culture now here's the final sting
Hebrew, Greek and Celtic but they all say the same thing.

Mad-Dog: I see the similarities and that greatly aids the case
but maybe these three cultures are from the same one face,
knowledge could be passed around, I'm sure they must have traded
I'm sorry to put a dampener but your logic's just been raided.

Arthur: There's sense in what you say but my point will not be ridden
for the information they contained was well and truly hidden
whoever wrote those stories had a very clever mind
when you read them properly you'll be surprised at what you find,

People passed the stories down but the meaning got lost
it's only now they've come to Light for now we know the cost,
now to actually date these stories I wouldn't even guess
so the point that you have mentioned has had its first address,

Now to really drive the point home, make sure that it's sealed
look into other Mythologies but just go further afield.

Mad-Dog: If I accept your findings and I must admit it's bitten
they will have to look at history, it will have to be rewritten,
it sounds like one world order but surely that's not right
though I must admit your logic has gave me quite a fright.

Arthur: Well to be quite honest it beats the hell out me
the only thing I'm doing is telling what I see,
I know one thing for sure though and of this I'm pretty keen
whoever had this knowledge could have blown the ageing gene,

Well anyway visitors, new bloods come on site
quite a little convoy too, soon things will be alright,
we'd best go out and meet them, then tell me what you think
and then it's back to my place and we'll have a real drink,

Are you a man of whiskey for Tommo loved the stuff
only the best for that man, his taste was never rough,
finest malt I've ever seen, I guess it must be Fate
for he left us with a drink to toast, we can celebrate.

Mad-Dog: I must admit I like a dram, I guess it is a failing
it's something that I've had to fight, the coffin's got a nail in
but celebrate I think we must, the start of a new life,
a life of peace and quiet I hope, a life devoid of strife.

Arthur: Spoken like a gentleman who knows what's on his mind
sure we'll take a whiskey and toast to a man kind,
I think you'll like the next lot, just you wait and see
everyone was scrutinised before they got the key.

Narrator: Mad-Dog went and met the guests, to him they seemed alright
who knows with the peace to come he might get time to write
for in his mind things were taking shape, a novel was in sight
nothing special first time out just see if it would bite,

By the time the guests had settled in it was just passed six
business still continued though but pleasure had a mix,
the first dram never touched the side as Mad-Dog had his fix
they settled in to talk of life and how they got their kicks.

Arthur: Well that went down a second time I enjoyed it just as much
so what about this novel then, any thoughts as such,
I reckon if you need a hand there's a fellow that I know,
he's keen to take an interest to watch a friendship grow.

Mad-Dog: Well I reckon that Mythology might go down a treat
but I don't think I'm quite ready yet, it's quite a task to meet,
I thought I'd write another Book and see how this one goes
if nothing else I'll get an idea and this should keep me on my toes.

Arthur: Not a bad idea, I've heard that other people do
usually with their first Book it's in the dustbin threw,
see how you get on with it, it might just fit the bill
besides let's be honest, you now have time to kill.

Mad-Dog: Well I don't know about throwing it, that's not to my taste
I wouldn't say I was careful but nothing goes to waste,
we're talking about paper here and it could cost a pound
but speaking of your charity could I have another round?

Arthur: So this novel that you're thinking about, any further forward
I know it's only come to Light so I may be untoward,
I'll need to get the paper....don't forget to say when
so you can have material though I fear you'll need a pen.

Mad-Dog: Well the idea came quite quickly so into it I'll plough
so if you want a time on that I think I'd say...now,
I thought I might just write it out, you know without a plot
see if it turns out alright, that's the best I've got.

Arthur: Sounds alright and why not, that's how Andy used to do it,
it always seemed to work for him I don't think he ever blew it
so I guess your purpose has began you've took to it like a ram
looks like the glass is empty, want another dram?

Mad-Dog: Sure go on, why not, I've got a lie in, in the morning,
this stuff is rather good but I'm giving you a warning,
whiskey gets me pretty quick and leaves me all aglow
and then I talk a little much and perhaps a little slow.

Arthur: Not to worry Peredur it gets me the same way,
I guess it has a down side, the price you have to pay,
this Book that you are thinking of have you given it a name
or am I a little early, impetuosity is my shame.

Mad-Dog: A couple have come to mind so it might take some sorting
but I think the favourite would be 'And Death Came a Courtin','
it has a certain ring to it so in interest I will grow
though I think I'll wait and see, just go with the flow.

Arthur: That sounds a cracking title it should look good on top
I'll just pour your drink out so tell me when to stop,
yes I'd like to read it, well when it's up and done
I could even score it and tell you if you've won.

Mad-Dog: I would appreciate your judgement and to it I will bow,
I'll give you the manuscript that should do it now
so anyway I'll start tomorrow now I've got the urge
for the ideas much too strong I think that it will surge.

Arthur; I'll look forward to seeing it, find out where it's leading
it might renew my interest, I used to like my reading,
you know I used to have this Book and here's the strangest thing
you could actually converse with it, it was called the I Ching.

Mad-Dog: A talking Book I've heard of them, quite the modern thing
computerised or something, technology is the king,
it seems that they can do anything in this digital age
yes with new developments history's turned a page.

Arthur: Well this thing isn't modern, it goes well back in time it's not like a computer, all they do is chime, it's more for dream interpretation but I found this out by chance ask the Book for guidance and it won't lead you on a dance.

Mad-Dog: Really, are you serious, this hasn't come from drink, a Book like that sounds excellent, you wouldn't have to think, how would it work though, it sounds unusual in the extreme you can talk to it on one hand and understand a dream.

Arthur: You could say it's a Book of answers if that will help the case, you just ask the Book a question and an outcome shows its face, you might have one already for I've seen a Book on dreams, they usually have them in, well that's what it seems.

Mad-Dog: I'll have to hunt it down then and see if I'm in luck for it sounds a blessing what a versatile Book so who sorts out all the answer I guess that someone must for the Book must be a medium or am I being unjust.

Arthur: Now that's a very good question, I could not say for sure maybe it's your subconscious, maybe something more, it's beyond my understanding, I just know that it works, who really knows what's in the mind, what's hidden and what lurks?

Mad-Dog: There's a lot of truth in what you say of that I have no doubt it makes you sit and wonder what's it all about take dreams for example, where do they come from something's rationalised them I mean it must have done.

Arthur: There's more to reality then meets the eye isn't that the truth but perceptions out of ignorance are wont to prove aloof most things are conjecture which to be honest is a guess we run around like headless chickens with darkness our redress.

Mad-Dog: One more and the bottle's gone which is just as well it looks like the final effect is here I'm as tired as hell, I think I'll soon leave you and head off for some sleep can I leave the paper to tomorrow I guess that it will keep,

I'll definitely check the library for it sounds a magic Book who knows it might talk to me if I have your luck.

Arthur: It's only just gone seven, I was going to open another but I guess er, if you're tired that idea will have to smother, here have this last one it will help to see you out I think I might call Davy he'll be around without a doubt.

Mad-Dog: Sounds a good idea though I'll see you in the morning
I guess my head will have an ache, it's giving out a warning,
I'll leave the paper for tonight, it will have to keep
but I really want to get off now, I really want to sleep.

Narrator: Mad-Dog quickly left the van, the way home he tried to pick
he had a real almighty urge, he wanted to be sick,
he hurried off to find his van with chances pretty thick,
ah well there's the bacon gone, at least the cat will have a lick,

The deed was done and he went home at least a little less fat,
he used to be a heavy drinker but never quite like that,
he fell to sleep and heavily and found himself in a chat
with an elderly man in a smoke filled room who next to him was sat,

Now though a dream at the time he thought that he was there,
the smoke danced round, it choked his throat for it clogged the air,
a sense of danger filled the room and it left a stifled scare,
a heavy air hung overhead and in front a frightened stare,

Retribution was the subject and the man would pay,
he took some comfort in his age, he'd had a longish day,
the tension got too much by then so Mad-Dog didn't stay,
he found himself back in the van, a headache for to slay.

CHAPTER 24

PRE Presence

Narrator: Mad-Dog checked the time and he saw it 9o'clock
the dream he'd just escaped from left a nasty shock,
it all seemed so real to him, his memory could not block
the heavy smoky damp filled air that used to be his stock,

He quickly made a coffee to use up some more milk
and to his dry and tender mouth it went down smooth as silk,
he heard a noise that picked him up and gave his heart a jilt
looks like his bike had just returned driven by a lilt.

Patience: I thought I'd bring it back in case you want it in the morning
so what's all this I've heard about a Policeman's life in dawning,
quite a little day you had it looks like you're the hero
so what about a kiss then or are my chances zero?

Narrator: Mad-Dog held her tightly and took her to his heart
their lips entwined and for a moment they would never part,
he felt lifted, strange really, like he would depart
for this could be no Earthly place, it's Heaven for a start.

Patience: I'm afraid I can't stop too long, Jack is picking us up
so what actually happened then, how'd you win the cup,
speaking of cups, a coffee and made out of milk
Peredur my favourite drink, it what gives my life its lilt.

Mad-Dog: Take a chair it won't be long, I'll tell you all about it
not a lot to say really so we'll quickly flit,
an eventful day I must admit and now I'm glad it's over
so tell me did you sleep alright is your love life still in clover?

Patience: What did I sleep alright, well yes I did a plenty
so what's the matter Peredur is your vision twenty twenty,
I thought you'd have been made up four arrests were made
carry on the way you are and you'll soon be paid.

Mad-Dog: I think I might have celebrated a little bit too much
I didn't really do a thing well anything as such,
I only found a hanging boy now he should get the vote
because he left you all the evidence, he put it in a note.

Patience: Oh I heard it differently, must be my mistake
quite eventful nevertheless you still pick up the cake
so anyway if not the Police how's the other trade?
I bet with all this happening a good crime tale is laid.

Mad-Dog: It could come in handy though I've come up with a Book
the basis of an idea as yet but it's worth a look,
I've called it '**And Death Came a Courtin'** leading to suggestion
should it be a War one or should it be a Western?

Patience: You have come on and that's definitely a name
you'll have to write it special to justify the fame,
I'm going to have to go now for Jack has just come in
don't forget to ring tomorrow I've nothing in the bread bin.

Narrator: With that Patience left the scene for she had a job to do
and Mad-Dog made another drink to help hydration through,
a picture suddenly came to mind, one he quickly drew
a spectral figure held a rose and offered it to you,

He sat awhile and took a look and something strange was found
the figure he had drawn seemed to follow you around,
tilt it forward, tilt it back, the figure would astound
for it looked like it was kneeling with one foot on the ground,

He had coloured the cushion the rose sat on so it would stand out
while the spectral figure seemed in haze as it if was a doubt,
he thought that he might use it to give the title grout
so now he had a cover, one problem less to rout,

Another picture came to mind but this time of a Tower
as he watched its darkened form it changed into a flower,
understanding came to mind and he equated it with power
'wisdom seeing love through knowing', quite a little shower,

Something strange was happening and it left a little fear
all this was so new to him, it's motives were not clear
he tried to rationalise it but ended with a tear
he could not find the answer as to why it should appear,

His thoughts returned to the words he had found inside his head
understanding came to mind the first thing that was said
maybe if he understood it he could put the thought to bed
so he thought he'd analyse it, that would do instead,

'Wisdom seeing love through knowing' that's what had him bound
maybe if he understood it, it would go to ground,
he wrote it down and studied it, the answer must be found
so he went to it with gusto, just like a young blood hound,

At first sight it seemed awesome just like it was a maze
he lacked the understanding of such a complex phrase,
he looked at it intently, it seemed to hold his gaze
and more words came to help him, to try and lift the haze,

Love is understanding for that is how you grow
experience is the watchword for then you truly know
so understanding wisdom will help you in your flow
but for you to get experience you deal the final blow,

He actually understood that so he took the point as read
but another picture came to mind and it filled him full of dread,
it was the figure that he drew so paranoia led
but by way of comfort more words came to his head,

'Transformed through God's spiritual wisdom' played upon his mind
he could not understand it so to him it was a bind,
he wrote it down anyway for the answer he must find
and hoped for more enlightenment if the voices would be kind,

A will of Light is what you need if it will help you win this case
death is just rebirth if you want to know its face,
the transformation of wisdom will help you find your place
and by understanding wisdom you give yourself a base,

Mad-Dog was confused at this he could not get a line
with his little understanding death would not define,
his thoughts went out to Arthur and Knowledge of the Divine
at least he had a ray of hope he now must make it shine,

With Knowledge of the Divine you would get a Will of Light
that he could equate to so it would help him in his fight,
he talked about a transformation, an answer was in sight
it was talking of a mental death now that took away the fright,

He seemed to feel a little stronger that answer he could take
so another picture came to mind, a new Spirit for to wake,
he looked to it with relish as his interest was awake
it could have been an asp though it was definitely a snake,

'God understanding the word' came to mind, the first thing he heard
he did not understand it so to him it sounded absurd,
he gave the matter lots of thought but could not get the bird
so he sat and waited, he might receive a gird,

The voice returned once again to help him in the fight
it talked of understanding through knowing the word through Light,
he could actually equate that so an answer was in sight
it was talking about wisdom, his prospects were now bright,

Another picture came to mind and this was rather odd
it was actually an ox but the voice said it was God,
now understanding is your faith and that should be your rod
but to actually equate the two would be a heavy hod,

He thought a little into it, it was just a bind
he struggled hard but I'll admit the answer could not find,
so he sat a little while and for the voice he pined
the voice said 'seeing insight' and he got his peace of mind,

Another Spirit activated he almost had the set
Wisdom, Understanding, Life those Spirits he had met,
Discernment he had brought to ground so that was his to bet,
he glanced on Purpose once before but that was it as yet,

Another picture came to mind for Mad-Dog was still growing
the picture was of Arthur and the voice said it was Knowing,
Mad-Dog thought him pretty clever but this was heavy going
he could not see connection so this chance he might be blowing,

The voice was there once again to aid him with his plight
another phrase came out to play in the hope of shedding Light,
'God's knowing spiritual wisdom' helped him in the fight
and then came 'loving knowing' so he knew he was alright,

A picture came of Patience next and he felt it from above
no words came as company but he knew that it was Love,
the picture changed in its form and became a Turtle Dove
it left him with a warming glow for his senses it did shove,

Something strange happened then and it told him to beware
it was hard to actually quantify it, it was like a heavy air,
it entered from the left hand side and with it came despair
but he took strength in his being and vowed he would take care,

The air seemed to centre itself around the opposite seat
it fought with it misgivings but he knew it must be beat,
it looked like it would manifest, it yearned to put on meat
but first through telepathic means to Mad-Dog it did greet.

PRE Peredur you've come on well but now you will be tested
there's a lot of time gone into this, a lot of work invested
so I am here to try you out, I guess that it's my way
and take good warning Peredur fail and you will pay.

Mad-Dog: I don't quite know who you are but I guess it doesn't matter
and I must admit to ignorance I don't understand your chatter,
you said you're here to test me well that just sounds like fudge
because I'm looking at you presence and you're not one to judge.

PRE I'm afraid that it my purpose, you see you must be tested
I'm the one you have to beat and I won't be bested,
you'll have to get past me my son or you'll get the card
and don't take me too lightly as I'm very hard.

Mad-Dog: So you're here to test me then well what's on your mind
maybe it's a question and the answer I must find,
tell me of your problem and see what I've to say
for perhaps if I can solve it you might just go away.

PRE I'm glad to see you're confident though that won't help the case
for the test that I've devised for you does not have a face,
you'll never know the question so the answer you won't find
that's right Peredur I'm going to drive you out your mind.

Narrator: The presence got much denser and an outline became clear
it was very close to manifest so a figure might appear,
it seemed to gather strength in being, in being Mad-Dog's fear
for he had a strong idea that he should get out of here,

He found his self control though and took time out to think
the figure must be madness so now he had a link,
it was trying to confuse Mad-Dog so from him it might drink
and now he truly knew the score he was going to raise a stink.

Mad-Dog: So you want to test me then but you haven't got a test
you think that just by being here you will end up best
but I know who you are and I know your crime
you seem to have no purpose so you're just a waste of time.

Narrator: With that the figure lightened and Mad-Dog took his chance
he took strength from its weakness and onward did advance,
he thought he'd get his own back and lead it on a dance
so he went towards his armoury and from it took a lance.

Mad-Dog: A waste of time I think I said but that's only half the case
for I'm looking at you now and see you've lost a face
it came to my attention and with more than just a trace
that maybe what I'm seeing is just a waste of space,

Now correct me if I'm wrong but you have no purpose here
the only purpose that you have is to try and live of fear,
you thought that you might frighten me but you came unaware
you see I have some Light now and so I will not scare,

Trying to drive me mad so I'll buy the funny farm
but let's be honest, go away you cannot do me harm

Narrator:

With that the presence disappeared and Mad-Dog felt at ease
he was still a little shaken though nothing that would tease,
his education was coming on but what about the fees,
wayward spirits, inner voices and pictures it you please,

Another picture came to mind, this time of a Book,
Purpose did accompany it and this he quickly took,
the Book then opened up inside so he could have a look
but the pages were just blank so he was out of luck,

He wondered what was meant by it so he might know the score
would he write a Western or would he write a War,
the Book could throw no Light on this for it had shut the door
and disappeared without a trace so who knows what's in store,

Mad-Dog made himself a coffee and thought about the Book
a Western or a War story either could have took,
so he thought he'd hunt the dream Book out, maybe try his luck
it might enclose the I Ching so he could have a look,

He was a little sceptical but thought it worth a go
I mean with everything he'd seen, well you never know,
the Book contained the I Ching and this left him all aglow
he thought he'd ask a question and see if it would flow,

His thought turned to a War story, it just seemed to appear,
he thought he'd ask for guidance to see if it was clear,
the Book sensed agreement and this took away his fear,
it told him a prosperous fortune awaits so he should persevere,

He thought he would recheck it though in case it was a liar
so he asked another question to try and Light the fire,
should it be a Western would that take him out the mire
the Book though disagreed, it said a thwarted desire,

A War story was decided for he played it by the Book
the next question that came to mind was how was it to look,
he closed his eyes for guidance and a scene was quickly took
and from the picture that he saw a plot began to cook,

He thought about the scene and he could see it had a place
he was not quite sure where which is usually the case,
he thought he'd write it down though so it would have a face
an introduction maybe, his thoughts picked up a pace,

Mad-Dog found some paper, an introduction was in sight
now he had the first scene he decided he would write,
he put the pen to paper and with trepidation slight
started writing out the scene, it was more like a recite,

It seemed to flow quite easily and he took that to his heart
he felt a little happy now as the Book had got its start,
the page was quickly written and on reading he felt smart
it sounded really interesting he had a cracking part,

He put the paper on his seat and went over to the sink
he put the saucepan on the hob, he was going to have a drink,
he made a smashing start, he could even see the link
but now he took some time out, he wanted just to think.

The drink was quickly made so he got back inside his head
he thought about more writing but the chance of that was dead
ten o'clock it just turned so soon he'd be in bed
but first he'd try the Book again, found out what it said,

He thought hard for a question, one that he could sling
it had to be a good one so he could take it under wing,
he came up with a pearler, to him it was the king
he wondered of his future and what it might just bring,

He put it to the Book just to see what it had said
and the answer to his question left him full of dread,
he looked at it a moment not believing where it led
for it talked about his family saying one would end up dead,

Now this confused Mad-Dog for it left his logic poor,
the family that was mentioned was not around no more,
since his mother's death he was the final score
so the death the Book had mentioned couldn't be, for sure,

As if to add to torment another voice came clear
it talked of his demise and said that it was near,
it offered him a warning and this filled him full of fear
if he feel to sleep that night he was no longer here,

Another voice then surfaced and added to his woe
it said it happened all before and this thought wouldn't go,
he had no idea when it did but the thought kept with its flow
every thought that followed it were ones he seemed to know,

He felt that he was trapped, it was after his demise
this left him mixed up mentally with fear and much surprise,
he did not understand it, of that there's no disguise
but another voice came to aid, one that made him wise,

“Write down you're immortal and you will never die”,
he quickly took the thoughts advice he did not question why,
though another voice came to his head that kissed the first goodbye
“you are not immortal, I'm afraid that's just a lie”,

The first voice came back again with vengeance on its mind
“if you know, you are, I'm afraid that's what you find,
write it down and take its strength so life won't be a bind
with that note you'll get on by for life is not unkind”,

The second voice was back again, it was after Mad-Dog's head
“don't believe in what you write for you're as good as dead,
it's time to meet your Maker so fill your heart with dread
for now you'll have your judgement and it's as good as read”,

The first voice told him not to listen and write another note
it was longer this time but it still got his vote,
he wrote it down but ripped it up as another came to dote
Surrender your Will was what it said and it seemed to gloat,

He wrote it down, he had to do, the thought had gone to ground
but so too had then other one and it was quickly found,
“write the message quickly and you might just be sound
knowing is what makes you live that's why you're around”,

He now was writing two lots out as both fought for his Will
it seemed there was an argument over which one he should kill,
he did not know what they were nor how they fit the bill
he just knew they were fighting and hadn't had their fill,

“Give up” he wrote the message down but ripped it straight away
“I am”, next, he got that far but it ended the same way,
“give up”, again, it got that strong it would win the day
then the final coup de grace, he was going to have to pay,

If he said 'meet my Maker' he would surely die
desperation drove him there, he did not question why,
"Meet my Maker" he said aloud, this left him with a sigh
for nothing happened, not a jot, was this one big lie,

Mad-Dog settled back in peace, he felt strangely lifted,
the torment that had once been him had completely shifted,
a slab of mist come into view, from nowhere in it drifted,
Mad-Dog took it in his stride, he felt that he was gifted,

"You are your Maker" a voice said, it echoed in the mist
Mad-Dog was a mite confused he did not get the gist,
"Who are you" he said aloud and this added to his list
for it echoed like the first, was there something he had missed?

THE MIST

I am you and you are me it that will help your case
you've made yourself now Peredur, now you have a face,
you can do anything you want to do, of that have no doubt
so take strength in my being and I will be about,

Serve your purpose Peredur for your purpose is your life,
never judge lest you be judged, it will save a lot of strife,
always walk in balance and never fall to greed
make sure that your want does not exceed your need,

Never get deluded and always know your place
the greater that you are the humbler is your face,
always be discerning and seek and you will find
never lose your temper and make sure that you are kind,

Always act with love, speak always with the heart,
always remain faithful as that must be your part,
be true to your Self and your purpose will remain,
never shun your service for all you'll get is vain,

Always walk in Light and protection you shall see,
always keep the rules for that's how it's meant to be,
never crave for power for that caves into Pride,
never lose your truth or I'll be there to chide,

Recognise me Peredur for I am just your Self,
keep me conscious all the time and I will give you health,
always work for the Greater Good, take that to your heart
follow your Divinity and it will not depart,

One last thing now Peredur don't let this to your head
you have met your Maker that means that you are dead.

Narrator: “Love is healing” the voice said, then it was no more,
the Spirit lifted, leaving him for now he knew the score,
Mad-Dog gazed up after it and one thing was for sure
Mad-Dog now had met his Maker, long live Peredur.

The Tree of Life (The Collective Thoughts of a Schizophrenic) -An Explanation.

There are only two questions that really need answering and they are what actually is it and how does it work? Now the first question is quickly answered. It is a collection of books to aid Self development and spiritual expansion centred round the ten levels of understanding which the Tree of Life actually is. The higher up the tree the more evolved to your purpose you are so I guess the next question must be how does it work? It works through unfolding spiritual wisdom though that will come more to light as the books unfold.

The first book was '**And Death Came a Courtin**!' death, well your fear of it. A violent tale with a pointless ending where the only dreams you have are nightmares. The book itself shows glimpses of the afterlife, the shining light, the returning father and its violent content goes some way to desensitising death but its real purpose is to get you thinking about death and the possibilities of an afterlife.

The second book '**Mary of the Seven Veils**' and the concept of reincarnation comes to light, another violent tale for more desensitising but this time with a purpose behind it, seven veils for seven character flaws and an evolution to the Spirit with this purification. The book touches on life after death but also life before birth as a past life is revealed to the hero of the tale.

The third book along with the third level is '**The Path of Shadows**' a journey over many lifetimes to find your Self. Incidentally the death of the old self, Daniel son of Cormick made possible the birth of Danny MacCormick the last man alive in the first book and the first circle of the circles of being and on another level the first three books form a triad. This is instinct, the first state of grace. This level also sees the advent of free will with the introduction of Will Kavanagh (Cabanagh meaning intention so basically a will with a purpose) and a little light to whet your appetite.

The fourth book '**An Ancestral Walk**' is the first of the triad of intellect, the second state of grace, four histories to help expand your memory, the fourth level of understanding. This level goes hand in hand with level three so it is actually thought and memory. The final two books of the triad are the fifth level of understanding, '**Aspects of Life**' to signify the experience you need to get to the next level and '**The Book Formerly Known as Reality**' the spiritual wisdom for the same.

Spiritual negative next and '**Ireland Folk Tales**' level six a deeper level of understanding and the meaning of life. Level seven '**Folk Tales Too**' a further unfolding and level eight '**Folk Tales For**' the final of the triad and the death of the ego for Will Kavanagh is no more. He is reborn as Peredur McCluskey in 'Folk Tales Five' completing the second circle of being and starting the triad of spiritual positive, the fourth state of grace.

Two books for level nine though they were interlinked in a chicken and egg scenario. The idea for writing the book comes at the end of the first '**Natural Born Sinners**' and all the way through the second '**Genesis- A New Beginning**' the plots are hatched until it comes to fruition at the end, symbolised by infinity, the horizontal '8' sign.

Level ten and the final triad, divinity '**The 3 R's**' a deeper understanding of Genesis and other spiritual works Peredur McCluskey to complete the third circle.

Now basically the higher up the tree the stronger the light through deeper understanding I have only really concentrated on the books relationship with each other and their place in the scheme of things as the contents of the book are pretty much self explanatory and they are also a guide as to what you might have to actually go through to climb to the next stage so be careful out there.

